

# C A N T O N E S E

## **BASIC COURSE** VOLUME TWO



ELIZABETH LATIMORE BOYLE  
with the assistance of  
PAULINE NG DELBRIDGE and others

**FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE**

WASHINGTON, D.C.

**1970**

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

*FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE*  
*BASIC COURSE SERIES*  
*Edited by*  
*AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI*

---

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office  
Washington, D.C. 20402  
Stock No. 044-000-01289-3/ Catalog No. S 1.114/2:C 16/V.2

# CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page
LESSON 16	1
LESSON 17	23
LESSON 18	44
LESSON 19	64
LESSON 20	93
LESSON 21	122
LESSON 22	146
LESSON 23	170
LESSON 24	195
LESSON 25	219
LESSON 26	239
LESSON 27	262
LESSON 28	283
LESSON 29	308
LESSON 30	333
CONVERSATION FOR LISTENING	355
GRAMMATICAL INDEX	384
CUMULATIVE VOCABULARY	389

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Three colleagues, Mrs. Chan, Mr. Lee, and Miss Ho, discuss what they did the previous day, which was Sunday:)

Cháhn Táai

kàhnyah

Néih kàhnyah heui bíndouh a?

Léih Sàng

hóih

gwo hóih

Ngóh kàhnyah gwo hóih.

yesterday

Where did you go yesterday?

sea

cross the sea, harbour

I went over to Kowloon

yesterday.

Cháhn Táai

Gwo hóih jough méyéh a?

Léih Sàng

háahng gūngsí

Ngóh túhng ngóh taaitáai heui

háahng gūngsí.

windowshop

I went with my wife to windowshop.

Cháhn Táai

Yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?

Léih Sàng

dáfógèih

Yáuh--máaihjó go dáfógèih.

Did you buy anything?

(cigarette) lighter

Yeah, I got a cigarette lighter.

Cháhn Táai

daihyih-[+ M] (var: daih+M)

daihyih dí yéh

Móuh máaihjóu daihyih dí yéh

áh.

other [M]

other things

You didn't buy anything else, huh.

Léih Sàng

jihnghaih

Móuh, jihnghaih máaihjó go

dáfógèih jē.

-lâih

only

No, just the lighter.

verb phrase suffix (see

Note 5)

Néihdeih nē?--káhnyah't heui  
b'indouh làih a?

Hòh Siujé

Móuh heui gāai--  
dá páai  
Jihngaih hái ngūkkéi dá páai  
lāih.

Chàhn Tái

tái heì  
heiyún  
Hòuh Wàh Heiyún

Ngóh túhng ngóh s'insàng heui  
Hòuh Wàh Heiyún táiheì làih.

chēut

Néih táigwo gó chēut heì meih a?

Hòh Siujé

Juhng meih.  
s'ihgaan  
Káhnyah't móuh s'ihgaan, móuh  
heuidou.  
gámnyah't  
dāk'háahn  
Gámnyah't dāk'háahn, jauh gámnyah't  
heui.  
t'ingyah't  
Mhdāk'háahn, jauh t'ingyah't  
heui lā.

How about you two? Where did  
you go yesterday?

I didn't go out--  
play mahjong

I just stayed at home and  
played mahjong.

see a movie  
movie theatre  
Hoover Theatre (a movie  
theatre in Hong Kong)

My husband and I went to the  
Hoover Theatre to see a  
movie.

Measure for movie

Have you seen that film?

Not yet. [still not yet]  
time

I didn't have time yesterday,  
and didn't go.

today

free time, leisure

If I'm free today, then I'll  
go today.

tomorrow

If I'm busy, then I'll go  
tomorrow.

**B. Recapitulation:**

(Three colleagues, Mrs. Chan, Mr. Lee,  
and Miss Ho, discuss what they did the  
previous day, which was Sunday:)

Chàhn Táai

Néih kàhmyaht heui bīndouh a?

Where did you go yesterday?

Léih Sàang

Ngóh kàhmyaht gwo hói.

I went over to Kowloon  
yesterday.

Chàhn Táai

Gwo hói jous mēyéh a?

What did you do over there?

Léih Sàang

Ngóh tùhng ngóh tasitáai heui  
hàahng gūngsí.

I went with my wife to window-  
shop.

Chàhn Táai

Yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?

Did you buy anything?

Léih Sàang

Yáuh--máaihjó go dáfógèi.

Yeah, I got a cigarette  
lighter.

Chàhn Táai

Móuh máaihdu daihyih dí yéh  
àh.

You didn't buy anything else,  
huh.

Léih Sàang

Móuh, jihnghaih máaihjó go  
dáfógèi jē.

No, just the lighter.

Néihdeih nē?--kàhmyaht heui  
bīndouh làih a?

How about you two? Where did  
you go yesterday?

Hòh Siujé

Móuh heui gāai--  
Jihnghaih hái ngūkkéi dá páai  
laih.

I didn't go out--  
I just stayed at home and  
played mahjong.

Chàhn Táai

Ngóh tùhng ngóh sīnsàang heui  
Hòh Wàh Heiyún tái hei làih.

My husband and I went to the  
Hoover Theatre to see a  
movie.

Néih táigwo go cheut hei meih a?

Have you seen that film?

Hòh Siuyé

Juhng meih.  
Kàhmyaht móuh síhgaan, móuh  
heuidou.

Not yet.  
I didn't have time yesterday,  
and didn't go.

Gám̄yaht dāk̄hàahn, jauh gám̄yaht  
heui.

If I'm free today, then I'll  
go today.

Mhdāk̄hàahn, jauh tìngyaht  
heui lā.

If I'm busy, then I'll go  
tomorrow.

II. NOTES

1. Verb forms: past reference.

a. Class 1 Verbs: those partially distinguishing past and non-past forms.

Most verbs exhibit partial distinction between past and non-past forms. The basic affirmative form for past and non-past is the same, but the negative and choice question forms differ.

Ex: **sìhk** = eat; ate

past:	aff: <b>sìhk</b>	ate
	neg: <b>móuh sìhk</b>	didn't eat
	que: <b>yáuh móuh sìhk a?</b>	did (he) eat?
non-past:	aff: <b>sìhk</b>	eat
	neg: <b>m̀sìhk</b>	doesn't eat
	que: <b>sìhk m̀sìhk a?</b>	does (he) eat?

Example sentences:

a	Past	Kéuih káhmyaht <b>sìhk</b> Sāichāan.	He ate Western food yesterday.
	Non-Past	Kéuih tìngyaht <b>sìhk</b> Sāichāan.	He is going to eat Western food tomorrow.
n	Past	Kéuih káhmyaht móuh <b>sìhk</b> Sāichāan.	He didn't eat Western food yesterday.
	Non-Past	Kéuih tìngyaht <b>m̀sìhk</b> Sāichāan.	He's not going to eat Western food tomorrow.
q	Past	Kéuih káhmyaht yáuh móuh <b>sìhk</b> Sāichāan a?	Did he eat Western food yesterday?
	Non-Past	Kéuih tìngyaht <b>sìhk m̀sìhk</b> Sāichāan a?	Is he going to eat Western food tomorrow?

(See Drills 3, 4, 5)

From the point of view of semantic meaning, the verbs that pattern as described above can be called performance verbs, since they are verbs that denote actions performed. For convenience in referring to them, we call them also Class 1 Verbs.

## b. Class 2 Verbs: those showing no distinction between past and non-past.

A few verbs make no distinction in form between past and non-past.

These verbs use the same forms for the affirmative, negative and choice-question for both past and non-past.

Ex: yáuh = have; had

yáuh sih = have something to do; had something to do

Example sentences:

a	Past	Ngóh <u>kàhmyaht yáuh</u> sih.	I had some business to do yesterday.
	Non-Past	Ngóh <u>tìngyaht yáuh</u> sih.	I have some business to do tomorrow.
n	Past	Ngóh <u>kàhmyaht móuh</u> sih.	I didn't have any business to do yesterday.
	Non-Past	Ngóh <u>tìngyaht móuh</u> sih.	I don't have any business to do tomorrow.
q	Past	Néih <u>kàhmyaht yáuh móuh</u> sih a?	Did you have any business to do yesterday?
	Non-Past	Néih <u>tìngyaht yáuh móuh</u> sih a?	Do you have any business to do tomorrow?

In addition to yáuh, other verbs which show no distinction in form between past and non-past include:

hái, 'is located'

haih, 'is'

most auxiliary verbs: ex: jùngyi, 'like'

Adjectives: ex: hóu, 'good'

(See Drills 1, 2)

Semantically, these verbs can be called 'non-performance verbs,' or 'steady-state verbs,' or perhaps 'existence verbs.' For convenience in referring to them, we call them also Class 2 Verbs.



## 2. Past reference with uninflected verb to express general activity.

For describing general activity performed in the past, Cantonese uses the plain form of the verb, without any suffixes.

Examples:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht hái ngūkkéi tái syu.   | Yesterday at home I read.                          |
| 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht síhk Sāichāan.         | Yesterday I ate Western food.                      |
| 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui yāuhséui.         | Yesterday I went swimming.                         |
| 4. Ngóh kàhmyaht gwo hói hàahng gūngsí. | Yesterday I went across the harbour to windowshop. |
| 5. Ngóh yíhchíhn hohk Yíngmàhn.         | I formerly studied English.                        |

The general activity sentence with uninflected verb is more apt to be a 'set the stage' initiating sentence which starts a conversation than it is to be a follow sentence. The follow sentences, describing particular things accomplished within the general activity, are apt to be V + suffix sentences. Remember the rainy day 'I went to see my Grandmother' game of your childhood which goes down the alphabet with things you took along? 'I went to see my grandmother and I took an apple, a box, a cocoanut, etc.' Cantonese would render the general activity 'I went to see my grandmother' part with an uninflected verb and the particular accomplishments, 'took A, B, C' part with a two-part (performance + accomplishment) verb + suffix.

## 3. Past reference with verb + suffix, to express performance + achievement, experience, success, or other information.

The role of verb suffixes in Cantonese is to give additional information about the action performed-- that it has been done before, that the objective was achieved, that the performance was temporary, etc.

Examples:

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. Ngóh máaihjó go dáfógei. | [I buy-accomplish a cigarette lighter.]<br>i.e., I accomplish the purchasing of a cigarette lighter; I bought a cigarette lighter. |
|-----------------------------|--|

(Think of buying as a performance of dickering back and forth. Then you see that máaih-jó is to dicker for and achieve the objective of purchasing, to engage in a purchase transaction and carry it through.)

2. Ngóh síhkgwo Jùngchoi,  
daahnhaìh ngóh káhm-  
yaht dóu síh Saichāan.

I eat-experience Chinese food, but I  
yesterday in every case eat Western  
food.

i.e., I have had the experience of  
eating Chinese food, but yesterday  
in every case I ate Western food.

4. Role of verb suffixes in English and Cantonese compared.

In English verb suffixes are time-markers, relating the moment of speaking (i.e., now) to the moment spoken about (past, present, future). Note, for example, how the suffixes -s and -ed in English give information on the relation of time of speaking and time spoken about in the sentences: 'She loves me.' and 'She loved me.' In English the verb form changes according to the time spoken about, and this change is compulsory. In sentences relating to the past, English uses a past form of the verb, and in sentences relating to non-past time, a non-past form.

In Cantonese, verb suffixes themselves do not indicate when the performance took/takes/will take/ place in relation to the time of speaking, as verb suffixes do in English. In Cantonese, different suffixes represent 'accomplish,' 'succeed,' 'good,' 'possible,' 'temporary,' 'in progress,' etc. (It is very hard to talk about this in English, because when you make a sentence in English, you have to put past or present marks on the verbs. 'Perform-accomplish' doesn't make sense in English, you have to say 'performance accomplished' in which case you indicate that it has already happened, or 'Performance will have been accomplished' in which case you indicate that it hasn't happened yet but will have by the time you are speaking of, and so on.) For example, in Cantonese, Verb-jó = 'perform-accomplish,' indicates that the performance is viewed from the standpoint of its being accomplished, but when Verb-jó occurs in a subordinate clause without a timeword as clue, the sentence must rely on context, not grammar, to determine whether it refers to a past event or a non-past one. (Example given on following page.)

Ex: Gwojó sàam go gàaiháu,  
jauh haih laak.

(1) (He) crossed three intersections,  
then (there it) was.

(2) (After you) cross three inter-  
sections, then (there it) is.

(gwojó = pass-accomplish) i.e.,  
cross (an intersection)

i.e., When you have crossed three  
intersections, it'll be right  
there.

In a later lesson you will encounter another use of -jó in reference  
to non-past.

5. VP + sen. suf. làih in past reference sentences

VP + làih is used in two different types of past reference sentences,  
with different stress on làih in each and different meanings of the  
VP + làih set.

1) Movement VP + làih, to indicate having returned from having been away.

The làih in this instance receives medium stress.

- Ex: 1. Néih heui bīndouh làih a? Where have you been?  
2. Néih kàhmyaht heui bīndouh làih a? Where did you go yesterday?  
làih a?  
3. Kéuih ngāamgāam heuilàih. He has just returned from  
having been away.

(See BC)

2) VP + làih in a response sentence which contradicts the stimulus  
sentence's assertion of action performed. The speaker emphasizes  
by VP + làih that that was the action done, not what the stimulus  
sentence asserts or implies. The làih in this instance receives  
light stress. In this use the verb of the VP to which làih is  
attached does not have to be a movement verb, though it can be.

Ex: A: Néih saimúí wah ngóh jī neih kàhmyaht heui tái hei. Your younger sister told me  
you went to the movies  
yesterday.

B: Mhhaih gwā! Ngóh hái ngukkei dá paai làih-- Un-un! I played mahjong at  
home, that's what-- (I)  
mouh heui tái hei. didn't go to the movies.

(See BC and Drill 9)

6. daihyih M (var: daih M), 'other M'

- a. daihyih, literally 'the second,' can have the meaning 'other,' 'another,' 'additional one,' bound to a following Measure. If the Measure is plural, daihyih is of course part of the plural expression.

Ex: Kéuih máaihjó daihyih go            He bought another cigarette  
       dáfógei.                                    lighter.  
       Néih yáuh móuh máaih daihyih    Did you buy any other things?  
       dī yeh a?

(See BC)

- b. daih-M is a contraction of daihyih-M

Ex: daih dī yéh = daihyih dī yéh, 'other things'

## 7. Responses to questions negatively phrased.

There are two ways to answer a question negatively phrased (the you're not going, are you? kind of question). You have learned one way to answer such a question (See Lesson 12, pp 274-75)-- to respond by agreeing or disagreeing with the verb of the question.

Examples:

	Q: Néih ūkkéi móuh dihnwá ah.	Your house doesn't have a phone, huh.
(agree:)	A <sup>1</sup> : Haih a. Móuh dihnwá. Móuh cho. Móuh dihnwá.	Right, there's no phone. Right, there's no phone.
	or	
(disagree:)	A <sup>2</sup> : Mnhaih. Yáuh dihnwá.	Incorrect-- there's a phone.

The other way to answer is to respond with the affirmative or negative form of the verb which was used to ask the question. The problem for American learners is that the negative verb said in response in different intonations means opposite things. This is easier to grasp through hearing examples than by reading about it, but we'll give examples and then try to describe the differences.


Examples:

1) Q: Móuh máaihdou daihyih dī yeh ah.	You didn't buy anything else, huh.
A: Móuh--jihnghaih máaihjó go dafógei je.	No-- just bought the cigarette lighter, that's all.

The Móuh of the response is an echo of the negative verb in the question, agreeing with the negative assumption of the questioner. The stress on móuh is medium, the intonation unspirited.

(See BC)

- 2) Q: Móuh máaih<sup>h</sup> dou daihyih <sup>dí</sup> You didn't buy anything else,  
yéh <sup>áh.</sup> huh.  
A: M <sup>ó</sup> u h! Juhng máaih<sup>jó</sup> Not so! I bought a lot more.  
hóu<sup>dò</sup> ga.

Here the móuh of the response negates the whole sentence of the question. The stress on Móuh is strong, the word itself is drawn out long, the intonation is spirited and contoured like this: 

(English too uses difference in intonation to signal difference in meaning in two sentences otherwise identical. Think how different intonations can make 'That's great' mean 'That's wonderful' or 'That's horrible'.')

- 3) A: Néih ngūk<sup>kéi</sup> móuh dihnwá <sup>áh.</sup> Your house doesn't have a phone,  
B: Yáuh. Ngóh ngūk<sup>kéi</sup> yáuh It has. My house does have a  
dihnwa. phone.

The intonation and stress on Yáuh may be normal, like the Móuh of Example #1 above, or spirited and contoured like that of Example #2, but the central message is the same in both cases. In answering Yáuh to the stimulus sentence's móuh, it contradicts the stimulus sentence's assumption.

(See Drills 8, 9, 11)

8. séung, 'wish to': its function in past reference sentences.

séung permits yáuh móuh séung Verb? as well as séung m̀séung Verb? in the past reference question, with séung m̀séung? favored. The negative permits only m̀séung, not (-) móuh séung.

- Ex: 1. Néih mahmā wah ngóh jí 1. Your mother told me you  
néih kahmyah<sup>t</sup> m̀shyufuhk-- weren't feeling well  
néih yáuh móuh séung sihk yesterday-- did you want  
yéh a? to eat?  
or neih séung m̀séung sihk yéh a?  
2. Ngóh kahmyah<sup>t</sup> m̀shyufuhk-- 2. I didn't feel well yester-  
m̀séung sihk yéh. day-- I didn't want to eat.

séung has another meaning-- 'to think of'-- with the connotation 'it occurred to me.' In this sense séung takes móuh and yáuh móuh? in sentences of past reference.

Ex: Ngóh kàhmyaht séung heui. I thought of going yesterday.  
Ngóh kàhmyaht móuh séung- It didn't occur to me to go  
dou heui. yesterday.  
Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh Did it occur to you to go  
séung heui a? yesterday?

---

## III. DRILLS

1. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from affirmative to negative.

Ex: T: Ngóh sām dīm bun  
dākhaahn.

I'm free at three-thirty.

S: Ngóh sām dīm bun  
mhdākhaahn.

I'm busy at three-thirty.  
[I'm not free at 3:30.]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht dākhaahn.<br>I was free yesterday.   | 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht mhdākhaahn.<br>I wasn't free yesterday.                             |
| + 2. Ngóh nípaai dākhaahn.<br><u>/recently, these few days/</u><br>I've been free lately.<br>I'll be free these few days. | 2. Ngóh nípaai mhdākhaahn.<br>I've been busy lately.<br>I'll be busy these few days. |
| 3. Ngóh tǐngyaht dākhaahn.  | 3. Ngóh tǐngyaht mhdākhaahn.   |
| 4. Ngóh gǎmyaht dākhaahn.   | 4. Ngóh gǎmyaht mhdākhaahn.  |
| 5. Ngóh sígēi yīngā dākhaahn.   | 5. Ngóh sígēi yīngā mhdākhaahn.  |
| 6. Ngóh tǐngyaht yāt dīm<br>dākhaahn.   | 6. Ngóh tǐngyaht yāt dīm mhdāk-<br>haahn.  |
| 7. Ngóh kàhmyaht sei dīm<br>dākhaahn.   | 7. Ngóh kàhmyaht sei dīm<br>mhdākhaahn.  |

Repeat: Students changing statement into question, thus:

T: Ngóh kàhmyaht dāk-  
haahn.

I was free yesterday.

S: Néih kàhmyaht dāk-  
haahn a?

Were you busy yesterday?

Comment: Adjectives exhibit no formal distinction between past and non-past.

## 2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih tǐngyaht hái  
úkkéi.

He will be home tomorrow.

S: Kéuih kàhmyaht hái  
úkkéi.

He was home yesterday.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Néih tǐngyaht dāk mhdāk-<br>haahn a? | 1. Néih kàhmyaht dāk mhdāk-<br>haahn a? |
| 2. Ngóh tǐngyaht yáuh sih.              | 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht yáuh sih.              |
| 3. Ngóh tǐngyaht mhdākhaahn.            | 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht mhdākhaahn.            |
| 4. Ngóh tǐngyaht mhsái fàangùng.        | 4. Ngóh kàhmyaht mhsái fàangùng.        |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5. Ngòh tìngyaht mhséung heui taam kéuih.<br>Tomorrow I don't want to go see her. | 5. Ngòh kàhmyaht mhséung heui taam kéuih.<br>Yesterday I didn't want to go see her. |
| 6. Néih tìngyaht yáuh móuh sih a?   | 6. Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh sih a?   |
| 7. Kéuih tìngyaht hái mhhái séjihlàuh a?  | 7. Kéuih kàhmyaht hái mhhái séjihlàuh a?  |
| 8. Ngòh tìngyaht mhgau síngaan gwo hóí.   | 8. Ngòh kàhmyaht mhgau síngaan gwo hóí.   |
| 9. Ngòh tìngyaht móuh síngaan.  | 9. Ngòh kàhmyaht móuh síngaan.  |
| 10. Ngòh tìngyaht séung tái chéut hei.  | 10. Ngòh kàhmyaht séung tái chéut hei.  |

Comment: Non-performance verbs do not differentiate past and non-past by verb form.

3. Transformation Drill: Change the sentences from tìngyaht to kàhmyaht.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Ex: 1. T: Kéuih tìngyaht dá mǎhjeuk.<br>+    | T: He's going to <u>play mahjong</u> tomorrow.    |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht dá mǎhjeuk.                | S: He played mahjong yesterday.                   |
| 2. T: Kéuih tìngyaht mhdá mǎhjeuk.           | T: He's not going to play mahjong tomorrow.       |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá mǎhjeuk.           | S: He didn't play mahjong yesterday.              |
| 3. T: Kéuih tìngyaht dá mhdá mǎhjeuk a?      | T: Is he going to play mahjong tomorrow?          |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh dá mǎhjeuk a?    | S: Did he play mahjong yesterday?                 |
| 1. Kéuih tìngyaht dá dihnwá béi néih,        | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht dá dihnwá béi néih.             |
| 2. Kéuih tìngyaht mhdá dihnwá béi néih.      | 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá dihnwá béi néih.        |
| 3. Kéuih tìngyaht dá mhdá dihnwá béi néih a? | 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh dá dihnwá béi néih a? |
| 4. Kéuih tìngyaht fàanlaih.                  | 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht fàanlaih.                       |
| 5. Kéuih tìngyaht mhfàanlaih.                | 5. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh fàanlaih.                  |



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. Kéuih tǐngyaht fàan m̀h fàan-làih a?   | 6. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh fàanlài a?                           |
| 7. Kéuih tǐngyaht wán néih.   | 7. Kéuih kàhmyaht wán néih.                                      |
| 8. Kéuih tǐngyaht m̀h wán néih.   | 8. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh wán néih.                                 |
| 9. Kéuih tǐngyaht wán m̀h wán néih a?   | 9. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh wán néih a?                          |
| + 10. Kéuih tǐngyaht heui <u>yauhseui</u> .<br>(swim)<br>He's going swimming to-morrow. | 10. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui yauhseui.<br>He went swimming yesterday. |
| 11. Kéuih tǐngyaht m̀h heui yauhseui.   | 11. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui yauhseui.                           |
| 12. Kéuih tǐngyaht heui m̀h heui yauhseui a?  | 12. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh heui yauhseui a?                    |

## 4. Transformation Drill: Pos → Neg

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Ex: 1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo Gáulùhng.                  | He went over to Kowloon yesterday.                          |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh gwo Gáulùhng.                    | He didn't go over to Kowloon yesterday.                     |
| 2. T: Kéuih tǐngyaht gwo Gáulùhng.                      | He's going over to Kowloon tomorrow.                        |
| S: Kéuih tǐngyaht m̀h gwo Gáulùhng.                     | He's not going over to Kowloon tomorrow.                    |
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui tái hei.                         | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui tái hei.                        |
| + 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui <u>dá bō</u> .<br>/play ball/  | 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui dá bō.                          |
| 3. Wòhng Sàang tǐngyaht heui Méingwok.                  | 3. Wòhng Sàang tǐngyaht m̀h heui Méingwok.                  |
| 4. Chàhn Táai tǐngyaht heui Jùngwàahn.                  | 4. Chàhn Táai tǐngyaht m̀h heui Jùngwàahn.                  |
| 5. Ngóh taaitái kàhmyaht heui yám cháh.                 | 5. Ngóh taaitái kàhmyaht móuh heui yám cháh.                |
| 6. Ngóh sinsàang tǐngyaht heui Gáulùhng taam pàhngyáuh. | 6. Ngóh sinsàang tǐngyaht m̀h heui Gáulùhng taam pàhngyáuh. |
| 7. Ngóh go jái kàhmyaht heui ngàhnòhng lô chín.         | 7. Ngóh go jái kàhmyaht móuh heui ngàhnòhng lô chín.        |

Repeat as choice-type question transformation.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo<br>Gáulùhng.             | He went over to Kowloon<br>yesterday.   |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh<br>móuh gwo Gáulùhng<br>a? | Did he go over to Kowloon<br>yesterday? |
| 2. T: Kéuih tìngyaht gwo<br>Gáulùhng.             | He will go over to Kowloon<br>tomorrow. |
| S: Kéuih tìngyaht gwo<br>m̀hgwò Gáulùhng a?       | Will he go over to Kowloon<br>tomorrow? |

5. Transformation Drill: Change haih m̀hhaih Verb? to the suitable form of Verb m̀h Verb?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Néih tìngyaht haih<br>m̀hhaih heui tái hei<br>a? | T: Are you going to the movies<br>tomorrow? |
| S: Néih tìngyaht heui<br>m̀hheui tái hei<br>a?          | S: Will you go to the movies<br>tomorrow?   |
| T: Néih kàhmyaht haih<br>m̀hhaih heui tái<br>hei a?     | T: Did you go to the movies<br>yesterday?   |
| S: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh<br>móuh heui tái<br>hei a?        | S: Did you go to the movies<br>yesterday?   |
- 
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Néih sīgēi tìngyaht haih<br>m̀hhaih heui Gáulùhng a?   | 1. Néih sīgēi tìngyaht heui<br>m̀hheui Gáulùhng a?              |
| 2. Chàhn Sàang tìngyaht haih<br>m̀hhaih heui yám chàh a?  | 2. Chàhn Sàang tìngyaht heui<br>m̀hheui yám chàh a?             |
| 3. Néih taaitáai kàhmyaht haih<br>m̀hhaih heui Jùngwáahn a?                                     | 3. Néih taaitáai kàhmyaht<br>yáuh móuh heui Jùngwáahn<br>a?     |
| 4. Gó go yáhn kàhmyaht haih<br>m̀hhaih heui Gáulùhng a?   | 4. Gó go yáhn kàhmyaht yáuh<br>móuh heui Gáulùhng a?            |
| + 5. Néih dī <u>sailóugō</u> tìngyaht<br>haih m̀hhaih heui Méihgwok a?<br>( <u>child(ren)</u> ) | 5. Néih dī <u>sailóugō</u> tìngyaht<br>heui m̀hheui Méihgwok a? |

## 6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh kàhmyaht dá páai. /tái hei/

T: I played mahjong yesterday.  
/see movie/

S: Ngóh kàhmyaht dá páai làih--móuh tái hei.

S: I played mahjong yesterday,  
I didn't see a movie.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui chàhlàuh yám chàh. /tái hei/                                | 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui chàhlàuh yám chàh làih--móuh tái hei.   |
| + 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht hái ùkkéi tái <u>dihnsih</u> . (watch television) /cheut gāai/ | 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht hái ùkkéi tái dihnsih làih--móuh cheut gāai. |
| 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín. /yàuhséui/                              | 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín làih--móuh yàuhséui. |
| 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht gaau ngóh Gwóngdùngwá. /dá páai/                                | 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht gaau ngóh Gwóngdùngwá làih--móuh dá páai.   |
| 5. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui yàuhséui. /tái dihnsih/                                     | 5. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui yàuhséui làih--móuh tái dihnsih.        |

Comment: The suffix--laih is used in the past reference sentence in the affirmative form only. The speaker emphasizes with VP-laih that that was the activity he did, not some other activity. The plainfact sentence without laih has no special emphasis.

## 7. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh kàhmyaht máaih sēutsāam làih. /sāam gihn/

T: I bought some shirts yesterday. /3 unit/

S1: Máaihjó géidō gihn nē?

S1: How many did you buy?  
[buy-accomplish how many?]

S2: Máaihjó sāam gihn.

S2: I bought three.  
[buy-accomplish three.]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht yám bējáu làih. /léuhng jí/  | 1. S1: Yámjó géidō jí a?<br>S2: Yámjó léuhng jí. |
| 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht sihk pihnggwó làih. /sei go/ | 2. S1: Sihkjó géidō go a?<br>S2: Sihkjó sei go.  |
| 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht ló chín làih. /yāt baak mán/ | 3. S1: Lójó géidō a?<br>S2: Lójó yāt baak mán.   |

4. Ngóh kàhmyaht máaih maht làih. /sàam deui/      4. S1: Máaihjó gèidō deui a?  
S2: Máaihjó sàam deui.

## 8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih kàhmyaht móuh máaih seutsaam àh.      T: You didn't buy a shirt yesterday, did you.  
S: Yáuh! Máaihjó la.      S: Yes, I did buy one.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh tái hei àh.<br>You didn't see a movie yesterday, did you.                                    | 1. Yáuh! Táijó la.<br><u>Yes</u> , I <u>did</u> see one. |
| 2. Wòhng Sàang kàhmyaht móuh <u>chéng haak</u> àh.<br>Mr. Wong didn't <u>have a dinner party</u> yesterday, did he. | 2. Yáuh! Chéngjó la.                                     |
| 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh fàanlaih àh.   | 3. Yáuh! Fàanjó la.                                      |
| 4. Néih kàhmyaht móuh tái yī-sāng àh.   | 4. Yáuh! Táijó la.                                       |
| 5. Néih kàhmyaht móuh cheung chin àh.   | 5. Yáuh! Cheungjó la.                                    |

Comment: chéng haak = have a dinner party  
chéng sihk faahn, chéng yàhn sihk faahn = invite someone for dinner.

## 9. Response Drill: Contradict the other person's impression.

Ex: T: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá páai àh.      He didn't play mahjong yesterday, did he.  
S: Yáuh! Dá làih.      Yes, he did play.

- |  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh wán kéuih àh.     | 1. Yáuh, wán làih.  |
| 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá bò àh.         | 2. Yáuh, dá làih.   |
| 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh tái dihn-sih àh.  | 3. Yáuh, tái làih.  |
| 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui yáuhseui àh. | 4. Yáuh, heui làih. |

Comment: The answers in Drills 8 and 9 above represent spirited denial. Ordinary denial would be:

Q: ...móuh tái hei àh.      Q: ...didn't see a movie, huh.  
A: Yáuh, yáuh tái.      A: Yes, I did.

## 10. Expansion-Transformation Drill: Expand or transform as appropriate.

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht  
gwo Gáulühng taam  
sínsaang.  
/haih mhhaih a?/  
S: Kéuih kàhmyaht haih  
mhhaih gwo Gáu-  
lühng taam sìn-  
sàang a?
2. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht haih  
mhhaih gwo Gáu-  
lühng taam sìn-  
sàang a? /móuh/  
S: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh  
gwo Gáulühng taam  
sínsaang.
- Yesterday he crossed over to  
Kowloon to see his teacher.  
/isn't that right?/  
Did he cross over to Kowloon  
yesterday to see his teacher?  
Did he cross over to Kowloon  
yesterday to see his teacher?  
/didn't/  
He didn't cross over to Kowloon  
yesterday to see his teacher.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh.<br>/kàhmyaht/ | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo Gáulühng<br>máaih yéh.               |
| 2. /móuh/                                      | 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh gwo Gáu-<br>lühng máaih yéh.        |
| 3. /yáuh móuh a?/                              | 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh<br>gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh a?   |
| 4. /haih mhhaih/                               | 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht haih mhhaih<br>gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh a? |
| 5. /mhhaih aak/                                | 5. Kéuih kàhmyaht mhhaih gwo<br>Gáulühng máaih yéh aak.    |
| 6. /haih aak/                                  | 6. Kéuih kàhmyaht haih gwo Gáu-<br>lühng máaih yéh aak.    |

## 11. Question and Answer drill

- Ex: T: /tái dihnsih/                      /watch television/  
S<sub>1</sub> Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh      Did you watch television  
tái dihnsih a?                              yesterday?  
S<sub>2</sub> Yáuh, yáuh tái.                        Yes, I did.

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 1. /dá bō/   | 1. S <sub>1</sub> : Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh dá bō a?<br>S <sub>2</sub> : Yáuh, yáuh dá.    |
| 2. /tái syù/ | 2. S <sub>1</sub> : Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh tái syù a?<br>S <sub>2</sub> : Yáuh, yáuh tái. |

3. /yám jáu/                      3. S<sub>1</sub>: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh yám jáu a?  
S<sub>2</sub>: Yáuh, yáuh yám.
4. /heui yám chàh/                4. S<sub>1</sub>: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh heui yám chàh  
a?  
S<sub>2</sub>: Yáuh, yáuh heui.
5. /tái yīsāng/                    5. S<sub>1</sub>: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh tái yīsāng a?  
S<sub>2</sub>: Yáuh, yáuh tái.
6. /wán kéuih/                    6. S<sub>1</sub>: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh wán kéuih a?  
S<sub>2</sub>: Yáuh, yáuh wán.

Comment: The above represents the ordinary way to ask and answer with no special emphasis or assumption.

#### IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to worklist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) wáan = amuse oneself, play (general verb for leisure time activity)
- 2) sóyih = therefore
- 3) dá móhng kàu = play tennis
  - a) móhng kàu = tennis ball
- 4) Bóuwáhn Douh = Bowei Road
- 5) kàu chéuhng = tennis court
- 6) daih yáht = daih (yah) yáht = another day
- 7) beisyù = secretary
- 8) Mánèihlāai = Manila
- 9) Fēileuhtbān = Philippines
- 10) gūngjái = doll
- 11) Wei! = Hey!; Say!; exclamation used to attract someone's attention
- 12) yārchāih = together
- 13) ginmihh = meet

- 14) Haih gám wah lā. = We'll do it the way you say.  
 15) M'ouh heui bīndouh. = Haven't gone anywhere.  
 16) ā ma = sen. suf. of response sentence, indicating in a nice way:  
 'This is pretty obvious.'  
 17) haih bo = here: by the way, ...  
 18) máaih sung = buy groceries
- 

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. You say to the classmate sitting next to you:   | B. And he responds:  |
| 1. What'd you do yesterday?  | 1. I went to the movies with my wife.  |
| 2. What movie did you see?   | 2. I forget the name.  |
| 3. I didn't go out yesterday, I stayed at home watching television.                        | 3. I watched television yesterday too.   |
| 4. Where'd you go yesterday? I went to your house to look for you, but you weren't home.   | 4. I went swimming yesterday.  |
| 5. I'd like to learn to play mahjong-- could you teach me?                                 | 5. Sure. When are you free these days?   |
| 6. Could you please tell me how to get to the Hoover Theater?                              | 6. First go to the next intersection and turn left, then go straight until the second intersection, and it's on the right hand side. |
| 7. What would you like to do today-- play ball or go swimming?                             | 7. I went swimming yesterday, let's play ball today.   |
| 8. Did you go to Kowloon to see your girl friend yesterday?                                | 8. No, I was very busy yesterday and didn't go.  |
| 9. I went to the Central District yesterday to buy shoes-- I bought a pair of white ones.  | 9. I went shopping for shoes too, but I didn't buy any.  |
| 10. (still talking about yesterday) I bought a nice-looking lighter at a department store. | 10. I also wanted to buy a lighter, but I didn't get one.  |
| 11. My son played ball yesterday. Did your son go?   | 11. No, he didn't. He stayed home and read.  |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 12. Miss Chan went to the movies with Mr. Lee yesterday. | 12. Not so! She didn't go with Mr. Lee, she went with me!                                 |
| 13. Mr. Lee took Miss Chan swimming yesterday.           | 13. Not so! They didn't go swimming, they stayed at Miss Chan's house and played mahjong. |

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 16

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. bō   | n: ball  |
| 2. chéng haak   | VO: have a dinner party [invite-guests]  |
| 3. chéng síhk faahn, <u>or</u><br>cheng yahn síhk faahn | VO: invite someone to dinner   |
| 4. chēut  | m: M for a movie, a film   |
| 5. dá bō  | VO: play ball  |
| 6. dá màhjeuk   | VO: play mahjong   |
| 7. dá páai  | VO: play mahjong [hit-tiles]   |
| 8. dáfógei  | n: (cigarette) lighter   |
| 9. daihdí   | Ph: var. of 'daihyih dí,' others, other (ones)   |
| 10. daihyih (+ M)                                       | another (M) [lit: the 2d M]  |
| 11. daihyih dí  | Ph: others, other (ones) [lit: the 2d ones]  |
| 12. dākhaahn  | Adj: free, at leisure  |
| 13. dihmsh  | n: television  |
| 14. gānyaht   | TW: today  |
| 15. gwo hói   | VO: cross the sea, harbor  |
| 16. hàahng gūngsí                                       | VO: windowshop   |
| 17. hei   | n: movie   |
| 18. heiyún  | n/PW: movie theater  |
| 19. hói   | n: sea   |
| 20. Hòuh wàh Heiyún                                     | PW: Hoover Theater   |
| 21. jihngaih <u>V</u>                                   | Adv: just, merely, only <u>V</u>   |
| 22. kàhmyaht  | TW: yesterday  |
| 23. -laih   | ss: suffixed to a heui VP,<br>indicates that person spoken<br>about has returned from where he went              |
| 24. -laih   | ss: VP suffix in response sentence<br>adding connotation of 'that's what<br>happened, not the thing you thought' |



- |                   |                                      |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 25. mǎh jéuk      | m: mahjong                           |
| 26. mǎh dāk hāahn | Adj: busy                            |
| 27. nǐ pǎai       | TW: lately, recently, these few days |
| 28. sǎi lóugō     | n: child, children                   |
| 29. sǐngaan       | n: time                              |
| 30. tái dihnsih   | VO: watch television                 |
| 31. tái hei       | VO: see a movie                      |
| 32. tǐngyaht      | TW: tomorrow                         |
| 33. yǎuh séui     | VO: swim; swimming                   |
-

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Two acquaintances, one Chinese, one American, talk together at a party:)

Jüנגgwokyähñ

noih	long (time)
hóu noih móuh gin	'long time no see'
Wòhng Sàang! Hóu noih móuh gin	Mr. Wong: I haven't seen you
bo,	in a long time.
fàanheui	go back, return
fàanheui Méihgwok	go back to America
láihsaaí	week
hah go láihbaai	next week
hah go láihbaai fàanheui	go back next week
tèngginwah	hear tell, I hear ...
Tèngginwah néih hah go láihbaai	I hear you're going back to
fàanheui Méihgwok--hah	the States next week--is that
mhahí a?	right?

Méihgwokyähñ

Móuh cho.	That's right.
-houh	day of the month
yahluhk houh	the 26th (of the month)
dásyun	plan on, plan to
dásyun yahluhk houh fàanheui	plan to go back on the 26th
láihsaaísei	Thursday
jíkhahí	that is, in other words,
	that is to say
Ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh	I plan to go back on the 26th-
fàanheui--jíkhahí láihbaaísei.	-Thursday, that is.

Jüנגgwokyähñ

Ngóh dōu dásyun heui Méihgwok.	I plan to go to America, too.
--------------------------------	-------------------------------

Méihgwokyähñ

Hah mē? Néih géisíh heui nē?	Is that so?! When are you going?
------------------------------	----------------------------------

Jùnggwokyáhn

wah m̀hdihng	can't say for sure; uncertain
Wah m̀hdihng ga.	I'm not sure.
chēutnín	next year
yihyuht	February
Waahkjé chēutnín yihyuht lā.	Maybe February next year.

Méihgwokyáhn

Néih yáuh móuh heuigwo	Have you ever been to the
Méihgwok a?	States before?

Jùnggwokyáhn

-níhn	year
yāt-gáu-luhk-chāt níhn	in 1967
Yáuh--yāt-gáu-luhk-chāt níhn	Yes, I made a trip in 1967.
heuiláih.	

Méihgwokyáhn

deihfòng	place
bīn dī deihfòng	which places?
Heuigwo bīn dī deihfòng a?	What places did you go?

Jùnggwokyáhn

Sàamfàahnsih	San Francisco
Wàhsihngdeuhn	Washington
Heuigwo Sàamfàahnsih tùhng	I went to San Francisco and
Wàhsihngdeuhn jē.	Washington, that's all.
daat	Measure for <u>deihfòng</u>
gó léuhng daat deihfòng	those two places
chānchik	relatives
Gó léuhng daat deihfòng, ngóh	In those two places I have
dōu yáuh chānchik hái douh.	relatives.

Méihgwokyáhn

hahchi	next time
Néih hahchi haih àhhaih dōuhaih	Will you go to Washington
heui Wàhsihngdeuhn a?	next time, too?

Jùnggwokyáhn

Haih a.	That's right.
---------	---------------

Méihgwokyáhn

deihjí  
 Dáng ngóh sé ngóh go deihjí  
 béi néih lā.  
 jigányiu

address  
 Let me write my address and  
 give it to you.  
 be sure to, by all means  
 do [most important]  
 'Come visit me.' [come sit]  
 When you get to Washington, be  
 sure to come see me.

Lāih choh lā.  
 Doujó Wáhsihngdeuhn jigányiu  
 lāih ngóhdouh choh ā.

Júnggwokyáhn

A! Ngóh dōu àhjí néih ngūkkéi  
 hái Wáhsihngdeuhn tím.

Oh--I didn't know your home  
 was in Washington.

Méihgwokyáhn

chēutsai  
 Haih a. Ngóh hái gódeuh chēutsai  
 ge.

born  
 Yes, I was born there.

B. Recapitulation:Júnggwokyáhn

Wòhng Sàng! Hóu noih móuh  
 gin bo.  
 Tèngginwah néih bah go lāihbaai  
 fàanheui Méihgwok--haih  
 àhhaih a?

Mr. Wong! I haven't seen you  
 in a long time.  
 I hear you're going back to  
 the States next week--is  
 that right?

Méihgwokyáhn

Móuh cho.  
 Ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh fàanheui-  
 -jíkhaih lāihbaaisei.

That's right.  
 I plan to go back on the 26th--  
 Thursday, that is.

Júnggwokyáhn

Ngóh dōu dásyun heui Méihgwok.

I'm planning to go to America,  
 too.

Méihgwokyáhn

Haih mē? Néih géisih heui nē?

Is that so?! When are you going?

Júnggwokyáhn

Wah àhdihng ga--

I'm not sure--

Waaahkjé chéutnín yihyuht lā.	Maybe February next year.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Néih yáuh móuh heuigwo Méihgwok a?	Have you ever been to the States before?
<u>Júnggwokyáhn</u>	
Yáuh--yāt-gáu-luhk-chāt nihh heuiláih.	Yes, I made a trip in 1967.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Heuigwo bīn dī deihfòng a?	What places did you go?
<u>Júnggwokyáhn</u>	
Heuigwo Sàanfàahnsih tùhng Wáhsihngdeuhn jē.	I went to San Fransisco and Washington, that's all.
Gó léuhng daat deihfòng ngòh dōu yáuh chānchik hái dough.	In those two places I have relatives.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Néih hahchi haih mhhaih dōuhaih heui Wáhsihngdeuhn a?	Will you go to Washington next time too?
<u>Júnggwokyáhn</u>	
Haih .	That's right.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Dáng ngòh sé ngòh go deihjí béi néih lā.	Let me write my address for you.
Doujō Wáhsihngdeuhn jigányiu làih ngòhdouh chòh lā.	When you get to Washington be sure to come visit me.
<u>Júnggwokyáhn</u>	
A! Ngòh dōu àhjí néih ngùkkéi hái Wáhsihngdeuhn tím.	Oh--I didn't know your home was in Washington.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Haih a. Ngòh hái gódouh chēutsái ge.	Yes, I was born there.

## II. NOTES

## A. Culture Notes

1. Lunar and solar calendar. In Hong Kong dates are reckoned by the solar calendar. Many people, however, reckon the dates of births, deaths, and weddings by the traditional lunar calendar. (On traditional Chinese wedding invitations both the lunar date and the solar date are given.)
2. Where you're born and where you're from. Traditionally a Chinese counts himself as being from the place where his ancestral village is, which may or may not be where he was born and brought up. A similar way of looking at things might be held by a person born to American parents living outside the U.S.

## B. Structure Notes:

1. Fixed order in dates and addresses. Larger units precede smaller in descending order:

Ex: chēutnìhn yihyuht      next year on February 3rd  
saam houh

(See BC and Drill 6)

Addresses are given in the same descending order:

Ex: Ngòh ge séjihlauh      My office is at 149 Queen's Road  
hai Daaih Douh Jung      Central, on the 3rd floor.  
yāt-sei-gáu houh,  
sei lau.

2. Dates.

- a. Days of the week. Starting with Monday as the first day, Monday through Saturday are serially numbered:

1. Láihbaaiyāt	Monday
2. Láihbaaiyih	Tuesday
3. Láihbaaisaam	Wednesday
4. Láihbaaisei	Thursday
5. Láihbaaiñgh	Friday
6. Láihbaailuhk	Saturday
7. Láihbaai(yaht)	Sunday

Láihbaai is commonly used for 'Sunday'; but láihbaai also means 'week.' Láihbaaiyáht, 'Sunday,' may be used in sentences which would be ambiguous with the use of láihbaai; generally, however, context makes the meaning clear.

- Ex: 1. Tíngyáht láihbaai. Tomorrow is Sunday.  
 2. Ngóh hángo láihbaai } I'm busy next week. or  
     mhdákhaahn. } I'm busy next Sunday.

(See Drill 2)

Another word for 'week' is síngkèih. Síngkèih is substitutable for láihbaai everywhere, with one exception: Síngkèih is not used to mean 'Sunday.'

- b. Months of the year. Starting with January as the first month, January through December are serially numbered.

yātyuht	January	chātyuht	July
yihyuht	February	baatyuht	August
sāmyuht	March	gāuyuht	September
seiyuht	April	sahpyuht	October
ńghyuht	May	sahpyātyuht	November
luhkyuht	June	sahpyihyuht	December

- c. Years.

1. -níhn, 'year,' is preferred, but not obligatory, in year dates.

Ex: yāt-gáu-yāt-yāt (níhn) 1911  
       yāt-gáu-sei-gáu-(níhn) 1949

2. Note that -nín is a rising tone in:

gauh<sup>́</sup>nín last year  
 gām<sup>́</sup>nín this year  
 chēut<sup>́</sup>nín next year

-níhn is, however, used by some people in these phrases:

gauh<sup>̀</sup>níhn  
 gām<sup>̀</sup>níhn  
 chēut<sup>̀</sup>níhn

d. Question-Word formulas for dates:

bīn nih̄n?	which ( <u>or</u> what) year?
bīn nih̄n bīn yuht bīn yaht?	what date?
géi yuht?	which ( <u>or</u> what) month?
géi(dō) houh?	which ( <u>or</u> what) day?
lāihbaaigéi?	which ( <u>or</u> what) day of the week?
bīn yaht?	which ( <u>or</u> what) day? (answer stated as day of week or tingyaht, gamyaht, etc.)

(See Drill 3)

3. Timewords.

- a. A word or phrase which can fill the position before or after ji 'until,' 'to' is a Timeword (TW).

Ex: Lāihbaaisei ji lāihbaailuhk Thursday to Saturday

Kéuih lāihbaaisei ji lāihbaailuhk He has to go to work  
 yiu faangung. from Thursday until  
 Saturday.

- b. Timewords fill the Time When position before a verb. (See example above.)

- c. Names of months are Timewords, but one month, two months, etc., are number-measure compounds that cannot fill the Timeword position. Instead they fill the length of time (time span) position after the verb.

Ex:	<u>TimeWhen</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>Time-span</u>
1. Kéuih	Sāamyuht	heui.	He's going in March.
2. Kéuih séung	heui	sāam go yuht.	He plans to go for three months.

4. Sentence suffix lā, for uncertainty.

Suffixed to sentences predicting time of an action the raised intonation lā suggests a degree of uncertainty, suggests that the time is approximate rather than exact.

Ex: 1. A. Néih géi dím yiu jáu a?	When do you have to go?
B. Léuhng dím lā.	About two o'clock.
2. A. Néih géisih heui a?	When are you going?
B. Waahkjé chēutnín yihyuht lā.	Oh, probably February next year.

(See BC)



## III. DRILLS

## 1. Expansion Drill:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| + 1. a. <u>yuht</u>                         | 1. a. <u>month</u>                          |
| + b. <u>hahgo yuht</u>                      | b. <u>next month</u>                        |
| c. hahgo yuht heui                          | c. go next month                            |
| d. hahgo yuht fàanheui                      | d. go back next month                       |
| e. dásyun hahgo yuht fàanheui               | e. plan to go back next month               |
| f. Ngóh dásyun hahgo yuht fàanheui Yíngwok. | f. I plan to go back to England next month. |

## 2. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| + 1. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiyāt</u> heui tái heui.<br>I'm going to a movie <u>Monday</u> . | 1. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiyāt</u> heui tái heui.  |
| + 2. / <u>láhbaaiyih</u> /<br>( <u>Tuesday</u> )                                   | 2. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiyih</u> heui tái heui.  |
| + 3. / <u>láhbaaisàam</u> /<br>( <u>Wednesday</u> )                                | 3. Ngóh <u>láhbaaisàam</u> heui tái heui. |
| + 4. / <u>láhbaaiñgh</u> /<br>( <u>Friday</u> )                                    | 4. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiñgh</u> heui tái heui.  |
| + 5. / <u>láhbaailuhk</u> /<br>( <u>Saturday</u> )                                 | 5. Ngóh <u>láhbaailuhk</u> heui tái heui. |
| + 6. / <u>láhbaaiyaht</u> /<br>( <u>Sunday</u> )                                   | 6. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiyaht</u> heui tái heui. |
| + 7. / <u>láhbaai</u> /<br>( <u>Sunday</u> )                                       | 7. Ngóh <u>láhbaai</u> heui tái heui.     |

## 3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht làih ge.<br>He came yesterday. | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht làih ge.                      |
| + 2. / <u>gauh nín</u> /<br>( <u>last year</u> ) | 2. Kéuih gauh nín làih ge.                      |
| + 3. / <u>gám nín</u> /<br>( <u>this year</u> )  | 3. Kéuih gám nín làih ge.<br>He came this year. |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| + 4. / <u>seuhng go yuht</u> /  | 4. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht làih ge.  |
| + 5. / <u>seuhng go láihbaai</u> /  | 5. Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai làih ge.                                      |
| + 6. / <u>nī go láihbaai</u> /<br>( <u>this week</u> )                            | 6. Kéuih nīgo láihbaai làih ge.<br>He came this week.                    |
| + 7. / <u>nī go yuht</u> /<br>( <u>this month</u> )                               | 7. Kéuih nīgo yuht làih ge.<br>He came this month.                       |
| + 8. / <u>gēi yuht?</u> /<br>( <u>which month?</u> )<br>( <u>what month?</u> )    | 8. Kéuih gēi yuht làih ga?<br>What month did he come?                    |
| + 9. / <u>bīn nīhn?</u> /<br>( <u>which year?</u> )<br>( <u>what year?</u> )      | 9. Kéuih bīn nīhn làih ga?<br>What year did he come?                     |
| + 10. / <u>bīn nīhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht?</u> /<br>( <u>what date?</u> )           | 10. Kéuih bīn nīhn bīn yuht, bīn yaht làih ga?<br>What date did he come? |
| + 11. / <u>gēi(dō) houh?</u> /<br>( <u>what day?</u> )<br>( <u>of the month</u> ) | 11. Kéuih gēi(dō) houh làih ga?  |
| + 12. / <u>lāihbaaigēi?</u> /<br>( <u>what day of the week?</u> )                 | 12. Kéuih lāihbaaigēi làih ga?   |
| + 13. / <u>bīn yaht?</u> /<br>( <u>what day?</u> )                                | 13. Kéuih bīn yaht làih ga?  |

Comment: gēi yuht? is the usual way for asking which/what month? but in a nīhn yuht yaht 'year-month-day' phrase, bīn is preferred as question-word: bīn nīhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht a? = what date?

4. Conversation Drill: Students should recite the days of the week after the teacher before beginning this drill.

Ex: T: Gàm yaht lāihbaaisei. T: Today is Thursday.

S1: Tīng yaht lāihbaai-gēi a? S1: What day of the week is tomorrow?

S2: Tīng yaht lāihbaai-ńgh. S2: Tomorrow is Friday.

- |                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Gàm yaht lāihbaaiyh.  | 1. A. Tīng yaht lāihbaaigēi a? |
|                          | B. Tīng yaht lāihbaaisàam.     |
| 2. Gàm yaht lāihbaaisei. | 2. A. Tīng yaht lāihbaaigēi a? |
|                          | B. Tīng yaht lāihbaaińgh.      |

3. Gàm yaht làihbaaiyāt.

3. A. Tíng yaht làihbaai géi a?

B. Tíng yaht làihbaai yih.

4. Gàm yaht làihbaai.

4. A. Tíng yaht làihbaai géi a?

B. Tíng yaht làihbaai yāt.

### 5. Conversation Drill

Ex: T: Làihbaaiyāt sàam  
houh.

T: Monday is the third.

S1: Làihbaai yih géidō  
houh a?

S1: What day of the month is it  
Tuesday?

S2: Làihbaai yih sei  
houh.

S2: Tuesday is the 4th.

1. Làihbaai yaht baat houh.

1. A. Léihbaai yāt géidō houh a?

B. Làihbaai yāt gáu houh.

2. Làihbaai sei yih houh.

2. A. Làihbaai íng gh géidō houh a?

B. Làihbaai íng gh sàam houh.

3. Làihbaai sàam sahpluhk houh.

3. A. Làihbaai sei géidō houh a?

B. Làihbaai sei sah pchāt houh.

4. Léihbaai íng gh sah pchāt houh.

4. A. Làihbaai luhk géidō houh  
a?

B. Làihbaai luhk sah pbaat  
houh.

5. Làihbaai luhk yahyāt houh.

5. A. Làihbaai yaht géidō houh  
a?

B. Léihbaai yaht yahyih houh.

### 6. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ngóh yih houh  
laih ge.  
/chāt yuht/

T: I came on the 2nd. /July/

S: Ngóh chāt yuht  
yih houh làih ge.

S: I came on July 2nd.

1. Ngóh luhk yuht làih ge.  
/yahsei houh/

1. Ngóh luhk yuht yahsei houh  
laih ge.

2. Ngóh sei yuht làih ge.  
/yāt-gáu-luhk-sàam nihh/

2. Ngóh yāt-gáu-luhk-sàam nihh  
sei yuht làih ge.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3. Ngóh gauh nín làih ge.<br>/sàam yuht/              | 3. Ngóh gauh nín sàam yuht<br>laih ge.<br>I came in March last year. |
| 4. Ngóh chāt houh làih ge.<br>/gáu yuht/              | 4. Ngóh gáu yuht chāt houh<br>laih ge.                               |
| 5. Ngóh yāt gáu luhk sei nihn<br>laih ge. /baat yuht/ | 5. Ngóh yāt gáu luhk sei nihn<br>baat yuht laih ge.                  |

## 7. Translation-Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: /last year/

S1: Kéuih géisih làih ga? S1: When did he come?  
ga?

S2: Kéuih gauhnín làih ge. S2: He came last year.

2. T: /next year/

S1: Kéuih géisih làih a? S1: When is he coming?

S2: Kéuih chēutnín làih. S2: He's coming next year.

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. /last month/          | 1. A. Kéuih géisih làih ga?<br>B. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht làih.                  |
| 2. /last week/           | 2. A. Kéuih géisih làih ga?<br>B. Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai<br>laih ge.        |
| 3. /13th of last month/  | 3. A. Kéuih géisih làih ga?<br>B. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht sahpsàam houh làih ge. |
| 4. /next month/          | 4. A. Kéuih géisih làih a?<br>B. Kéuih hahgo yuht làih.                      |
| 5. /September next year/ | 5. A. Kéuih géisih làih a?<br>B. Kéuih chēutnín gáuyuht<br>laih.             |
| 6. /next Wednesday/      | 6. A. Kéuih géisih làih a?<br>B. Kéuih hahgo láihbaaisàam<br>laih.           |
| 7. /January last year/   | 7. A. Kéuih géisih làih ga?<br>B. Kéuih gauhnín yāt yuht<br>laih ge.         |

8. /29th of next month/

8. A. Kéuih géisih làih a?

B. Kéuih haigo yuht yahgáu  
houh làih.

8. Question & Answer Drill

Ex: T: 'Jáugā' haih sihk Jùng-T: 'Jáugā' is a place where you  
choi ge deihfòng. eat Chinese food.

S1: Mēyéh giujouh  
'jáugā' a?

S1: What thing is called a 'jáugā'?

S2: 'Jáugā' jíkhaih  
sihk Jùngchoi  
ge deihfòng.

S2: 'Jáugā' is a place where you  
eat Chinese food, that's  
what.

1. 'Chāansāt' haih sihk Sāichāan  
ge deihfòng.

1. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'chāansāt'  
a?

S2: 'Chāansāt' jíkhaih sihk  
Sāichāan ge deihfòng.

2. 'Séjihlāuh' haih jouh sih ge  
deihfòng.

2. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'séjih-  
lāuh' a?

S2: 'Séjihlāuh' jíkhaih jouh  
sih ge deihfòng.

3. 'Gūngsī' haih maaih yéh ge  
deihfòng.

3. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'gūngsī' a?

S2: 'Gūngsī' jíkhaih maaih  
yéh ge deihfòng.

4. 'Ngūk' haih jyuh ge deihfòng.

4. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'ngūk' a?

S2: 'Ngūk' jíkhaih jyuh ge  
deihfòng.

5. 'Chàhlāuh' haih yám cháh ge  
deihfòng.

5. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'chàhlāuh'  
a?

S2: 'Chàhlāuh' jíkhaih yám  
cháh ge deihfòng.

6. 'Heiyún' haih tái hei ge  
deihfòng.

6. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'heiyún' a?

S2: 'Heiyún' jíkhaih tái hei  
ge deihfòng.

## 9. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih dásyun géisih heui a? /hahgo yuht/ T: When does she plan to go? /next month/  
 S: Dásyun hahgo yuht heui. S: (She) plans to go next month.
2. T: Kéuih géisih heui ga? /seuhnggo yuht/ T: When did she go? /last month/  
 S: Seuhnggo yuht heui ge. S: She went last month.

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Wòhng Sàang dásyun géisih jáu a? /nígo yuht/           | 1. Dásyun nígo yuht jáu.            |
| 2. Néih dásyun géisih máaih a? /hahgo láihbaai/           | 2. Dásyun hahgo láihbaai máaih.     |
| 3. Néihdeih géisih jough ga? /seuhnggo yuht/              | 3. Seuhnggo yuht jough ge.          |
| 4. Néih s'nsàang géisih fàanlâih ga? /nígo yuht yāt houh/ | 4. Nígo yuht yāt houh fàan lâih ge. |
| 5. Hòh Táai dásyun géisih fàanheui a? /tingyaht/          | 5. Dásyun t'ingyaht fàanheui.       |

Comment: If the action expressed by the verb has already occurred, the géisih question adds ge (ga) to the verb phrase. To a géisih VP-ga question, the answer is stated in VP-ge form.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Ex: 1. Kéuih géisih heui Yíngwok ga? | 1. When did he go to England?                          |
| 2. Kéuih gauhnín heui ge.            | 2. He went last year. (It was last year that he went.) |

But if the statement sentence is a lead sentence, not a response to a géisih question, the preferred form is without ge.

- |                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Ex: Kéuih gauhnín heui Yíngwok. | He went to England last year. |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|

This sentence is a plain fact statement of general activity and as such uses SVO word order and an uninflected verb. The géisih question throws the focus of the sentence to the Timeword. The sentence pattern for highlighting the Timeword in a past reference sentence is: S Timeword V ge.

10. Transformation Drill: Change the sentence to a time expression question, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Kéuih yāt-gáu-luhk-baat(nihn) làih ge.

T: What year did he come to Hong Kong?

S: Kéuih bīn nihn làih Hèunggóng ga?

S: He came in 1968.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih yāt gáu sei gáu nihn chēutsai ge.                           | 1. Kéuih bīn nihn chēutsai ga?   |
| 2. Kéuih gáu yuht fàan Méihgwok.                                     | 2. Kéuih géi yuht fàan Méihgwok a?<br>What month is he returning to America? |
| 3. Kéuih tīngyaht dākhaahn.  | 3. Kéuih bīn yaht dāknaahn a?<br>What day is he free?                        |
| 4. Kéuih yāt-gáu-sàam-luhk nihn, sahpyat yuht, sei houh chēutsai ge. | 4. Kéuih bīn nihn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht chēut sai ga?                          |
| 5. Kéuih yahluhk houh heui taam kéuih làih.                          | 5. Kéuih géi houh heui taam kéuih làih a?                                    |
| 6. Kéuih séung gáu dīm bun chēut gāai.                               | 6. Kéuih séung géi dīm jūng chēut gāai a?                                    |

11. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yáuh pàhngyáuh hái douh. /go léuhng gāan jáudim/

T: I have friends there.

S: Gó léuhng gāan jáu-dim, ngóh dòu yáuh pàhngyáuh hái douh.

S: I have friends in both of those two hotels.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh yáuh jáinéui hái douh. /gó léuhng gāan hohkhaauh/ | 1. Gó léuhng gāan hohkhaauh, ngóh dòu yáuh jáinéui hái douh. |
| 2. Ngóh yáuh taaitái hái douh. /gó léuhng daat deihfòng/  | 2. Gó léuhng daat deihfòng, ngóh dòu yáuh taaitái hái douh.  |
| 3. Ngóh yáuh chín hái douh. /gó léuhng gāan ngànhòhng/    | 3. Gó léuhng gāan ngànhòhng, ngóh dòu yáuh chín hái douh.    |
| 4. Ngóh yáuh ngūk hái douh. /Hèunggóng, Gáulùhng/         | 4. Hèunggóng, Gáulùhng, ngóh dòu yáuh ùk hái douh.           |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. Kéuih yáuh nàahmpàhngyáuh hái douh. /chíhn, hauh, jó, yauh/ /ahead, behind, right and left/ | 5. Chíhn, hauh, jó, yauh, kéuih dōu yáuh nàahmpàhngyáuh hái douh. |
|--|---|
- 

## 12. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh chānchīk jjuh hái Wàhsihngdeuhn.	T: My relatives live in Washington DC.
S: Ngóh yáuh chānchīk jjuh hái Wàhsihngdeuhn.	S: I have relatives who live in Washington DC.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih fu ngáhngéng hóu leng.                    | 1. Kéuih yáuh fu ngáhngéng hóu leng.                    |
| 2. Kéuih gáan ngūk hóu daaih.                      | 2. Kéuih yáuh gáan ngūk hóu daaih.                      |
| 3. Ngóh pàhngyáuh hái Sàamfàahnsih jough sih.      | 3. Ngóh yáuh pàhngyáuh hái Sàamfàahnsih jough sih.      |
| 4. Néih bún syù hái douh.                          | 4. Néih yáuh bún syù hái douh.                          |
| 5. Ngóh go jái hái Yíngwok gaau syù.               | 5. Ngóh yáuh go jái hái Yíngwok gaau syù.               |
| 6. Ngóh chānchīk hái gó gáan ngàhnhòhng jough sih. | 6. Ngóh yáuh chānchīk hái gó gáan ngàhnhòhng jough sih. |
- 

## 13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Mhgoi néih giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi ngóh lá.	T: Please tell him to telephone me.
--	-------------------------------------

S: Mhgoi néih jigányiu giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi ngóh a.	S: Please be sure to tell him to telephone me.
--	--

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Geidāk bo!                            | 1. Jigányiu geidāk a!                            |
| 2. Mhhou mhgeidāk a!                     | 2. Jigányiu mhhou mhgeidāk a!                    |
| 3. Néih mhhou wah kéuih jí a!            | 3. Néih jigányiu mhhou wah kéuih jí a!           |
| 4. Tingyaht làih ngóhdouh sihk faahn lá. | 4. Tingyaht jigányiu làih ngóhdouh sihk faahn a. |
-



## 14. Expansion Drill: Expand the sentences with the cue words.

Ex: T: Ngóh yiu heui taam  
Cháhn Táai.  
/láihbaai/

T: I'm going to go visit Mrs.  
Chan. /Sunday/

S: Ngóh láihbaai yiu  
heui taam Cháhn  
Táai.

S: I'm going to go visit Mr.  
Chan on Sunday.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh séung máaih dī yéh béi<br>ngóh néuihpáhngyáuh.<br>/ní go láihbaai/  | 1. Ngóh séung ní go láihbaai<br>máaih dī yéh béi ngóh<br>néuihpáhngyáuh.                          |
| 2. Ní deui hàaih juhng hóu sán bo.<br>/néih/  | 2. Néih ní deui hàaih juhng<br>hóu sán bo.  |
| 3. Néih jyuh hái bīndouh a?<br>/kéuih dīm jí/<br>(how did he know)  | 3. Kéuih dīm jí néih jyuh hái<br>bīndouh a?   |
| 4. Yihyuht dāk yihshpbaat yaht<br>jē. /gámnin/  | 4. Gámnin yihyuht dāk yih-<br>shpbaat yaht jē.  |
| + 5. Kéuih m̄hsik <u>jà faaijī</u> . /ngóh<br>m̄hjí/<br>He does not know how to<br><u>use chopsticks</u> .<br>[clasp -chopsticks] | 5. Ngóh m̄hjí kéuih m̄hsik <u>jà<br/>faaijī</u> .   |
| + 6. Kéuih <u>hái</u> Méihgwok fàanjó làih.<br>/seuhng go yuht sei houh/<br>He has come back <u>from</u><br>America.              | 6. Seuhng go yuht sei houh<br>kéuih hái Méihgwok fàanjó<br>làih.                                  |
| 7. Kéuih ūkkéi yáuh dihnsih.<br>/juhng meih/<br>Their house has (or had)<br>television.   | 7. Kéuih ūkkéi juhng meih yáuh<br>dihnsih.<br>Their house doesn't (or<br>didn't) have television. |
| 8. M̄hgòì néih níng làih nīdouh lā.<br>/bùì chàh/   | 8. M̄hgòì néih níng bùì chàh<br>làih nīdouh lā.   |
| 9. M̄hgòì néih béi jek gāng ngóh<br>lā. /dò/  | 9. M̄hgòì néih béi dò jek gāng<br>ngóh lā.  |

Comment: hái, as 'from,' is interchangeable with yáuh, 'from,'  
choice of hái or yáuh rests with personal preference,  
personal habit. See #6 above, and Comment in Vol. One,  
Lesson 15, p. 341.

## 15. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yih houh heui. T: I'm going on the 2nd.  
Ngóh hahgo yuht heui. I'm going next month.

S: Ngóh hahgo yuht yih S: I'm going on the 2nd of next  
houh heui. month.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih chēutnín fàanheui.<br>Kéuih sei yuht fàanheui.                                    | 1. Kéuih chēutnín sei yuht<br>fàanheui.                        |
| 2. Kéuihdeih láihbaaisàam làih.<br>Kéuihdeih hah go láihbaai<br>làih.                      | 2. Kéuihdeih hah go láihbaai-<br>sàam làih.                    |
| 3. Wòhng Sàang hah go yuht heui<br>Méihgwok.<br>Wòhng Sàang sahpyih houh<br>heui Méihgwok. | 3. Wòhng Sàang hah go yuht<br>sahpyih houh heui Méih-<br>gwok. |
| 4. Hòh Siujé seuhng go láihbaai<br>làih ge.<br>Hòh Siujé láihbaaiyāt làih<br>ge.           | 4. Hòh Siujé seuhng go láih-<br>baaiyāt làih ge.               |
| 5. Ngóh gauhnín heui ge.<br>Ngóh chāt yuht yahsàam houh<br>heui ge.                        | 5. Ngóh gauhnín chāt yuht<br>yahsàam houh heui ge.             |

## 16. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Nípáai yáuh móuh T: Have you seen any movies  
tái hei a? lately?  
/kàhmyaht/

S: Yáuh, kàhmyaht S: Yes, I saw one yesterday.  
tái làih.

2. T: Nípáai yáuh móuh T: Have you played ball recently?  
dá bō a?  
/m̀hdākhaahn/

S: Móuh, nípáai dōu S: No, I haven't had (leisure)  
m̀hdākhaahn dá. time to play lately.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Nípáai yáuh móuh heui yàuh-<br>séui a? /láihbaailuhk/                                    | 1. Yáuh, láihbaailuhk heui<br>làih.       |
| 2. Nípáai yáuh móuh dá m̀hājéuk a?<br>/m̀hdākhaahn/   | 2. Móuh, nípáai dōu m̀hdākhaahn<br>dá.    |
| 3. Nípáai yáuh móuh heui máaih<br>yéh a? /seuhng go láihbaai/<br>(last week or last Sunday) | 3. Yáuh, seuhng go láihbaai<br>heui làih. |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. Ní páai yáuh móuh heui hàahng<br>gūngsí a? /m̀hdāk̀hàahn/                 | 4. Móuh, ní páai dōu m̀hdāk̀hàahn<br>heui.          |
| 5. Ní páai yáuh móuh hohk já chē a?<br>/m̀hdāk̀hàahn/                        | 5. Móuh, ní páai dōu m̀hdāk̀hàahn<br>hohk.          |
| 6. Ní páai yáuh móuh dá páai a?<br>/lái hbaaisàam/                           | 6. Yáuh, lái hbaaisàam dá lái h.                    |
| 7. Ní páai yáuh móuh fàanheui taam<br>m̀hāmā a? /seuhng go yuht yāt<br>houh/ | 7. Yáuh, seuhng go yuht yāt<br>houh fàanheui lái h. |
| 8. Ní páai yáuh móuh gwo hói a?<br>/m̀hdāk̀hàahn/                            | 8. Móuh, ní páai dōu m̀hdāk̀hàahn<br>gwo.           |

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) Móuh = Nothing special
- 2) jí = (not until) then
- 3) go deihjí = here: your address
- 4) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends. (The tone of the surname changes from low falling tone to high rising tone.)
- 5) Sínggabō = Singapore
- 6) ngāamngāam = just
- 7) jí = (only) then, (not until) then
- 8) t̀hngm̀aih = t̀hng
- 9) Tòihwāan = Taiwan
- 10) yíhchíhn = previously
- 11) s̀angyi = (commercial) business

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. What day of the week is it today?
2. What day of the month is Thursday?

B: And he replies:

1. It's \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Thursday's the \_\_\_\_\_ th/  
rd/st/nd.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3. What's your birth date?  | 3. I was born on _____.  |
| 4. When did you come to Hong Kong?                                | 4. I came last year.   |
| 5. I hear you arrived last month-- is that right?                 | 5. No, I came this month.  |
| 6. I hear he went to America last week--is that right?            | 6. No, he went this week.  |
| 7. What day are you free?--I'd like to ask you to dinner.         | 7. How about tomorrow?   |
| 8. Have you been to England before?                               | 8. Yes, I went in 1968, and returned last year.  |
| 9. I hear you're leaving for Japan on October 10th.               | 9. No, it's November 10th that I'm going.  |
| 10. What is it that's called a <u>jaugā</u> ?                     | 10. A <u>jaugā</u> is a place where you eat Chinese food.                                  |
| 11. Be sure to come see me when you get to San Francisco.         | 11. Fine! Please give me your address.   |
| 12. Do you have relatives in the States?                          | 12. No, I don't have any relatives there, but I have a few friends in San Francisco.       |
| 13. Mr. Lee went to Shanghai last year and still hasn't returned. | 13. His wife told me he might be back next month.  |
| 14. Where'd we read to last week?                                 | 14. I'm not sure. We read lesson 17 last Friday, but I don't remember what page we got to. |

---

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 17

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. baatyuh                       | TW August                                   |
| 2. bīn nīhn?                     | TW which year?                              |
| 3. bīn nīhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht? | TW what date?                               |
| 4. bīn yaht?                     | TW what day?                                |
| 5. bīn yuht?                     | TW what month? (in a year-month-day phrase) |
| 6. chānchīk                      | n relative(s)                               |
| 7. chātyuht                      | TW July                                     |
| 8. chēutnīn                      | TW next year                                |
| 9. chēutsai                      | VO to be born                               |

10. dásyun	AuxV plan on, plan to
11. daat	m M. for a place
12. deihfōng <u>or</u> deihfòng	n place
13. deihjí	n address
14. fàanheui	V go back, return
15. gámín	TW this year
16. gauhnín	TW last year
17. gáuyuht	TW September
18. géi(dō) houh?	TW what day of the month?
19. géiyuht	TW what month?
20. gin	V meet, see
21. hahchi	TW next time
22. hahgo láihbaai	TW next week
23. hahgo yuht	TW next month
24. hái	prep from
25. -houh	bf day of the month
26. Hóu noih móuh gin.	Ph 'Long time no see.'
27. jà faaijí	VO use chopsticks [clasp-chopsticks]
28. jigán(yiu) <u>V</u>	Ph be sure to--, by all means do <u>V</u>
29. jíkhaih	Ph that is, in other words, that is to say
30. Làih (PW) chón } lā! } ā!	Ph Come visit (place)!
31. láihbaai	n week
32. láihbaai	TW Sunday
33. láihbaai géi?	TW what day of the week?
34. láihbaailuhk	TW Saturday
35. láihbaaiíng	TW Friday
36. láihbaaisaam	TW Wednesday
37. láihbaaisei	TW Thursday
38. láihbaaiyaht	TW Sunday
39. láihbaaiyāt	TW Monday
40. láihbaaiyih	TW Tuesday
41. luhkyuht	TW June
42. nī go láihbaai	TW this week
43. nī go yuht	TW this month

44. nih̄n	m year
45. 'nghyuht	TW May
46. noih	Adj long (time)
47. Sàamfàahns'ih	PW San Francisco
48. sàamyuht	TW March
49. sahpyātyuht	TW November
50. sahpyihyuht	TW December
51. sahpyuht	TW October
52. seiyuht	TW April
53. seuhng go láihbaai	TW last week
54. seuhng go yuht	TW last month
55. t'engginwah	Ph hear tell, (I) hear... [hear-see-talk]
56. Wàhsihngdeuhn	PW Washington
57. Wah m̄hdihng.	Ph Can't say for sure, uncertain
58. yātyuht	TW January
59. yaht	M day
60. yihyuht	TW February
61. yuht	n month

---

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(University student Bāu Bok-lèuhng, waiting for his girl to get ready to go out, talks to her elder sister:)

gājē

elder sister

Gājē

Néih haih bīndouh yāhn a?

What place are you from?

(i.e., Where is your family from?)

Bok-lèuhng

Gwóngjāu.

Canton.

Gājēgéi nôi? or géi noih?

how long?

jyuhjō géi nôi?

have lived how long?; lived

how long?

Néih hái Hèunggóng jyuhjō géi nôi a?

How long have you lived in Hong Kong?

Bok-lèuhng

-dōu

approximately

Léuhng nīhn dōu.

About two years.

Gājē

Néih dāsūn juhng jyuh géi

How much longer do you plan

nôi a?

to stay?

Bok-lèuhng

jisíu

at least

Jisíu yāt nīhn.

At least a year.

daaihohk

university

duhk daaihohk

study at the university

duhk léuhng nīhn daaihohk

study two years at the

university

Ngóh duhkjō léuhng nīhn daaihohk ge la.

I've studied two years at the university.

bātyihp

graduate

Juhng yáuh yāt nīhn jauh

I still have another year then

bātyihp.

I'll graduate.

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

Gājē

yíhchíhn  
duhk syù  
Néih yíhchíhn hái bíndouh duhk  
syù a?

previously  
study  
Where did you study before?

Bok-léuhng

jíchihn  
meih..VP..jíchihn,...  
ngóh meih láih Hèunggóng  
jíchihn,...  
Tòihwāan, or Tòihwāan  
Ngóh meih láih Hèunggóng jíchihn,  
ngóh hái Tòihwāan duhk syù.  
Hái gódouh jyuhjó géi níhn.

before  
before Verb Phrase.  
before I came to Hongkong,...  
Taiwan  
Before I came to Hongkong, I  
studied in Taiwan.  
I lived there for several years.

Gājē

góján or gójahn  
Néih hái Tòihwāan góján, hái  
bíndouh jyuh a?

when, at the time  
When you were in Taiwan, where  
did you live?

Bok-léuhng

Tòihbāk  
Hái Tòihbāk.

Taipei  
In Taipei.

Gājē

jíhauh  
bātjó yíhp jíhauh  
Néih bātjó yíhp jíhauh, dásyun  
heui bíndouh a?

after  
after you graduate  
After you graduate, where do  
you plan to go? (i.e., what  
do you plan to do?)

Bok-léuhng

kyutdihng  
meih kyutdihng  
juhng meih kyutdihng  
hèimohng  
hèimohng hóyih heui Yíngwok  
làuhhohk  
Yíngā juhng meih kyutdihng,  
daahnhaih ngóh hèimohng hóyih  
heui Yíngwok làuhhohk.

decide  
not decided yet  
still not decided yet  
hope  
I hope I can go to England  
to study abroad  
It's still not decided yet,  
but I hope to be able to go  
to England to study.



yǜngwó	if
yǜngwó mhheui làuhhohk	if I don't go abroad to study
wán yéh jòuh	look for a job [look for something to do]
Yǜngwó mhheui làuhhohk, jauh hái douh wán yéh jòuh.	If I don't go abroad to study, I'll look for a job here.

B. Recapitulation:

(University student Bàau Bok-léuhng, waiting for his girl to get ready to go out, talks to her elder sister:)

Gāiē

Néih hái bīndouh yáhn a?

What place are you from?

Bok-léuhng

Gwóng, àu.

Canton.

Gāiē

Néih hái Hèunggóng jjuhjó géi nói a?

How long have you lived in Hong Kong?

Bok-léuhng

Léuhng nihh dóu.

About two years.

Gāiē

Néih dásyun juhng jjuh géi nói a?

How much longer do you plan to stay?

Bok-léuhng

Jisfu yāt nihh.

At least a year.

Ngóh duhkjó léuhng nihh daaihohk ge la.

I've studied two years at the university.

Juhng yáuh yāt nihh jauh bātyihp.

I still have another year then I'll graduate.

Gāiē

Néih yíhchíhn hái bīndouh duhk syú a?

Where did you study before?

Bok-léuhng

Ngóh meih lái Hèunggóng jíhíhn, ngóh hái Tòihwān duhk syú.

Before I came to Hongkong, I studied in Taiwan.

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

---

Hái gó-douh jyuhjó géi níhn. <p style="text-align: center;"><u>Gā-jē</u></p> Néih hái Tòihwāan góján hái bīndouh jyuh a?	I lived there several years.  When you were in Taiwan, where did you live?
<u>Bok-lèuhng</u>	
Hái Tòihbāk.  <p style="text-align: center;"><u>Gā-jē</u></p> Néih bātjǒ yihp jíhauh, dásyun heui bīndouh a?	In Taipei.  After you graduate, what do you plan to do?
<u>Bok-lèuhng</u>	
Yíngā juhng meih kyutdihng, daahn- haih ngóh hěimohng hóyih heui Yíngwok láuhhohk. Yúhgwó m̄heui láuhhohk, jauh hái douh wán yēh jəuh.	It's still not decided yet, but I hope to be able to go to England to study. If I don't go abroad to study, I'll look for a job here.

II. NOTES

1. ...jíchihh,...      = 'Before....'
  - ...jìhauh,...      = 'After....'
  - ...gójahn (góján),... = 'When....'
- a. jíchihh, jìhauh, and gójahn are conjunctions which stand at the end of the first (subordinate) clause and join it to the following (main) clause. The order of subordinate clause first and main second is irreversible.

Ex (from BC):

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh meih làih Hěunggóng<br>jíchihh, ngóh hái<br>Tòihwāan duk syù. | Before I came to Hongkong,<br>I studied in Taiwan.        |
| (See also Drill <u>12</u> )   |   |
| 2. Néih bātjǒ yihp jíhauh,<br>dásyun heui bīndouh a?                  | After you graduate, where<br>do you plan to go?           |
| (See also Drill <u>12</u> )   |   |
| 3. Néih hái Tòihwāan góján,<br>hái bīndouh jyuh a?                    | When you were in Taiwan,<br>where did you live? <u>or</u> |
| (See also Drill <u>11</u> )   |   |

b. (meih)..VP..jichihh...

meih is often used before the verb of the jichihh phrase. The meaning of the phrase is the same with or without meih.

Ex: Ngoh (meih) lah Hèunggóng      Before I came to Hongkong,  
       jichihh, hái Tòihwān      I studied in Taiwan.  
       duhk syu.

c. jichihh and jihauh form Timewords with a preceding Number + Measure when the Measure is a time measure.

Ex: Nu + M    jichihh/jihauh  
       sāam nihh jichihh = 3 years before; 3 years ago  
       sāam nihh jihauh = 3 years later, 3 years afterwards;  
                                 after 3 years

Example sentences:

- |                            |   |                                     |
|----------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Kéuih sāam nihh jichihh | } | heui      1. He went to America to  |
| 2. Kéuih sāam nihh jihauh  |   | Méihgwok      study abroad three    |
|                            |   | lauhhoik.      years ago. (or three |
|                            |   | years before)                       |
|                            |   | 2. He went to America to            |
|                            |   | study abroad three                  |
|                            |   | years later. (or: After             |
|                            |   | 3 years, he went to                 |
|                            |   | America to study abroad.)           |
- (See Lesson 22, Drill 17)

d. gójahn does not link with a length-of-time Number + Measure compound as jichihh and Jihauh do, but can itself act as a Timeword.

Ex: gójahn = 'at that time'  
       Kéuih gójahn heui Méihgwok      At that time he went to  
       lauhhoik.      America to study abroad.

2. yihohihh, 'previously,' and yihhauh, 'afterwards'

yihchihh, 'formerly,' 'previously,' 'before,' and yihhauh, 'afterwards,' 'later,' can operate in single clause sentences.

Ex: 1. Kéuih yihchihh hái nīdouh      He lived here previously.  
       jyuh.  
       2. Kéuih yihhauh hái nīdouh      He lived here afterwards.  
       jyuh.

yihohihh and yihhauh must come before the verb and can come before the subject of the sentence as well. To words in this category we give the name Moveable Adverb (MA).

Ex: Yihchihh kéuih      hái nīdouh jyuh. } Previously he  
       Kéuih yihchihh hái nīdouh jyuh. } lived  
    here.

(See Drills 9, 14)

## 3. Time spent expressions in sentences of future reference.

In sentences of future reference the central verb is often preceded by such auxiliary verbs as séung, 'plans to,' dásyun, 'plans to,' or yi, 'wants, intends to,' when a Time-spent expression follows.

Ex: Kéuih {dásyun } duhk léuhng He plans to take two years  
               {séung } nihh Yíngmáhn. of English.  
               {yi }

(See BC & Drills 7, 12, 15)

## 4. Time spent expressions in sentences of past reference.

In sentences of past reference the verb adds the suffix -jó 'accomplish' or -gwo 'experience,' when a Time-spent expression follows.

Ex: S V {-jó } TS  
               {-gwo }  
       Kéuih duhk jó léuhng nihh Yíngmáhn. He took two  
                                   gwo years of  
   English.

(See BC and Drills 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 15)

5. V-jó + timespent and V-gwo + timespent compareda. V-jó + timespent phrase

This pattern is used to express both:

- a. action or condition which began in the past and continues to the moment of speaking:

Ex: 1. Kéuih hái ní douh jyuhjó He has lived here 3 years.  
           sám nihh la.  
       2. Kéuih heuijó sám go láih- He has been gone for 3  
           baai la. weeks.

- b. action or condition which began in the past and ended in the past:

Ex: 1. Kéuih hái Wáhsingduhn He lived in Washington for  
           jyuhjó sám nihh. 3 years.  
       2. Kéuih heuijó sám go He went for three weeks.  
           láihbaai. or He was away for 3 weeks.

Sentences of the type described in a. above generally end in la, prompting the analysis that time spent sentences of the pattern V-jó + time spent + la are restricted to those describing actions which began in the past and continue into the present. However la is also used at the end of sentences of type b above, describing actions which began in the past and ended in the past.

In such cases la is used to stress that the time spent is considered a long time. (For an example of the latter see CL 18.1)

b. Verb-gwo + time spent phrase

This pattern is used to express action which began in the past and ended in the past. This structure marks the action of the verb as terminating sometime before the moment of speaking.

Ex: Ngóh hohkgwo sàam nìhn Yíngmàhn. I studied English for 3 years.  
(am not studying now)

6. Relative position of Timespent phrase and other post-verbal expressions.

a. With most VO phrases, the time-spent phrase precedes the direct object as modifier to it.

Ex: Ngóh dájó yĕtgo jūngtáuh bō. I played ball for an hour.  
I played an hour of ball.

(See BC and Drill 13)

b. With other VO phrases, the time-spent phrase follows the object of the verb:

Ex: Ngóh dǎngjó kéuih léuhng go jih. I waited for her for ten minutes.

(See Drill 5)

c. With still other VO phrases the preference is to treat the direct object and the time-spent phrase as two verbal expressions in series:

VO + V-jó timespent:

Ex: Kéuihdeih wán ũk, wánjó géi go yuht. They looked (or have been looking) for a house for several months.

(Lesson 19, D 15)

d. Another favorite treatment puts the logical object in topic position, with the comment an SVO clause, the O of SVO being the time-spent phrase:

Ex: Ní gǎan ngŭk ngóhdeih jyuhjó sàam go yuht la. This house we've lived in three months.

e. When the VO is a movement vsrb + PW object, the time spent phrase follows the PW object.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih làihjó Hsunggóng móuhgéinoih. 1. He's been in Hong Kong for just a short time.  
 2. Kéuih dásyun heui Tòihwān (jyuh) sām nihh. 2. He plans to go to Taiwan (to live) for three years.

(See Drill 15)

### 7. Time-since phrases

Time elapsed since a particular action or since the establishment of a state of affairs, is also expressed by V-jó + timespent. If the sentence is an SVO direct object sentence, the time spent phrase follows the direct object.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih gitjó fàn yāt nihh. 1. He's been married for one year.  
 or It's been a year since he got married.  
 2. Kéuih bunnjó ũk léuhng nihh. 2. He's been moved for 2 years.  
 bunn ngũk = [movs-house], or It's been 2 years since he moved.  
 i.e., move ie: He moved 2 years ago.  
 3. Ngóh ga chē máaihjó sām nihh. 3. My car has been bought for three years.  
 i.e. I've had this car 3 years.

A sentence which is phrased Verb-jó + Timespent is potentially ambiguous, inasmuch as both the time-spent pattern and the time-since pattern both use this formula of expression. Thus:

- NĪ gihh sām joughjó léuhng yaht. This dress took two days to make.  
 or This dress has been made (finished) for 2 days.

In an SVO construction there is no ambiguity--the time-since follows the SVO, and the time-spent adapts the pattern of verbal expressions in series:

- Ex: 1. Kéuih joughjó nĪgihh sām léuhng yaht. 1. She's had the dress made for 2 days. (since 2 days ago)  
 2. Kéuih jough nĪ gihh sām, joughjó 2 jaht. 2. She took 2 days to make the dress.

## III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih mǎhmǎ jjuh hái Sàam-fàahnsih.                               | 1. Kéuih mǎhmǎ jjuh hái Sàam-fàahnsih.                                       |
| 2. /kéuih/Gwóngjǎu/<br>Canton  | 2. Kéuih jjuh hái Gwóngjǎu.<br>He lives in Canton.                           |
| + 3. /ngóh ge sailóugō/Daaihluhk/<br>(continent)<br>(Mainland China) | 3. Ngóh ge sailóugō jjuh hái Daaihluhk.<br>My children live on the Mainland. |
| + 4. /ngóh mǎhmǎ/Oumún/<br>(Macau)                                   | 4. Ngóh mǎhmǎ jjuh hái Oumún.  |
| 5. /kéuih dī jáinéui/Tòihwāan/                                       | 5. Kéuih dī jáinéui jjuh hái Tòihwāan.                                       |

Comment: Chinese use the word for 'continent,' daaihluhk, to refer to Mainland China. We spell it with a capital letter to differentiate 'continent' from 'the Mainland.'

## 2. Transformation Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: 1. T: Làihjó géi nihh.   | T: Has been here ( <u>or</u> came here) for several years.           |
| S: Làihjó géi(dō) nihh a?  | S: How many years, has (he) been ( <u>or</u> was he) here?           |
| 2. T: Làihjó géigo jih.  | T: Has been ( <u>or</u> was) here for several 5 minute periods.      |
| S: Làihjó géi(dō) go jih a?  | S: How many 5 minute periods has (he) been ( <u>or</u> was he) here? |
| 1. Làihjó géi nihh.  | 1. Làihjó géi(dō) nihh a?  |
| 2. Làihjó géi yaht.  | 2. Làihjó géi(dō) yaht a?  |
| 3. Làihjó géi go jih.  | 3. Làihjó géi(dō) go jih a?  |
| 4. Làihjó géi go láihbaai.   | 4. Làihjó géi(dō) go láihbaai a?                                     |
| + 5. Làihjó géi go <u>jūngtǎuh</u> .<br>Has been here several <u>hours</u> . | 5. Làihjó géi(dō) go jūngtǎuh a?                                     |
| 6. Làihjó géi go yuht.   | 6. Làihjó géi(dō) go yuht a?   |
| 7. Làihjó géi fānjūng.   | 7. Làihjó géi(dō) fānjūng a?   |

Comment: lâihjǎ, 'arrived here,' is used in a time spent phrase with the meaning 'been (or was) here X length of time.'

Note that the question 'how many M?' can be either gái M? or gáidǎ M?, and if the form used is gái M?, the question sentences above differ from the statement sentences only by the final sentence suffix a. Note the intonation differences of the spoken forms.

### 3. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Lâihjǎ sàam go yuht. T: Has been here (or came here) /duhk/ for three months. /study/

S: Duhkjǎ sàam go yuht. S: Has studied (or studied) for three months.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| + 1. Dǎngjǎ <u>móuhgéinoih</u> jē. /heui/<br>(not very long)  | 1. Heuijǎ móuhgéinoih jē.<br>Has been gone for not very long. or<br>Has been gone for just a little while. |
| 2. Duhkjǎ géi níhn. /jyuh/  | 2. Jyuhjǎ géi níhn.  |
| 3. Lâihjǎ yāt go jūngtǎuh. /dou/  | 3. Doujǎ yāt go jūngtǎuh.  |
| 4. Máaihjǎ géigo láihbaai. /heui/<br>Has been bought for several weeks. [i.e. bought it several weeks ago; have had it for several weeks] | 4. Heuijǎ géigo láihbaai.  |
| 5. Lâihjǎ móuhgéinoih jē. /dou/   | 5. Doujǎ móuhgéinoih jē.   |
| 6. Duhkjǎ hóudǎ níhn la. /máaih/  | 6. Máaihjǎ hóudǎ níhn la.  |
| 7. Doujǎ sàam go yuht la. /lâih/  | 7. Lâihjǎ sàam go yuht la.   |
| 8. Lâihjǎ géi yaht jē. /heui/   | 8. Heuijǎ géi yaht jē.   |

### 4. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. Duhkjǎ sàam go yuht.<br>Studied 3 months. | 1. Duhkjǎ sàam go yuht. |
| 2. /móuhgéinoih/                             | 2. Duhkjǎ móuhgéinoih.  |
| 3. /dǎng/                                    | 3. Dǎngjǎ móuhgéinoih.  |
| 4. /gái go jih/                              | 4. Dǎngjǎ géi go jih.   |



- |                         |                               |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 5. /heui/               | 5. Heuijó géi go jih.         |
| 6. /léuhng go jūngtəuh/ | 6. Heuijó léuhng go jūngtəuh. |
| 7. /ləih/               | 7. Ləihjó léuhng go jūngtəuh. |
| 8. /sei nihh/           | 8. Ləihjó sei nihh.           |

5. Transformation Drill: Transform from statement to question following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngóh dāngjó kéuih léuhng go jih jē.

T: I've waited for him for ten minutes, that's all.

S: Néih dāngjó kéuih géi(dō) go jih a?

S: How many 5 minute periods have you waited for him?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh sīnsāang heuijó Daaihluhk saam go yuht la.   | 1. Néih sīnsāang heuijó Daaihluhk géi(dō) go yuht a?        |
| 2. Ngóh taaitáai fàanjóləih bun go jūngtəuh jē.<br>My wife has been back home for half an hour, that's all.<br><u>or</u><br>My wife came home just half an hour ago. | 2. Néih taaitáai fàanjóləih géi(dō) go jūngtəuh a?          |
| 3. Wòhng Sàang duhkjó sahp géi nihh Yīngmāhn la.   | 3. Wòhng Sàang duhkjó géi(dō) nihh Yīngmāhn a?              |
| 4. Kéuih jyuhjó Tòihwāan léuhng nihh jē.   | 4. Kéuih jyuhjó Tòihwāan géi(dō) nihh a?                    |
| 5. Gó go Tòihwāan yàhn làihjó nídouh sei go láihbaai la.   | 5. Gó go Tòihwāan yàhn làihjó nídouh géi(dō) go láihbaai a? |
| 6. Hòh Siujé go sàh dáfógēi máaihjó géi yaht jē.   | 6. Hòh Siujé go sàh dáfógēi máaihjó géi(dō) yaht a?         |
| 7. Kéuih sīnsāang gāan ūk máaihjó léuhng nihh la.<br>Her husband's house was bought 2 years ago. [(has been) bought 2 years]   | 7. Kéuih sīnsāang gāan ūk máaihjó géi(dō) nihh a?           |
| 8. Chàhn Táai fàanjó ūkkéi yāt go jūngtəuh jē.<br>Mrs. Chan went home an hour ago.   | 8. Chàhn Táai fàanjó ūkkéi géi(dō) go jūngtəuh a?           |

## 6. Transformation Drill

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Ex: T: Ngóh hái nǐdoh<br>jyuhjǒ sah p nihh.     | T: I have lived here 10 years.   |
| S: Ngóh dásyun hái<br>nǐdoh jyuh sah p<br>nihh. | S: I plan to live here 10 years. |
- 
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Ngóh hái Hèunggóng duhkjǒ<br>sàam go yuht.  | 1. Ngóh dásyun hái Hèunggóng<br>duhk sàam go yuht.   |
| 2. Kéuih hái gódoh jouhjǒ géi<br>go yuht.  | 2. Kéuih dásyun hái gódoh<br>jouh géi go yuht.   |
| 3. Ngóh sǐnsàang hái nǐdoh jyuh-<br>jǒ géi nihh.   | 3. Ngóh sǐnsàang dásyun hái<br>nǐdoh jyuh géi nihh.  |
| 4. Ngóh taaitáai hái Méihgwok<br>jyuhjǒ hóu noih.<br>My wife has lived ( <u>or</u> lived)<br>in America for a long time. | 4. Ngóh taaitáai dásyun hái<br>Méihgwok jyuh hóu noih.<br>My wife intends to live in<br>America for a long time. |
| 5. Ngóhdeih hái nǐdoh dǎngjǒ<br>yātgowāt.  | 5. Ngóhdeih dásyun hái nǐdoh<br>dǎng yātgowāt.   |
- 

## 7. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: Néihdeih dásyun<br>jyuh géi noih a?      | T: How long do you intend to<br>stay?        |
| S: Néihdeih dásyun<br>juhng jyuh géi<br>noih a? | S: How much longer do you intend<br>to stay? |
- 
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Néih kyutdihng dǎng géi noih<br>tǐm a?  | 1. Néih kyutdihng juhng dǎng<br>géi noih tǐm a?   |
| 2. Néih hèimohng duhk géi noih<br>tǐm a?   | 2. Néih hèimohng juhng duhk<br>géi noih tǐm a?  |
| + 3. Ngóh <u>jidò</u> chéng chāt baat go<br>yáhn jē.<br>I'm going to invite only 7<br>or 8 people <u>at most</u> . | 3. Ngóh jidò juhng chéng chāt<br>baat go yáhn jē.<br>I'm only going to invite<br>7 or 8 more people at<br>most. |
| 4. Néih jisíu yiu géi chǐn a?  | 4. Néih jisíu juhng yiu géi<br>chǐn a?  |
| 5. Ngóh jidò dǎng néih géi fānjūng<br>jē.  | 5. Ngóh jidò juhng dǎng néih<br>géi fānjūng jē.   |
-

## 8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh chéng síhk  
faahn.

S: Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh  
chín, ngóh jauh  
chéng síhk faahn.

1. Ngóh dukk daaihhoók.
2. Ngóh heui Méihgwok jyuh.
3. Ngóh máaih chē.
- + 4. Ngóh gitfàn, [to get married]  
I'm going to get married.
5. Ngóh daai dí sailóugō heui  
Tòihwāan.
6. Ngóh m̀hsái tùhng kéuih jyuh.
7. Ngóh taaitáai m̀hsái jough yéh.

T: I'm going to have a dinner  
party.

S: If I have (or had) the money,  
I'm going to have (or would  
have) a dinner party.

1. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh  
jauh dukk daaihhoók.
2. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh  
jauh heui Méihgwok jyuh.
3. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh  
jauh máaih chē.
4. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh  
jauh gitfàn.
5. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh  
jauh daai dí sailóugō  
heui Tòihwāan.
6. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh  
jauh m̀hsái tùhng kéuih  
jyuh.
7. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh  
taaitáai jauh m̀hsái jough  
yéh.

## 9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih yíhchíhn hái  
Hèunggóng jyuh.

S: Kéuih yíhchíhn hái  
Hèunggóng jyuh,  
yíngā hái bíndouh  
jyuh a?

1. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Tòihbāk  
duhksyù.
2. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Wíhng Ōn  
Gungsí jough síh.
3. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái M̀ahnwàh  
Jáudim jyuh.

T: He lived in Hong Kong before.

S: He lived in Hong Kong before,  
where does he live now?

1. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Tòihbāk  
duhksyù, yíngā hái bín-  
douh dukk a?
2. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Wíhng Ōn  
Gungsí jough síh, yíngā  
hái bíndouh jough a?
3. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái M̀ahnwàh  
Jáudim jyuh, yíngā hái  
bíndouh jyuh a?

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. Jèung Táai yíhchíhn hái Daaih-luhk gaau Gwokýúh. | 4. Jèung Táai yíhchíhn hái Daaihluhk gaau Gwokýúh, yíngā hái bīndouh g'au a? |
| 5. Kéuih yíhchíhn túhng kéuih pāhngyáuh jyuh.       | 5. Kéuih yíhchíhn túhng kéuih pāhngyáuh jyuh, yíngā túhng bīngo jyuh a?      |

## 10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: M̀ngòì nēih dá dihñwá bēi ngòh. T: Please phone me.

S: Nēih jáu jíchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih dá dihñwá bēi ngòh. S: Before you leave, please phone me.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. M̀ngòì nēih wah ngòh jí.  | 1. Nēih jáu jíchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih wah ngòh jí.                       |
| 2. M̀ngòì nēih giu Hòh Siujé yahplàih.   | 2. Nēih jáu jíchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih giu Hòh Siujé yahplàih.            |
| + 3. M̀ngòì nēih <u>béifàan</u> bún syù ngòh.<br>(give back, return (something)) | 3. Nēih jáu jíchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih béifàan bún syù ngòh.              |
| 4. M̀ngòì nēih dá dihñwá bēi kéuih.  | 4. Nēih jáu jíchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih dá dihñwá bēi kéuih.               |
| 5. M̀ngòì nēih séuhng heui wah bēi ngòh màhmā jí.                                | 5. Nēih jáu jíchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih séuhng heui wah bēi ngòh màhmā jí. |

## 11. Response Drill: Transform each sentence to choice type question, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngòh dukk daaihhoik gójahn, hái chānchik ùkkéi jyuh. T: When I was at the university, I lived at my relative house.

S: Nēih dukk daaihhoik gójahn, hái m̀hái chānchik ùkkéi jyuh a? S: When you were at the university, did you live at your relative's house?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngòh gitfán gójahn, ngòh màhmā hái Tòihwāan.<br>When I got married, my mother was in Taiwan. <u>or</u> | 1. Nēih gitfán gójahn, nēih màhmā hái m̀hái Tòihwāan a?<br>When you got married, was your mother in Taiwan? |
|---|---|

When I get married, my  
mother will be in Taiwan.

- + 2. Ngóh bùn ùk gójahn, m̄sái  
máaih yéh.  
When I move, I don't need  
to buy anything.  
(bùn nguk =  
[move-house], move)
3. Ngóh hái Tòihbāk gójahn, hái  
Tòihwāan Daaihohk dukk syù.
4. Ngóh heui máaih yéh gójahn,  
góng Gwokýuh.
5. Ngóh gitfàn gójahn, hái Málnwáh  
Jáudim chéng yám.  
When I got married, I had the  
wedding reception at the  
Mandarin Hotel.
6. Ngóh gitfàn gójahn, séung hái  
Málnwáh Jáudim chéng yám.
2. Néih bùn ùk gójahn, sái  
m̄sái máaih yéh a?
3. Néih hái Tòihbāk gójahn,  
haih m̄hahh hái Tòihwāan  
Daaihohk dukk syù a?
4. Néih heui máaih yéh gójahn,  
haih m̄hahh góng Gwokýuh a?
5. Néih gitfàn gójahn, haih  
m̄hahh hái Málnwáh Jáudim  
chéng yám a?  
When you got married,  
didn't you have the wedding  
reception at the Mandarin  
Hotel?
6. Néih gitfàn gójahn, séung  
m̄hseung hái Málnwáh Jáudim  
chéng yám a?

## 12. Expansion Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih dásyun  
máaih ga chē. T: He's planning to buy a car.
- S: Kéuih làihjó  
Hèunggóng jìhauh,  
dásyun maaih ga  
chē. S: After he gets to Hong Kong,  
he plans to buy a car.
- T: Kéuih máaihjó ga  
chē. T: He bought a car.
- S: Kéuih làihjó  
Hèunggóng jìhauh,  
máaihjó ga chē. S: After he got to Hong Kong, he  
bought a car.
1. Kéuih dásyun búnheui Gáulúhng  
jyuh.  
He plans to move to Kowloon  
to live. 1. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng  
jìhauh, dásyun búnheui  
Gáulúhng jyuh.  
After he gets to Hong Kong,  
he plans to move to Kow-  
loon to live.
2. Kéuih joughjó hóudó sām. 2. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng jì-  
hauh, joughjó hóudó sām.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. Kéuih síkjó móuh géidò go Jüנגgwok pāhngyáuh jē. | 3. Kéuih làihjò Hèunggóng jì-hauh, síkjó móuh géidò go Jüנגgwok pāhngyáuh jē. |
| 4. Kéuih dásyun wán ngük máaih.                     | 4. Kéuih làihjò Hèunggóng jì-hauh, dásyun wán ngük máaih.                     |
| 5. Kéuih dásyun wán sih jòuh.                       | 5. Kéuih làihjò Hèunggóng jì-hauh, dásyun wán sih jòuh.                       |

## 13. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Ngòh go nèui sé Jüנגmahn. /yāt go jüngtàuh/ | T: My daughter writes Chinese. /one hour/                  |
| S: Ngòh go nèui séjò yāt go jüngtàuh Jüנגmahn.     | S: My daughter wrote (or has written) Chinese for an hour. |
| 1. Ngòh taaitáai dá páai. /gèi go jüngtàuh/        | 1. Ngòh taaitáai dájó géi go jüngtàuh páai.                |
| 2. Ngòh dá dihnwá. /sei fānjüng/                   | 2. Ngòh dájó sei fānjüng dihnwa.                           |
| 3. Kéuih dukh syù. /sahp nihn/                     | 3. Kéuih dukhjò sahп nihn syù.                             |
| 4. Kéuih tái dihnshih. /léuhng go jüngtàuh/        | 4. Kéuih táijò léuhng go jüngtàuh dihnshih.                |
| 5. Ngòh gaau Yíngmahn. /yāt go yuht/               | 5. Ngòh gaaujò yāt go yuht Yíngmahn.                       |

## 14. Combining Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Néih yuhng saai dí chin. Néih móuhdāk yuhng.  | T: You used up all the money. There isn't any to spend.                     |
| S: Yühgwó néih yihgā yuhngsaai dí chin, yíhhauh néih jauh móuhdāk yuhng laak. (afterwards) | S: If you use up all the money now, afterwards you won't have any to spend. |
| 1. Néih m̄hohk. Ngòh m̄hgaau néih laak.  | 1. Yühgwó néih yihgā m̄hohk, yíhhauh ngòh jauh m̄hgaau néih laak.           |
| 2. Néih m̄hduhk syù. Néih móuhdāk dukh laak.   | 2. Yühgwó néih yihgā m̄hduhk syù,   |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
|  | yihhauh néih jauh móuhdāk<br>duhk laak.  |
| 3. Néih máaih gāan ūk. Néih mhsái<br>bái chin jauh yáuh deihfōng<br>jyuh laak. | 3. Yùngwó néih yingā máaih gāan<br>ūk, yihhauh néih mhsái bái<br>chin jauh yáuh deihfōng<br>jyuh laak. |
| 4. Néih hohk dōdī Gwóngdùngwá.<br>Néih máaih yéh hōyih pèhng-<br>dī laak.      | 4. Yùngwó néih yingā hohk dōdī<br>Gwóngdùngwá, yihhauh néih<br>máaih yéh jauh hōyih<br>pèhngdī laak.   |
| 5. Néih hohk sé Jùngmāhn.<br>Néih hōyih tái Jùngmāhn syū<br>laak.              | 5. Yùngwó néih yingā hohk sé<br>Jùngmāhn, yihhauh néih<br>jauh hōyih tái Jùngmāhn<br>syū laak.         |
| 6. Néih jegam dò chin bái kéuih.<br>Néih mhgau chin yuhng laak.                | 6. Yùngwó néih yingā je gam dò<br>chin bái kéuih, jihhauh<br>néih jauh mhgau chin<br>yuhng laak.       |

## 15. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: 1. T: Kéuih làihjō yāt<br>nihn. /Hèunggóng/              | T: He has been here a year.<br>/Hong Kong/   |
| S: Kéuih làihjō<br>Hèunggóng yāt<br>nihn.                    | S: He has been in Hong Kong a<br>year.   |
| 2. T: Kéuih dásyun heui<br>gódouh. /géidō<br>yaht a?/        | T: He plans to go there.<br>/how many days?/   |
| S: Kéuih dásyun heui<br>gódouh géidō<br>yaht a?              | S: How many days does he plan to<br>be away?   |
| 1. Kéuih dásyun fàanheui géi<br>go yuht. /Méihgwok/          | 1. Kéuih dásyun fàanheui<br>Méihgwok géi go yuht.<br>He plans to go back to<br>America for a few months. |
| 2. Kéuih chānchīk kyutdihng làih<br>Hèunggóng. /géi noih a?/ | 2. Kéuih chānchīk kyutdihng<br>làih Hèunggóng géi noih a?  |
| 3. Kéuih dásyun heui jyuh géidō<br>nihn a? /Tòihwāan/        | 3. Kéuih dásyun heui Tòihwāan<br>jyuh géidō nihn a?  |
| 4. Kéuih hèimohng fàanlāih nīdouh.<br>/géi go láihbaai/      | 4. Kéuih hèimohng fàanlāih<br>nīdouh géi go láihbaai.  |
| 5. Kéuih làihjō chāt baat nihn<br>laak. /nīdouh/             | 5. Kéuih làihjō nīdouh chāt<br>baat nihn laak.   |

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) Jauh mātyéh = How come?
- 2) Móuh = 'Nothing special' A response making light of topic discussed.
- 3) sihk ngaanjau = sihk ngaan = eat lunch
  - a) ngaanjau = 'noon'
- 4) tūnghohk = schoolmate
- 5) jūnghohk = high school, middle school
- 6) yārchāih = together
- 7) gójahnsih = at that time
- 8) sahpgéi = more than ten [ten-several]
- 9) ji = (not until) then, (only) then
- 10) wáan = play, amuse oneself, enjoy leisure time

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person next to you:

1. How long have you lived here?
2. How much longer do you plan to stay?
3. Where did you live before you came here?
4. I attended university in England--I lived there for three years.
5. At most, how long do you plan to stay?
6. After Mr. Ho comes back, he and Miss Chan are getting married.
7. That car of yours is very nice--when'd you get it?
8. That's a nice lighter--where did you get (buy) it?

B. And he replies:

1. About two years.
2. Can't say for sure--maybe one year, maybe ten.
3. Before I came here, I lived in Taiwan.
4. After I graduate, I plan to go to England for further study.
5. At most five years, at least three.
6. Really! Before he left, he planned to marry Miss Cheung!
7. I bought it after I got to Hong Kong.
8. I don't remember--I got (bought) it before I came to Hong Kong.



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 9. (said in Hong Kong:) He told me he moved to Hong Kong last year. Do you know where he lived before? | 9. His wife told me they previously lived in Macau.  |
| 10. He's been gone for three weeks-- do you know when he's coming back?                                | 10. He planned to be away about three weeks--maybe he'll be back tomorrow.                             |
| 11. I've been married 3 years-- How long have you been married?  | 11. Not very long--only eleven months.   |
| 12. How long did you play ball yesterday?  | 12. We played ball for three hours, and afterwards then came home and studied Cantonese for two hours. |

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 18

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. bātyihp           | VO graduate   |
| 2. béifaan           | v give back   |
| 3. b̀un              | v move  |
| 4. b̀un (ng)̀uk      | VO move (house)   |
| 5. daaihhoik         | n/PW university   |
| 6. daaihluk          | PW/n continent; term used to refer to Mainland China  |
| 7. -d̀ou             | suf. suf. to nu.m. expression = approximately <u>nu.m.</u>  |
| 8. duk daaihhoik     | VO study at a university, attend a university   |
| 9. duk sỳu          | VO to study, to go to school  |
| 10. gājē             | TA/n elder sister   |
| 11. géi ǹoi         | Ph how long (time)?   |
| 12. gitfàn           | VO get married, be married  |
| 13. <u>VP</u> góján, | Cj when, at the time of..., combines with preceding verb phrase to express 'at the time of (thus and so),' 'when' |
| 14. gójahn           | Cj same as <u>góján</u> (QV)  |
| 15. Gwóngj̀au        | PW Canton, city of Canton   |
| 16. h̀eimohng        | v hope  |
| 17. jid̀o            | Ph at most  |
| 18. jisíu            | Ph at least   |

19. ____ j'ich'ihn	Cj before ____ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length of time expression)
20. ____ j'ihauh	Cj after ____ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length of time expression)
21. -jó	vs verb suf. in time spent phrase of past reference
22. j'ung'tauh	n hour
23. kyutdihng	v decide
24. lauh'hohk	v study abroad
25. meih <u>VP</u> j'ich'ihn, ...	Cj before <u>VP</u> , ...
26. móuhgéinoih	Ph not very long (time)
27. Oumín	PW Macau
28. Tòihbāk	PW Taipei
29. Tòihwāan or -wāan	PW Taiwan
30. wán yéh j'ouh	VP look for a job, search for work to do
31. y'ihch'ihn	MA previously, formerly, before
32. y'ihhauh	MA afterwards
33. y'uhgwó	Cj if, on condition that

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Walking from the bus stop on his way to work in the morning, a foreigner who is a new resident in Hong Kong meets a friend, a native resident:)

sàn lǎih ge yáhn                      newcomer, new arrival

Sàn lǎih ge yáhn

A, Léih Sǎang, jóusǎhn.

Good morning, Mr. Lee.

jóuchāan

breakfast [early-meal]

Sihkjó jóuchāan meih a?

Have you had breakfast yet?

Búndeihyáhn

Meih a.

Not yet.

jíng

fix; make

Mhngau síngaan hái ngūkkéi jíng.

There wasn't enough time to fix it at home.

Sàn lǎih ge yáhn

ngāam

fitting, suitable

yārchǎih

together

Ngāam laak--yārchǎih lǎ!

Great! (We can eat) together!

Búndeihyáhn

Hóu aak.

Fine.

(The two enter a cafe and take a table)

wán ngūk

look for a house

wánjó hóu noih

searched for a long time

Tèngginwah néih wán ngūk, wánjó

I hear you've been looking

hóu noih--

for a house for quite a while--

wándóu

find [search-succeed]

Wándóu meih a?

Have you found one?

Sàn lǎih ge yáhn

Wándóu laak.

Yeah, we did.

sínji (var.: ji)

finally, (not until) then,  
(only) then

Seuhng go lǎihbaai sínji

Last week we finally found one.

wándóu jē.

Bundeihyahn

Gám, néih dásyun géisih bunnē? When do you plan to move?

Sàn lāih ge yahn

chéng invite, request  
chéngdóu hire, employ [invite-attain]  
chéngdóu gungyahn employ servants  
ji (not until) then (same as sinji)

Dáng ngóhdeih chéngdóu gungyahn We won't move until after we  
jihauh, ji bunn. hire servants.

Bundeihyahn

Néih yáuh móuh máaih yéh a? Have you bought things (for the  
house)?

Sàn lāih ge yahn

Yáuh-- Yes--  
díp plates  
chéunglím curtains  
chéunglím bou curtain material  
a suffix to members of series  
in parallel construction  
Seuhng go láihbaai ngóh taaitái Last week my wife bought some  
máaihjó dí búi a, díp a, glasses, and plates, and some  
chéunglím bou a-- curtain material--  
gám that kind of thing, such things  
Seuhng go láihbaai ngóh Last week my wife bought some  
taaitái máaihjó dí búi a, glasses, and plates, and  
díp a, chéunglím bou a, gám some curtain material--that  
jē. kind of stuff, that's all.  
gāsi furniture  
tou gāsi set of furniture  
jòu to rent  
jòu tou gāsi rent a set of furniture  
Kéuih juhng jòu tou gāsi tím She also rented a set of  
bo. furniture, too.

Búndehyáhn

-hóu

verb suffix: bring to  
satisfactory conclusion

Dí yéh jinghóusaai meih a?

Is everything fixed up by now?

Sàn làih ge yáhn

yínging

already

Yínging jinghóusaai laak.

(Yes, it's) already all fixed  
up.

Dākhaahn chéng heui choh lā.

When you have time, please go  
visit.Búndehyáhn

Hóu aak.

Fine!

yātdihng

definitely, certainly

yātdihng yiu máaih ché

certainly want to buy a car

Gám, néih hái Hèunggóng yātdihng

Say, in Hong Kong you'll

yiu máaih ché ga.

definitely have to buy a car.

Máaihjó meih a?

Have you bought one yet?

Sàn làih ge yáhn

Ngóh meih máaihdu bo.

I haven't gotten around to  
buying one yet.

Néih ga hái bíndouh máaih ga?

Where was yours bought?

Ngóh waahkjé heui gódouh táihah.

Maybe I'll go there and have  
a look.B. Recapitulation:(Walking from the bus stop on his way to work in  
the morning, a foreigner who is a new resident  
in Hong Kong meets a friend, a native resident:)Sàn làih ge yáhn

A, Léih Sàang, jóusàhn.

Good morning, Mr. Lee.

Sihkjé jóuchāan meih a?

Have you had breakfast yet?

Búndehyáhn

Meih a.

Not yet.

Ángau síngaan hái úkkéi jing.

There wasn't enough time to  
fix it at home.

Sàn làih ge yàhn

Ngāam laak--yātchàih lā! Great! (We can eat) together!

Búndeihyàhn

Hóu aak.

Fine.

Tèngginwah néih wán ngūk, wánjǒ

I hear you've been looking for  
a house for quite a while--

hóu noih--

Have you found one?

Wándóu meih a?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

Wándóu laak.

Yeah, we did.

Seuhng go láihbaai sinji

Last week we finally found one.

wándóu jē.

Búndeihyàhn

Gám, néih dásyun géisih bún nē?

When do you plan to move?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

Dáng ngóhdeih chéngdóu gúngyàhn

We won't move until after we  
hire servants.

jihauh, ji bún.

Búndeihyàhn

Néih yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?

Have you bought things (for  
the house)?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

Yáuh--

Yes--

Seuhng go láihbaai ngóh taai-

Last week my wife bought some  
glasses, and plates, and  
some curtain material--that  
kind of stuff, that's all.

táai máaihjó dĩ búi a, dĩp a,  
chēunglím bou a, gám jē.

Kéuih juhng jōu tou gāsi tím bo.

She also rented a set of  
furniture, too.

Búndeihyàhn

Dĩ yéh jinghóusaai meih a?

Is everything fixed up by now?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

Yíngíng jinghóusaai laak.

Yes, (it's) already all fixed  
up.

Dākhaahn chéng heui chóh lā.

When you have time, please go  
visit.

Bundeihyahn

Hóu aak.

Fine!

Gám, néih hái Hèunggóng yātdihng  
yiu máaih ché ga.Say, in Hong Kong you'll  
definitely want to buy a car.

Máaihjó meih a?

Have you bought one yet?

Sàn làih ge yahn

Ngóh meih máaihdou bo.

I haven't gotten around to  
buying one yet.

Néih ga hái bīndouh máaih ga?

Where was yours bought?

Ngóh waahkjé heui gódouh táihah.

Maybe I'll go there and have  
a look.

## II. NOTES

1. Verb forms for talking about what happened in the past: affirmative, negative, and question forms.

a. Affirmative forms for talking about the past: V, V-jó, V-gwo, V-hóu, V-ge, and others.

The way the verb is inflected (whether it is plain or how it is suffixed) depends in part on what aspect of the activity the speaker wishes to focus on.

1) Focus on general activity: V(O)

- Ex: 1. Ngòh kàhmyaht gwo hói      I went across the harbour  
       haahng gungsi.                    yesterday to windowshop.
2. Tèngginwah néih wán            I hear you've been house-  
       nguk.                                hunting.

2) Focus on a particular experience: V-gwo

- Ex: Ngòh táigwo yísāng, daahnhaih    I went to the doctor, but  
       keuih wah mouh meyh.                he said it wasn't anything.

3) Focus on the success of a particular performance: V-hóu

- Ex: Dī chēunglím jǐnghóusai      The curtains are all fixed.  
       laak.

4) Focus on accomplishment of a particular performance: V-jó

- Ex: 1. Kéuih máaihjó ga sán ché.    He bought a new car.
2. Kéuih kàhmyaht heuijó            He took off for America  
       Méihgwok.                            yesterday.
3. Kéuih nǐpáai chéngjó              He recently hired a  
       gungyahn.                              servant.

5) Focus on attainment of a particular objective (though it was hard, you did it): V-dóu

- Ex: Ngòh kàhmyaht sǐnji chéngdóu    I finally hired a servant  
       gungyahn laak.                        yesterday.

6) Focus on the time or place the action happened: TW+V+ge; PW+V+ge

- Ex: 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui ge.        He went yesterday.
2. Nǐdī yéh hái bíndouh máaih ga?    Where was this bought?



Basically the verb forms are set by the grammar of the language, and the speaker has only limited flexibility within grammatical confines. For example, time spent doing something in the past is expressed as V-jó + time-span phrase, or V-gwo + time-span phrase. The -jó or -gwo is required in such cases by the grammar. If the speaker uses the V+ time-span pattern, he must use either -jó or -gwo, whichever is appropriate.

Ex: Ngóh {duhkjó } léuhng nǎhn I studied at college for two  
{duhkgwo} daaihohk. years.

Money transactions accomplished are also expressed in VO form, with a -jó or -gwo suffix to the V, and a nu.-M money expression as O.

Ex: Ní ga ché yiu maaih maahn This car (we) wanted to sell for  
ngh mǎn, sāumēi maaihjó \$15,000, but finally closed the  
maahn yih mǎn. deal (sell-accomplish) for  
\$12,000.

(See Drill 12)

b. Negative forms for talking about the past: móuh V and meih V.

1) móuh V

Móuh Verb (ex. móuh máaih, móuh síhk, móuh heui) concerns a certain time in the past and asserts that the action expressed by the verb phrase did not take place at that time.

Ex: Ngóh gǎmyant móuh síhk I didn't eat breakfast today.  
jóuchāan. (said in the afternoon)

2) meih V

Meih Verb (ex. meih máaih, meih síhk, meih heui) concerns an action which the speaker expects/expected to happen, but which hasn't/hadn't happened at the moment of speaking/moment spoken about, but which is/was still planned.

Ex: 1. Ngóh meih síhk I haven't eaten breakfast. (implies  
jóuchāan. that you're planning to)  
2. Ngóh góján meih At that time I hadn't graduated.  
bātyihp. (implies that you later did graduate)

c. Choice-question forms for talking about the past: yáuh móuh V?, and

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \underline{V-jó} \\ \underline{V-gwo} \\ \underline{V-hóu} \\ \text{Etc.} \end{array} \right\} \text{meih?}$

1) yáuh móuh V?

This form concerns time prior to the time of speaking, and inquires whether an action expressed by the verb phrase took place. The speaker has no preconception of whether the action did or did not occur.

- Ex: 1. Néih yáuh móuh máaih sán chē a? Have you bought a new car? (I don't know that you plan to.)
2. Kéuih yáuh móuh daaih-hohk bāt'ihp ga? Did he graduate from college? (Is he a college graduate?-- I don't have any knowledge of his educational attainments)
3. Néih yáuh móuh tái yīsāng a? Have you seen a doctor?

2) V-jó/gwo/hóu, etc. meih?

In using the meih form the speaker indicates that he knows the action of the verb has happened or will happen at some time. The question is not whether the action occurred, but whether it has/had occurred at the time he is talking/talking about.

- Ex: 1. Néih máaihjó ga sán chē meih? Have you bought (or did you buy) a/the new car yet? (I know you plan to.)
2. Kéuih gó'jahnsìh bāt'jó yihp meih a? Had he graduated at that time?
3. Néih táigwo yīsāng meih a? Have you seen a doctor (yet)?

2. meih 'not (yet)' in sentences of future reference.

meih occasionally occurs in negative and question sentences referring to future events. The sentence patterns in such cases are:

Neg: future-TW meih V = will not have V-ed by future TW time

Q: future-TW V meih? = will have V-ed or not by future TW time?

Example sentences:

Neg: Tíngyaht meih fàanlaih. He won't have come back by tomorrow. [Tomorrow not yet return.]

Q: Tíngyaht fàanlaih meih a? Will he have come back by tomorrow? (You expected him back yesterday and have just been told that he is still not back.)

These are not garden variety futures-- (the garden variety futures being mhV and V mhV?). The negative expresses that something which you would normally expect to happen by a certain time will not have happened by then. The question indicates that you expected something to have happened by the time indicated by the timeword, but you now have reason to doubt that it will have happened by then.

(See Drill 5)

3. sinji (variant: ji) 'finally;' '(only) then;' '(not until) then'

(sin)ji implies 'later than one would expect or desire.' It functions as an adverb in a single clause sentence, and as a conjunction in a double clause sentence.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih tǐngyaht (sin)ji      Tomorrow he finally leaves.  
       jáu.                                      Not until tomorrow does he leave.
2. Dǎng ngóhdeih chéngdóu      We'll wait till after we get  
       gungyahn jǐhauh, (sin)ji      servants hired, only then will  
       bún.                                      we move.

(See BC and Drills 4,5,6)

4. a = suffix to members of series in parallel construction

Example:

1. Ngóh máaihjó dǐ bǐi a, dǐp a,      I bought some cups, and plates,  
       chéunglím a.                              and curtains.
2. Ngóh kǎhmyaht síhkháh yéh a,      Yesterday I ate, and read, and  
       táiháh syú a, fanháh gaau a.      slept.

(See BC)

5. S { hái bǐndouh } V ge/ga = S is/was { where } V-ed.  
       { túhng bǐngo }                              { with whom }  
       { géisí }                                      { when }

a. The central point of a sentence is sometimes not the 'who does what' of it, but the 'where, when, from or with whom' of it. For example, compare the following two English sentences:

1. I bought plates at Wing On, not at Sincere.
2. I bought plates at Wing On, not glasses.

When the point of the sentence is where, when, from whom, with whom something is done, the Cantonese preference is to split the basic VO phrase and reconstruct the sentence, putting the O of the VO into subject position, making the when/where part central and the verb last, followed by the sentence suffix *ge/ga* 'that's the way it is.'

Example:

1. Néih ga chē (haih) hái bīndouh maaih ga?      Where was your car bought?
2. Néih ga chē (haih) géisí maaih ga?      When was your car bought?
3. Néih ga chē (haih) tūhng bīngo maaih ga?      From whom was your car bought?
4. Néih ga chē tūhng bīngo maaih ga?      For (on behalf of) whom was your car bought?

(See BC and Drill 16)

- b. For convenience in referring to this pattern we will call it the hái bīndouh V ge pattern, though as you see hái bīndouh is not the only phrase that fills the position.
- c. It usually turns out that this pattern translates into English in a past tense form, because ordinarily what is talked about using this pattern are things that have already happened. The form is, however, not a past reference form, and can be used for non-past situations.

Ex: Ní jūng bējáu hái Weihòhng maaih ga.      This kind of beer is sold at Wellcome Company.

(Compare with:)

Ní dī bējáu hái Weihòhng maaih ga.      This beer was bought at Wellcome Company.

(See Drill 14)

- d. When one wishes to highlight the 'what' part, rather than the 'where/when/from whom' part, the sentence is phrased in standard SVO form instead of the hái bīndouh V ge form.

Ex: Ngòh háj Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī maaihjó dī bui.      I bought some glasses at Wing On Company.

(Compare with:)

Ní dī búi hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī maaih ge.      These glasses were bought at Wing On Company.

6. -hóu = V.suf. indicating that the action expressed by the performance verb preceding is brought to a satisfactory conclusion.

- Ex: jíng = to work on, to make, to fix  
jíng hóu = to fix up, to fix so that it's OK  
góng = speak  
góng hóu = to talk it over and come to an agreement  
gwa = to hang  
gwah hóu = to hang up

## III. DRILLS

## 1. Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>+ 1. a. <u>ngūkjòu</u>, ngūkjōu<br/>           b. géi(dō) chin ngūkjōu a?<br/>           c. béi géi(dō) chin ngūkjōu a?<br/>           d. yiu béi géi(dō) chin ūkjōu a?<br/>           e. yāt go yuht yiu béi géi(dō)<br/>           chin ūkjōu a?<br/>           f. Néih yāt go yuht yiu béi<br/>           géi(dō) chin ūkjōu a?</p> <p>+ 2. a. <u>yàhngùng</u>, yàhngūng<br/>           b. géidō chin yàhngūng a?<br/>           c. béi géidō chin yàhngūng a?<br/>           d. yiu béi géidō chin yàhngūng a?<br/>           e. yāt go yuht yiu béi géidō chin<br/>           yàhngūng a?<br/>           f. Néih yāt go yuht yiu béi<br/>           géidō chin yàhngūng a?<br/>           g. Néih yāt go yuht yiu béi<br/>           géidō chin yàhngūng néih<br/>           gungyáhn a?</p> <p>+ 3. a. <u>sànséui</u><br/>           + b. <u>maahn</u> lèhng mán sànséui<br/>           gamseuhnghá<br/>           (maahn = ten thousand)<br/>           c. yáuh maahn lèhng mán sànséui<br/>           gamseuhnghá<br/>           d. yāt nihh yáuh maahn lèhng<br/>           mán sànséui gamseuhnghá<br/>           e. Kéuih yāt nihh yáuh maahn<br/>           lèhng mán sànséui gam-<br/>           seuhnghá.</p> | <p>1. a. <u>house rent</u><br/>           b. how much rent?<br/>           c. how much rent (do you)<br/>           pay? [give]<br/>           d. have to pay how much rent?<br/>           e. have to pay how much rent<br/>           per month?<br/>           f. How much rent do you pay<br/>           a month?</p> <p>2. a. <u>wages</u> (of servants, day<br/>           laborers)<br/>           b. how much wages?<br/>           c. how much wages (do you)<br/>           pay?<br/>           d. How much wages do you<br/>           have to pay?<br/>           e. How much wages (do you)<br/>           have to pay per month?<br/>           f. How much wages do you<br/>           have to pay per month?<br/>           g. How much wages do you<br/>           have to pay your ser-<br/>           vant per month? <u>or</u><br/>           What do you pay your<br/>           servant per month?</p> <p>3. a. <u>salary</u> (of white collar<br/>           workers)<br/>           b. approximately ten thou-<br/>           sand and some dollars<br/>           salary<br/>           c. gets approximately<br/>           \$10,000 and some salary<br/>           d. gets approximately<br/>           \$10,000 and some salary<br/>           a year<br/>           e. He gets a salary of<br/>           approximately \$10,000<br/>           and some per year.</p> |
|--|---|

4. a. jòu ge, jōu ge  
 b. haih jòu ge  
 c. gāan ngūk haih jòu ge  
 d. Gó gāan ngūk haih jòu ge  
 e. Gó gāan ngūk haih m̄hahh jòu ga?  
 f. Néih jyuh gó gāan ngūk haih m̄hahh jòu ga?  
 g. Néih chānchīk jyuh gó gāan ngūk haih m̄hahh jòu ga?
- + 5. a. jyú  
 + b. jyú faahn  
 c. sīk jyú faahn  
 d. sīk m̄hsīk jyú faahn a?  
 e. go gūngyāhn sīk m̄hsīk jyú faahn a?  
 f. Gó go gūngyāhn sīk m̄hsīk jyú faahn a?  
 g. Néih gó go gūngyāhn sīk m̄hsīk jyú faahn a?
6. a. jīng  
 + b. jīng chāan  
 c. m̄hsīk jīng chāan  
 d. m̄hsīk jīng jóuchāan
4. a. rented one, rented  
 b. is a rented one  
 c. The house is rented, is a rented one  
 d. That house is a rented one  
 e. Is that house a rented one?  
 f. Is the house you are living in a rented one?  
 g. Is the house your relative lives in a rented one?
5. a. cook  
 b. cook rice, i.e., cook (Chinese style) food  
 c. knows how to cook (Chinese) food  
 d. know how to cook Chinese food?  
 e. Does the servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?  
 f. Does that servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?  
 g. Does your servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?
6. a. fix  
 b. make, cook (Western) meals  
 c. can't cook Western style food  
 d. doesn't know how to cook breakfast
-

## 2. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih bātjò yihp    T: Has she graduated yet?  
meih a? /gauhnin/        /last year/  
S: Bātjò laak. Gauh-    S: Yes, she has -- (she) graduated  
nin bāt ge.                last year.
2. T: Kéuih bātjò yihp    T: Has she graduated yet?  
meih a? /chēut-        /next year/  
nin/                        /next year/  
S: Meih. Chēutnin        S: Not yet. She graduates [not  
sinji bātyihp.            until] next year.
1. Kéuih fàanjò làih meih a?    1. Fàanjò laak. Seuhnggo  
/seuhnggo làihbaai/            làihbaai fàan ge.
2. Néih sīnsàang fàanjò heui    2. Meih. Hahgo yuht sinji fàan  
Mèingwok meih a?            heui.  
/hahgo yuht/
3. Néih go nēui bātjò yihp meih a?    3. Meih. Chēut nin sàam yuht  
/cheut nin sàam yuht/            sinji bātyihp.
4. Néih go jái bātjò yihp meih a?    4. Bātjò laak. Gauh nin luhk  
/gauh nin luhk yuht/            yuht bāt ge.
5. Chàhn Siujé dājò dihnwá bēi    5. Dājò laak. Kàhmyaht dá ge.  
néih meih a? /kàhmyaht/
- + 6. Néih tājò bouji meih a?    6. Meih. Dàngjan sinji tái.  
/dàngjan/                        Not yet. I'm going to  
Have you read the newspaper    read it in a little while.  
yet? /in a (short) while/
7. Yīngā chāt dīm laak. Wòhng    7. Meih. Baat dīm sinji síhk.  
+ Sàang síhkjò máahnfaahn        Not yet -- He's going to  
meih a? /baat dīm/            eat at 8.  
(evening meal)
8. Yīngā bāat dīm laak. Hōh    8. Hēijò laak. Chāt dīm hēi  
+ Tāai hēijò sán meih a?        ge.  
/chāt dīm/                         
(nēi sán =  
get up (from sleeping))



## 3. Expansion Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai mōuh heui. /hahgo láihbaai/  
 S: Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai mōuh heui, hahgo láihbaai sinji heui. T: He didn't go last week. /next week/
2. T: Kéuih nīgo yuht meih heui. /hahgo yuht/  
 S: Kéuih nīgo yuht meih heui, hahgo yuht sinji heui. T: He hasn't gone this month. /next month/
3. T: Kéuih seuhnggo yuht mōuh síhgaan heui. /hahgo yuht/  
 S: Kéuih seuhnggo yuht mōuh síhgaan heui, hahgo yuht sinji heui. T: He didn't have time to go last month. /next month/
1. Ngóh taaitái yāt houh meih heui. /sàam houh/  
 1. Ngóh taaitái yāt houh meih heui, sàam houh sinji heui.
2. Ngóh go jái gámnin meih bātyihp. /chēutnín/  
 2. Ngóh go jái gámnin meih bātyihp, chēutnín sinji bātyihp.
3. Ngóh sínsàang kàhmyaht mōuh fāangung. /gāmyaht/  
 3. Ngóh sínsàang kàhmyaht mōuh fāangung, gāmyaht sinji fāan.
4. Ngóh dí sailōugō seuhng go láihbaai mōuh heui yāuhseui. /nīgo láihbaai/  
 4. Ngóh dí sailōugō seuhng go láihbaai mōuh heui yāuhseui, nīgo láihbaai sinji heui.
5. Wòhng Sàang nīgo yuht mōuh síhgaan bìn uk. /hahgo yuht/  
 5. Wòhng Sàang nīgo yuht mōuh síhgaan bìn uk, hahgo yuht sinji bìn.
6. Hòh Táai nīgo láihbaaiyaht mōuh síhgaan jōuh sām. /hahgo láihbaaiyaht/  
 6. Hòh Táai nīgo láihbaaiyaht mōuh síhgaan jōuh sām, hahgo láihbaaiyaht sinji jōuh.

## 4. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih héijó sán meih a? /shake; gáu dimjūng/  
 S: Meih. Kéuih dá-syūn gáu dimjūng ji heisán.  
 T: Has he gotten up yet? /shake; 9 o'clock/  
 S: Not yet. He plans to get up at 9 o'clock. [only then]
2. T: Kéuih fàanjógūng meih a? nod; baat dimjūng/  
 S: Fàanjó laak. Kéuih baat dimjūng jauh fàanjó laak.  
 T: Has he gone to work yet? /nod; 8 o'clock/  
 S: Yes, he has. He went back at 8. [that soon]

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih sihkjó ngaanjau meih a? /nod/ yāt dimjūng/             | 1. Sihkjó la. Kéuih yāt dimjūng jauh sihkjó laak.       |
| 2. Néih sīnsāang fàanjólāih meih a? /shake/ luhk dim géi/       | 2. Meih. Kéuih dásyūn luhk dim géi ji fāan.             |
| 3. Néih go jái heuijó dá bō meih a? /nod/ gáu dimjūng/          | 3. Heuijó la. Kéuih gáu dimjūng jauh heuijó laak.       |
| 4. Néih taaitāai heuijó yám chāh meih a? /shake/ gáu dim bun/   | 4. Meih. Kéuih dásyūn gáu dim bun ji heui.              |
| 5. Wòhng Sāang héijó sán meih a? /nod/ baat dim/                | 5. Héijó la. Kéuih baat dim jauh héijó laak.            |
| 6. Léih Táai sihkjó máahnfaahn meih a? /nod/ baat dim yātgowāt/ | 6. Sihkjó la. Kéuih baat dim yātgowāt jauh sihkjó laak. |

Comment: The action expressed in a clause introduced by (sin)ji is felt to be later than one might expect.

## 5. Alteration Drill

- Ex: T: Kéuih tīngyaht fāan àhfāanlāih a? T: Will he be back tomorrow?  
 S: Kéuih tīngyaht fāan-lāih meih a? S: Will he be back by tomorrow?
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih tīngyaht jáu àhjáu a?                | 1. Kéuih tīngyaht jáu meih a?               |
| 2. Kéuih sīnsāang tīngyaht fāan àhfāangūng a? | 2. Kéuih sīnsāang tīngyaht fāangūng meih a? |
| 3. Néih tīngyaht heui àhheui ló chīn a?       | 3. Néih tīngyaht heui ló chīn meih a?       |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. Néih taaitáai tìngyaht heui<br>m̀hheui tái yīsāng a? | 4. Néih taaitáai tìngyaht heui<br>tái yīsāng meih a? |
| 5. Kéuih gáu dím héi m̀hhéisàn a?                       | 5. Kéuih gáu dím héisàn meih a?                      |
| 6. Kéuih dī jáinéui tìngyaht<br>fàan m̀hfàanlāih a?     | 6. Kéuih dī jáinéui tìngyaht<br>fàanlāih meih a?     |

## 6. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Ex: 1. T: Kéuih tìngyaht<br>fàanlāih meih<br>a? /nod/                  | T: Will he be back by tomorrow?<br>/nod/  |
| S: Fàan laak.  | S: Yes, he will have returned by<br>then.   |
| 2. T: Kéuih tìngyaht<br>fàanlāih meih<br>a? /shake/ hahgo<br>lāihbaai/ | T: Will he be back by tomorrow?<br>/shake/ next week/   |
| S: Meih a, hahgo<br>lāihbaai sinji<br>fàan.                            | S: It'll be next week before he<br>gets back. <u>or</u><br>No, he's not coming back<br>until next week. |
- 
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih tìngyaht heui meih a?<br>/nod/                                 | 1. Heui laak.                               |
| 2. Kéuih taaitáai tìngyaht jáu<br>meih a? /nod/                         | 2. Jáu laak.                                |
| 3. Kéuih sīnsāang tìngyaht làih<br>meih a? /shake/ hahgo lāih-<br>baai/ | 3. Meih a, hahgo lāihbaai<br>sinji làih.    |
| 4. Néih tìngyaht fàangùng meih a?<br>/shake/ hahgo lāihbaaiyāt/         | 4. Meih a, hahgo lāihbaaiyāt<br>sinji fàan. |
| 5. Néih go jái tìngyaht heui tái<br>yīsang meih a? /nod/                | 5. Heui laak.                               |
| 6. Kéuihdeih tìngyaht b̀n ùk<br>meih a? /shake/ hahgo yuht/             | 6. Meih a, hahgo yuht sinji<br>b̀n.         |
| 7. Hòh Táai tìngyaht máaih díp<br>meih a? /nod/                         | 7. Máaih laak.                              |

7. Alteration Drill: Transform the sentences from géisih Verb to Verb-jó meih.

Ex: Kéuih géisih làih a?

T: When is he coming?

S: Kéuih làihjó meih a?

S: Has he come yet?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih géisih chēutgāai a?             | 1. Kéuih chēutjó gāai meih a?            |
| 2. Néih sīnsāang géisih heui Méihgwok a? | 2. Néih sīnsāang heuijó Méihgwok meih a? |
| 3. Wòhng Táai géisih b̀un ũk a?          | 3. Wòhng Táai b̀unjó ũk meih a?          |
| 4. Néih géidimjūng sihk ngaanjau a?      | 4. Néih sihkjó ngaanjau meih a?          |
| 5. Néih géidimjūng sihk faahn a?         | 5. Néih sihkjó faahn meih a?             |
| 6. Néih taaitāai géisih fàan-làih a?     | 6. Néih taaitāai fàanjólàih meih a?      |
| 7. Kéuih géisí máaih s̀an ch̀e a?        | 7. Kéuih máaihjó s̀an ch̀e meih a?       |
| 8. Kéuih géisí jáu a?                    | 8. Kéuih jáujó meih a?                   |
| 9. Kéuih géisí heui Yahtbún.a?           | 9. Kéuih heuijó Yahtbún meih a?          |
| 10. Kéuih géisí heui dá b̀o a?           | 10. Kéuih heuijó dá b̀o meih a?          |
| 11. Kéuih géisí f̀aang̀ung a?            | 11. Kéuih f̀aanjó g̀ung meih a?          |
| 12. Kéuih géisí héisàn a?                | 12. Kéuih héijó s̀an meih a?             |
| 13. Kéuih géisí gitfan a?                | 13. Kéuih gitjó fan meih a?              |

## 8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih b̀ǹj̀ō ũk meih a?  
/tĩngyaht/

T: Has he moved house yet?  
/tomorrow/

S: Meih. Waahkjé tĩng-  
yaht lā.

S: Not yet -- maybe tomorrow.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih sihkj̀ō faahn meih a?<br>/yāt dímjūng/                     | 1. Meih. Waahkjé yāt dímjūng<br>lā.         |
| 2. Kéuih héij̀ō s̀ǹ meih a?<br>/gáu dím bun/                       | 2. Meih. Waahkjé gáu dím bun lā.            |
| 3. Néih s̀ns̀aang faanj̀ō Méihgwok<br>meih a? /hahgo yuht/          | 3. Meih. Waahkjé hahgo yuht<br>lā.          |
| 4. Néih taaitáai wándou gungyahn<br>meih a? /hahgo láihbaai/         | 4. Meih. Waahkjé hahgo láih-<br>baai lā.    |
| 5. Wòhng Táai làihj̀ō Hèunggóng<br>meih a? /hahgo yuht yāt<br>houh/ | 5. Meih. Waahkjé hahgo yuht<br>yāt houh lā. |
| 6. Néih go jái máaihj̀ō chē meih<br>a? /uigo láihbaai/              | 6. Meih. Waahkjé nigo láihbaai<br>lā.       |

9. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from séung Verb to Verb-j̀ō.

Ex: T: Tèngginwah kéuih séung máaih ga  
s̀ǹ chē.

T: I hear he plans to buy a new  
car.

S: Tèngginwah kéuih máaihj̀ō ga s̀ǹ  
chē laak.

S: I hear he bought a new car.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Tèngginwah kéuih séung b̀ǹ<br>nguk.                   | 1. Tèngginwah kéuih b̀ǹj̀ō<br>nguk laak.                   |
| 2. Tèngginwah néih s̀ns̀aang<br>séung faan Méihgwok.      | 2. Tèngginwah néih s̀ns̀aang<br>faanj̀ō Méihgwok laak.      |
| 3. Tèngginwah néih taaitáai séung<br>maaih tou s̀ǹ gāsí. | 3. Tèngginwah néih taaitáai<br>maaihj̀ō tou s̀ǹ gāsí laak. |
| 4. Tèngginwah Léih S̀aang séung<br>heui Méihgwok.         | 4. Tèngginwah Léih S̀aang heui-<br>j̀ō Méihgwok laak.       |
| 5. Tèngginwah Jèung Táai séung<br>maaih gán ũk.           | 5. Tèngginwah Jèung Táai<br>maaihj̀ō gán ũk laak.           |
| 6. Tèngginwah néih go jái séung<br>maaih ga chē.          | 6. Tèngginwah néih go jái<br>maaihj̀ō ga chē laak.          |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. Tèngginwah Chàhn Siujé séung wan ngük.               | 7. Tèngginwah Chàhn Siujé wandóu ngük laak.<br>I hear Miss Chan found a house.      |
| 8. Tèngginwah Hòh Táai séung chéng gungyàhn. /chéngdóu/ | 8. Tèngginwah Hòh Táai chéngdóu gungyàhn laak.<br>I hear Mrs. Ho engaged a servant. |

10. Expansion Drill: Expand the sentences with the given time expressions.

Ex: T: Hòh Sàang yínging dájò dihnwá bái ngòh laak.  
/kàhmyaht/

T: Mr. Ho already called me.  
/yesterday/

S: Hòh Sàang kàhmyaht yínging dájò dihnwá bái ngòh laak.

S: Mr. Ho already called me yesterday.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih yínging héijó sán laak.<br>/chāt dīm bun/<br>He's already gotten up.<br>/7:30/ | 1. Kéuih chāt dīm bun yínging héijó sán laak.<br>He's already gotten up by half past seven. |
| 2. Ngòh sīnsàang yínging máaihjó ga sán chē laak. /seuhnggo yuht/                       | 2. Ngòh sīnsàang seuhnggo yuht yínging máaihjó ga sán chē laak.                             |
| 3. Chàhn Táai yínging chéngdóu gungyàhn laak. /seuhnggo láihbaaisám/                    | 3. Chàhn Táai seuhnggo láihbaaisám yínging chéngdóu gungyàhn laak.                          |
| 4. Wòhng Siujé yínging bunjó ūk laak. /seuhnggo yuht sei houh/                          | 4. Wòhng Siujé seuhnggo yuht sei houh yínging bunjó ūk laak.                                |
| 5. Ngòh taaitáai yínging heuijó yám chàh laak. /gáu dīm bun/                            | 5. Ngòh taaitáai gáu dīm bun yínging heuijó yám chàh laak.                                  |
| 6. Ngòh go jái yínging heuijó dá bō laak. /baat dīmjung/                                | 6. Ngòh go jái baat dīmjung yínging heuijó dá bō laak.                                      |

## 11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih heuijǒ meih a? T: Has he gone yet? /last month/  
/seuhnggo yuht/

S: Heuijǒ laak. Kéuih S: Yes - He went last month.  
seuhnggo yuht  
heui ge.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih làihjǒ meih a?<br>/seuhnggo làihbaai/                | 1. Làihjǒ laak. Kéuih seuhng-<br>go làihbaai làih ge.       |
| 2. Néih sīnsàang fàanjǒ Méihgwok<br>meih a? /nigo yuht/       | 2. Fàanjǒ laak. Kéuih nigo<br>yuht fàan ge.                 |
| 3. Wòhng Sàang máaihjǒ chē meih<br>a? /seuhnggo làihbaaisàam/ | 3. Máaihjǒ laak. Kéuih seuhng-<br>go làihbaaisàam máaih ge. |
| 4. Néih taaitāai chéngjǒ gūngyahn<br>meih a? /kàhmyaht/       | 4. Chéngjǒ laak. Kéuih kàhmyaht<br>cheng ge.                |
| 5. Chàhn Sīujé sikhjǒ ngaanjau<br>meih a? /dīm bun jūng/      | 5. Sikhjǒ laak. Kéuih dīm bun<br>jūng sikh ge.              |

## 12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: /chē/maahn yih  
mān/

S: Nī ga chē máaihjǒ  
maahn yih mān.

T: /car/12 thousand dollars/

S: This car was bought for \$12,000.  
or  
This car (I) bought (it) for  
\$12,000.

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. /ūk/\$56,000/                    | 1. Nī gān ūk máaihjǒ ngh<br>maahn luhk mān.        |
| 2. /faaiji/\$8/                     | 2. Nī deui faaiji máaihjǒ<br>baat mān.             |
| 3. /gāng/\$6.50/                    | 3. Nī jek gāng máaihjǒ luhk<br>go bun.             |
| 4. /dáfógēi/\$46.50/                | 4. Nī go dáfógēi máaihjǒ sei-<br>sahp luhk go bun. |
| 5. /chē/\$35,000/                   | 5. Nī ga chē máaihjǒ sām<br>maahn ngh mān.         |
| + 6. /jèung tói/\$16.00/<br>(table) | 6. Nī jèung tói máaihjǒ sahp-<br>luhk mān.         |
| 7. /gāsi/\$10,000/                  | 7. Nī tou gāsi máaihjǒ yāt<br>maahn mān.           |

## 13. Alteration Drill

- + Ex: 1. T: Yāt mǎn Méihgām hóiyih wuhn luhk mǎn góngjǐ gamseuhnghá.  
(American money)  
(Hong Kong money)
- T: One dollar U.S. can be exchanged for about six dollars Hong Kong.
- S: Yāt mǎn Méihgām jǐkhaih luhk mǎn góngjǐ gamseuhnghá.
- S: One dollars U.S. -- well, that's about six dollars Hong Kong
2. T: Léuhng mǎn Méihgām hóiyih wuhn géi chǐn góngjǐ a?
- T: How much in Hong Kong money can you get for two dollars U. S.?
- S: Léuhng mǎn Méihgām jǐkhaih géi chǐn góngjǐ a?
- S: Two dollars U.S. is how much in Hong Kong money?
- + 1. Yāt Yǐngbohng hóiyih wuhn sahpluhk mǎn Góngjǐ.  
(English pound (sterling))
1. Yāt Yǐngbohng jǐkhaih sahpluhk mǎn Góngjǐ.
2. Sahpyih mǎn Góngjǐ hóiyih wuhn géi chǐn Méihgām a?
2. Sahpyih mǎn Góngjǐ jǐkhaih géi chǐn Méihgām a?
3. Ngh Yǐngbohng hóiyih wuhn géi chǐn Góngjǐ a?
3. Ngh Yǐngbohng jǐkhaih géi chǐn Góngjǐ a?
4. Yāt Yǐngbohng hóiyih wuhn géi chǐn Méihgām a?
4. Yāt Yǐngbohng jǐkhaih géi chǐn Méihgām a?
5. Yāt Yǐngbohng hóiyih wuhn léuhng go géi ngǎhnchǐn Méihgām gamseuhnghá.
5. Yāt Yǐngbohng jǐkhaih léuhng go géi ngǎhnchǐn Méihgām gamseuhnghá.
6. Ngh mǎn Méihgām hóiyih wuhn sàmsahp mǎn góngjǐ gamseuhnghá.
6. Ngh mǎn Méihgām jǐkhaih sàmsahp mǎn góngjǐ gamseuhnghá.
7. Yāt maahn mǎn góngjǐ hóiyih wuhn géi chǐn Yǐngbohng a?
7. Yāt maahn mǎn góngjǐ jǐkhaih géi chǐn Yǐngbohng a?
8. Sahp maahn mǎn Méihgām hóiyih wuhn luhksahp maahn góngjǐ.
8. Sahp maahn mǎn Méihgām jǐkhaih luhksahp maahn góngjǐ.
9. Yāt maahn Yǐngbohng hóiyih wuhn sahpluhk maahn góngjǐ.
9. Yāt maahn Yǐngbohng jǐkhaih sahpluhk maahn góngjǐ.
10. Yāt baak maahn góngjǐ hóiyih wuhn géi chǐn Yǐngbohng a?
10. Yāt baak maahn góngjǐ jǐkhaih géi chǐn Yǐngbohng a?



Comment: Note that Yingbohng 'English pound (sterling)' (also pronounced Yingbong) has the grammatical status of a Measure, whereas Méihgām, 'American money', and Góngjī, 'Hong Kong money' have the status of Nouns:

Number - Measure - Noun

sàam Yingbohng = 3

sàam mán Méihgām = US\$300

sàam mán Góngjī = HK\$300

#### 14. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ní go dáfógēi hái  
bīndouh máaih ga?  
/Yahtbún/

T: Where did you buy this lighter?  
/Japan/

S: Ní go dáfógēi hái  
Yahtbún máaih ge.

S: I bought this lighter in Japan.

1. Ní go dáfógēi géisi máaih ga?  
/seuhnggo laihbaaiyat/

1. Ní go dáfógēi seuhnggo  
laihbaaiyat máaih ge.

2. Ní jī bāt tùhng bīngō je ga?  
/Léih Táai/

2. Ní jī bāt tùhng Léih Táai  
je ge.

3. Ní gihn seutsāam sung bēi  
bīngō ga? /ngóh bàhbā/

3. Ní gihn seutsāam sung bēi  
ngóh bàhbā ge.

4. Ní júng hàaih hái bīn gāan  
gungsi máaih ga? /Wihng  
Ōn Gūngsi/

4. Ní júng hàaih hái Wihng Ōn  
Gungsi máaih ge.

5. Ní júng hàaih hái bīn gwok  
jouh ga? /Yinggwok/

5. Ní júng hàaih hái Yinggwok  
jouh ge.

6. Ní dī bēng bīngō jīng ga?  
/ngóh taaitāai/

6. Ní dī bēng ngóh taaitāai  
jīng ge.

7. Ní ga chē hái bīndouh máaih ga?  
/Hèunggóng/

7. Ní ga chē hái Hèunggóng  
máaih ge.

Comment: The sentences above are not necessarily past in reference. For example #5 might be: This kind of shoe is made in what country? and #3: This shirt is one you're giving to whom?

## 15. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih wán ūk.  
/hóu noih/

T: He is looking for (or looked  
for) a house. /very long  
(time)/

S: Kéuih wán ūk, wánjǒ  
hóu noih.

S: He's been looking (or looked)  
for a house for a long time.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih wán gūngyàhn. /hóu noih/   | 1. Kéuih wán gūngyàhn, wánjǒ<br>hóu noih.   |
| 2. Kéuih sihk aan. /móuhgéinoih/  | 2. Kéuih sihk aan, sihkjǒ móuh-<br>géinoih.<br>He didn't take long to<br>eat lunch. |
| 3. Kéuih bün ūk. /gái go jūngtǎuh/  | 3. Kéuih bün ūk, bünjǒ gái go<br>jūngtǎuh.<br>He took several hours to<br>move.     |
| 4. Kéuih fàan Gwóngjǎu. /sei go<br>yuht/  | 4. Kéuih fàan Gwóngjǎu, fàanjǒ<br>sei go yuht.                                      |
| 5. Kéuih duhk Yíngmǎhn. /baat<br>nǐhn/  | 5. Kéuih duhk Yíngmǎhn, duhkjǒ<br>baat nǐhn.  |
| 6. Kéuih heui Tòihwāan. /sàam go<br>yuht/   | 6. Kéuih heui Tòihwāan, heuijǒ<br>sàam go yuht.                                     |
| 7. Kéuih jough sām. /yāt go láih-<br>baai/  | 7. Kéuih jough sām, joughjǒ<br>yāt go láihbaai.                                     |
| + 8. Kéuih <u>jíng chē</u> . /léuhng yaht/<br>He <u>repairs cars</u> .              | 8. Kéuih jíng chē, jíngjǒ<br>léuhng yaht.   |
| 9. Kéuih jyú faahn. /bun go jūng-<br>tǎuh/  | 9. Kéuih jyú faahn, jyújǒ bun<br>go jūngtǎuh.                                       |
| + 10. Kéuih <u>sé jih</u> . /yihshp fān-<br>jūng/<br>( <u>write [write-words]</u> ) | 10. Kéuih sé jih, séjǒ yihshp<br>fānjūng.   |

## 16. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Néih ga chē tūhng bíngō jōu<br>ga?<br>Your car is/was rented from<br>whom?<br>i.e. Who'd you rent your<br>car from? | 1. Néih ga chē tūhng bíngō<br>jōu ga?   |
| 2. /tou gāsí/  | 2. Néih tou gāsí tūhng bíngō<br>jōu ga? |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3. /hái bīndouh/  | 3. Néih tou gāsi hái bīndouh<br>jōu ga?  |
| 4. /máaih/  | 4. Néih tou gāsi hái bīndouh<br>máaih ga?  |
| + 5. /tou būi-díp/<br>(tea set; i.e., a set of<br>cups and saucers) | 5. Néih tou būdíp hái bīndouh<br>máaih ga?<br>Where did you buy your<br>tea set?           |
| + 6. /tou wún-dihp/<br>(a set of dishes--bowls and<br>plates)       | 6. Néih tou wún-dihp hái bīn-<br>douh máaih ga?<br>Where did you buy your<br>set of china? |
| 7. /jèung tói/  | 7. Néih jèung tói hái bīndouh<br>máaih ga?   |
| 8. /jǐng/   | 8. Néih jèung tói hái bīndouh<br>jǐng ga?  |
| + 9. /jèung yí/   | 9. Néih jèung yí hái bīndouh<br>jǐng ga?<br>Where was your chair made?                     |

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. A Sei, ngóh fu ngáhngéng<br>wán mhdou gé.<br>A Sei! I can't find my<br>glasses! | 1. A Sei, ngóh fu ngáhngéng<br>wán mhdou gé.    |
| 2. /jek díp/   | 2. A Sei, ngóh jek díp wán<br>mhdou gé!         |
| 3. /tíuh dáifu/  | 3. A Sei, ngóh tíuh dáifu wán<br>mhdou gé!      |
| 4. /go ngáhngéngdóí/   | 4. A Sei, ngóh go ngáhngéngdóí<br>wán mhdou gé! |
| 5. /tíuh kwáhn/  | 5. A Sei, ngóh tíuh kwáhn wán<br>mhdou gé!      |
| 6. /go sáudóí/   | 6. A Sei, ngóh go sáudóí wán<br>mhdou gé!       |
| 7. /jek gāng/  | 7. A Sei, ngóh jek gāng wán<br>mhdou gé!        |

Comment: The rising intonation of final gé connotes impatience.

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) m̀hheuidāk = can't go
  - a) -dāk = 'can', 'able to', verb suffix
- 2) yāt go ngàhnchín = one dollar (\$1.00) (See L-21, Ex. 8)
- 3) síhk ngaanjau = eat lunch
- 4) séuhng bāan = start work
- 5) daaihkoi = probably
- 6) beisyù = secretary
- 7) hóu chíh = it seems
- 8) Hóu wah = Equivalent to 'You're welcome', 'Not at all',  
Response to being thanked for a service.
- 9) ā ma? = 'isn't that right?' (being pretty sure it is)
- 10) g̀ungfo = lessons, homework
- 11) g̀ondākchit = can make it in time; there will be time to  
do it
- 12) f̀èi = ticket
- 13) -yùhn = finish
  - a) síhkyùhn = finish eating
  - b) duhkyùhn = finish studying
- 14) g̀onm̀hchit = can't make it in time
- 15) ngāamngāam = just
- 16) lauhdài = leave behind
- 17) hónàhng = probably
- 18) f̀óng = room
- 19) ā ma = sen. suf. for obviousness (see also 16-CL-1)
- 20) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong' term of address used as form of  
address to a man by good friends. (See  
17-CL-3)
- 21) Hòì faahn = 'Dinner is ready'
- 22) Haih gám sìn la = 'That's all for now'
- 23) m̀eyéh dōu móuh = doesn't have anything
- 24) chàbātdō = chàmhđō
- 25) Maahn hàahng = 'Walk slowly' -- a polite goodby form, said  
to person leaving by person remaining.

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. Has your younger sister graduated yet?
2. (on the phone:) Has Mr. Wong gone to work yet?
3. Have you moved yet?
4. How much rent do you pay a month?
5. How much is a US dollar in Hong Kong money?
6. How much is an English pound?
7. Has Mr. Ma come yet?
8. Have you hired a servant yet?
9. (on the phone:) Is Mr. Chan at home?
10. Where did you buy that table?
11. Your furniture is very nice-- did you buy it in Hong Kong?
12. Mrs. Lau didn't eat breakfast until 10:15.
13. Can your servant cook Chinese food?
14. Did someone come to fix the phone?
15. Have you cooked dinner yet?
16. I hear you've recently moved-- did you buy any new furniture?

B. And he replies:

1. Not yet--she doesn't graduate until next year.
2. Not yet, he doesn't go until 8:30.
3. Yes, we moved last week.
4. We pay HK\$2,000.
5. A US dollar is about HK\$6.00.
6. I'm not sure (not clear)-- maybe it's around HK\$14.40.
7. Not yet--when he arrives, I'll tell him to go see (look for) you.
8. Yes, we hired one last week.
9. No, he already went out-- at 8:00 o'clock--to have tea.
10. It was bought in Japan.
11. Yes, it was bought here, at a department store on the Kowloon side.
12. What time did she get up?
13. She can cook both Chinese food and Western food.
14. Yes, it's already been fixed.
15. I haven't started to make it yet.
16. Yes, we bought a table and several chairs.

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 19

1. a	bf: suf. to members of series in parallel construction
2. āam	adj: see ngāam
3. boujī	n: newspaper
4. būi-díp	n: tea set
5. chéng	v: invite, request
6. chéngdóu	v: invite and have the invitation accepted
7. chéng gúngyáhn	VO: hire servant(s)
8. chēunglím	n: ourtain
9. díp	n: plate
10. ...gám	pro: that kind of thing, such things
11. gāsi	n: furniture
12. góngjī	n: Hong Kong money
13. héisàn	VO: get up (from bed)
14. -hóu	vs: verb suf. = bring to satisfactory conclusion
15. jí	adv: finally, (not until) then, (only) then
16. jing	v: make, fix; repair
17. jing chāan	VO: make, cook (Western) meals
18. jing chē	VO: repair cars
19. jinghóu	v: fix satisfactorily
20. v-jó meih a?	VP: a question form
21. jòu	v: rent
22. jóuchāan	n: breakfast
23. jyú	v: cook
24. jyú faahn	VO: cook Chinese style food
25. maahn	m: ten thousand
26. máahnfaahn	n: supper
27. méihgām	n: American money
28. ngāam	adj: fitting, suitable
29. Ngāam laak!	Ph: That's fine! That's as it should be!
30. ngūkjòu, ngūkjóu	n: house rent
31. sán làih ge yáhn	Ph: newcomer, new arrival
32. sànséui	n: salary
33. sé jih	VO: write [write-words]

34. sìnji	adv: (not until) then, (only) then, finally
35. tó1	n: table
36. tou	m: set, M. for furniture, dishes...
37. wándóu	v: find [search-succeed]
38. wún-dihp	n: a set of china
39. yàhngùng	n: wages
40. yārchàih	adv: together
41. yātdihng	adv: certainly, definitely
42. yí	n: chair
43. yíhng	adv: already
44. yíngbóng or -bohng	m: British pounds sterling

---

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mr. Ma asks Miss Lee about her boss, Mr. Cheung, and his family:)

Máh Sinsàang

gàyàhn	family
Jèung Sàang ge gàyàhn	Mr. Cheung's family
Yáuh yáhn góng ngóh tèng	somebody told me..
Yáuh yáhn góng ngóh tèng Jèung	Somebody told me Mr. Cheung's
Sàang ge gàyàhn kàhmyaht	family went back to America
fàanheui Méihgwok.	yesterday.

Léih Siujé

Haih a. That's right.

Máh Sinsàang

tùhng person yatchàih verb	verb together with person
tùhng Jèung Sàang yatchàih	go with Mr. Cheung
heui	
díngáai?	why?
Kéuihdeih díngáai m̀tùhng Jèung	Why didn't they go with Mr.
Sàang yatchàih heui nē?	Cheung?

Léih Siujé

-dāk	able to, can. Verb suffix
	indicating physical
	ability
m̀hheuidāk	can't go
Jèung Sàang nī géi yaht dōu	Mr. Cheung was unable to go
m̀hheuidāk a.	these few days.

Máh Sinsàang

Díngáai m̀hheuidāk a? Why couldn't he go?

Léih Siujé

Kéuih nīpáai dōu hóu m̀hdākhaahn.	He's been awfully busy recently.
syùhn	ship
daap	catch, take (a train, plane,
	etc.)
daap syùhn	take a ship



gónm̀hchit	not have time [hurry-not make it]
gónm̀hchit daap syùhn	not have time to take a ship
Yùhgwó dǎng kéuih dāk̀hàahn góján, jauh gónm̀hchit daap syùhn ge laak.	If they waited until he was free, then there wouldn't be time to take a ship.
fēigèi	airplane
daap fēigèi	catch, take a plane
pa	be afraid of
hóu pa daap fēigèi	afraid of taking a plane
yánwaih ...,	because, since
sóyih ...	so, therefore
yánwaih ..., sóyih ...	because ...
yánwaih Jèung Táai hóu pa daap fēigèi gé, sóyih ...	because Mrs. Cheung is afraid of taking the plane ...
yihché	furthermore
Yihché yánwaih Jèung Táai jauh hóu pa daap fēigèi gé, sóyih kéuih tùhng dī sailóugō daap syùhn heui sín.	Furthermore, because Mrs. Cheung also is afraid of taking planes, she went first with the children by boat.
Jèung Sàng hahgo láihbaaisám ji daap fēigèi heui.	Mr. Cheung will go by plane next Wednesday.
	<u>Máh Sinsàng</u>
yùhnlòih	origin, source; reason why
O, yùhnlòih hahh gám gé.	Oh, so that's the reason.
yiu ( + time expression)	takes (amount of time)
Daap fēigèi yiu géi nôi a?	How long does it take by plane?
	<u>Léih Siujé</u>
Yāt yaht dōdī jē.	Only a little over one day.
sahpgéi	ten-several = a few more than ten
Daap syùhn jauh yiu sahpgéi yaht ge la.	If you take a ship, then it takes more than ten days.

Máh Sînsàang

múih	every, each
múih go láihbaai	every week, each week
bāan	trip (voyage Measure)
Múih go láihbaai yáuh géidō bāan	How many flights each week are
fēigèi heui Méihgwok a?	there going to America?

Léih síujé

sāamsei	three or four
Yāt yaht yáuh sāamsei bāan lā.	There are three or four
	flights a day.

Máh Sînsàang

hòih	start, leave, take off,
	(on voyage)
gó bāan géisí hòih a?	what time does the flight
	leave?
Jèung Sàang daap gó bāan géisí	The flight Mr. Cheung is
hòih a?	taking--when does it leave?

Léih Síujé

Ngòh m̀hji ga--yiu mahnháh kéuih	I don't know--you'll have to
ji jí laak.	ask him to find out. [ask him
	and only then you'll know.]

B. Recapitulation:

(Mr. Ma asks Miss Lee about her boss, Mr. Cheung, and his family:)

Máh Sînsàang

Yáuh yáhn góng ngòh t̀ng Jèung	Somebody toldme Mr. Cheung's
Sàang ge gàyáhn kàhmyaht fàan-	family went back to America
heui Méihgwok.	yesterday.

Léih Síujé

Haih a.	That's right.
---------	---------------

Máh Sînsàang

Kéuihdeih d̀ingáai m̀ht̀hng Jèung	Why didn't they go with Mr.
Sàang yáitcháih heui nē?	Cheung?

Léih Síujé

Jèung Sàang ní géi yaht dōu	Mr. Cheung couldn't leave
m̀hheuidāk a.	these few days.

Máh Sînsàang

Dínggáai m̀hheuidāk a?

Why couldn't he leave?

Léih Siujé

Kéuih nípáai dōu hóu m̀hdāk̀hàahn.  
Yùhgwó dāng kéuih dāk̀hàahn góján,  
jauh gónm̀hchit daap syùhn ge  
laak.

He's been awfully busy recently.  
If they waited until he was  
free, then there wouldn't be  
time to take a ship.

Yìhché, yànwaih Jèung Táai yauh  
hóu pa daap fēigèi gé, sóyih  
kéuih tùhng sailóugō daap  
syùhn heui sín.

Furthermore, since Mrs. Cheung  
also is afraid of taking  
planes, she left first with  
the children by ship.

Jèung Sàang bahgo láihbaaisàam  
ji daap fēigèi heui.

Mr. Cheung will go by plane  
next Wednesday.

Máh Sînsàang

O, yùhnlòih haih gám ge.  
Daap fēigèi yiu géi nòí a?

Oh, so that's the reason.  
How long does it take by plane?

Léih Siujé

Yāt yaht dōdī jē.  
Daap syùhn jauh yiu sahpgéi  
yaht ge la.

Only a little over one day.  
If you take a ship, then it  
takes more than ten days.

Máh Sînsàang

Múih go láihbaai yáuh géidō  
bāan fēigèi heui Méihgwok a?

How many flights each week are  
there going to America?

Léih Siujé

Yāt yaht yáuh sàamsei bāan lā.

There are three or four flights  
a day.

Máh Sînsàang

Jèung Sàang daap gó bāan géisí  
hòí a?

The flight Mr. Cheung is taking--  
when does it leave?

Léih Siujé

Ngóh m̀hji ga--Yiu mahnháh kéuih  
ji jí laak.

I don't know--you'll have to ask  
him to find out.

## II. NOTES

1. -dāk as verb suffix, meaning 'able to,' 'can.'

Verb-dāk forms a unit meaning 'physically able to V,' 'can V.'

Examples, showing question, negative, and affirmative forms:

	Forms	Examples	English equivalents
q	VmhV-dāk?	Ga chē gam gauh-- <u>hàahng mhhaahngdāk</u> a?	The car is so old--can it run?
n	mhV-dāk	Ga chē gam gauh-- <u>mhhaahngdāk</u> tim!	The car is so old--it isn't able to run!
a	V-dāk	Ga chē <u>hàahngdāk</u> ga--neih meih hoi sosih ja!	The car <u>can</u> run--it's simply that you haven't turned on the ignition!

By extension (Vmh)V-dāk can be used when the (in)ability is not strictly physical, as in a sentence from the BC of this lesson:

Ex: Jèung Sàang nī géi yaht      Mr. Cheung couldn't get away  
dōu mhheidāk a.                      these few days.

(See BC)

2. yànwaih..., sóyih... = 'because..., so...'; 'since..., therefore...'

Yànwaih, sóyih form a set of paired conjunctions linking the two clauses of a 'because' sentence. Use of both yànwaih and sóyih in one sentence is, however, not required.

A common pattern is to use either one or the other but not both. The order of the two clauses is irreversible.

Ex: 1. Yànwaih ngòh hái Gáulùhng      Because I work in Kowloon, I  
jouh sih, ngòh mhjúngyi      wouldn't like to live in  
hái Heunggóng jyuh.                      Hong Kong.

2. Ngòh hái Gáulùhng jouh      I work in Kowloon, so I  
sih, sóyih ngòh mhjúngyi      wouldn't like to live in  
hái Heunggóng jyuh.                      Hong Kong. (or: so I don't  
like to live in Hong Kong.)

(See BC and Drill 7)

3. **Number-Measure expressions: with fractions, partials, and approximate numbers.**

a. In Nu-M expressions concerning units greater than 1:

For numbers greater than 1, fractions and other partials fit into a number expression following the grammatical Measure word, preceding the Noun (if any).

Ex:	<u>Nu.</u>	<u>M.</u>	<u>Fraction or Partial</u>	<u>N.</u>	
1.	sàam	go		jūngt'auh	3 hours
	sàam	go	g'ei	jūngt'auh	3 hours and some
	sàam	go	bun	jūngt'auh	3 1/2 hours
	sàam	go	dō	jūngt'auh	more than 3 hours
2.	léuhng	gàn		ng'auhyuhk	2 catties of beef
	léuhng	gàn	bun	ng'auhyuhk	2 1/2 catties of beef
3.	sahp	n'ihn			10 years
	sahp	n'ihn	dō		more than 10 years

Note that the fraction part comes after the Measure, and that though most Chinese standard measures (for time, length, weight, etc.) are grammatically Measures, some standard measures are grammatically Nouns.

Thus:	<u>Nu.</u>	<u>M.</u>	<u>1/2</u>	<u>(N)</u>	
	sàam	n'ihn	bun		3 1/2 years
	sàam	go	bun	jūngt'auh	3 1/2 hours

You will probably need considerable practice to be able to produce the two types smoothly.

(See BC and Drill 11)

b. In number expressions for units less than 1:

bun, 'half' precedes the Measure word in number expressions concerning units less than 1.

Ex:	<u>1/2 M</u>	<u>(N)</u>	
	bun go	jūngt'auh	half an hour
	bun go	yuht	half a month
	bun	gàn	half a catty
	bun	máh	half a yard (of cloth, etc.)
	bun	yaht	half a day
	bun	n'ihn	half a year

c. Approximate numbers:

sàamsei	yaht	3 or 4 days
sei'ng	go y'ahn	4 or 5 people

Cantonese uses serial numbers as approximate numbers, as indicated above. Ordinarily the numbers used are adjacent numbers in series with the smaller first. Occasionally the larger number can be first;

for example: sàamléuhng geui, 'two or three sentences' [3-2-sentences]-  
gáusahp is not used as an approximate number for 'nine or ten,' but is  
used only as the specific number 'ninety.'

(See BC and Drill 14)

d. sahpgéi, [ten-several] 'ten some'

sahpgéi is an approximate number representing 'ten and a few more'--  
more than ten but less than twenty. All the round numbers--sahp, baak,  
chín--use this form in this way:

- Ex: 1. sahpgéi            ten some, a few more than ten  
2. yihshahpgéi        twenty some  
3. baakgéi            a hundred some  
4. yihbaakgéi        two hundred some  
5. chīngéi            a thousand some

(See BC)

4. múih, 'every,' 'each,' in Time Expressions.

múih 'every,' 'each,' occupies the position of specifying words  
(nī, gó) before the number in a numbered Time Expression.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih múih léuhng go    1. He goes to the New Territories  
laihbaai heui Sanggai        once very two weeks.  
yāt chi.  
2. Kéuih nī léuhng go        2. He has taken off for the New  
laihbaai heuijo                Territories twice these last  
Sanggai léuhng chi.        two weeks.

(See BC and Drills 8, 14)

When the number in the Time Expression is yāt 'one,' either the múih  
or the yāt can be omitted, or both can be said.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih múih nīhn heui Sanggai  
yāt chi. }  
2. Kéuih yāt nīhn heui Sanggai  
yāt chi. } He goes to the  
3. Kéuih múih yāt nīhn dōu heui  
Sanggai yāt chi. } New Territories  
once every year.

5. Duplication of Measure word to express 'each and every'

'Each and every,' 'every and all' may be expressed by saying the  
Measure word twice: yahtyaht, 'each and every day,' [day-day];  
gogo lāihbaai, 'each and every week,' [Measure-Measure week]. When the  
duplicated Measure is used, the phrase occurs in a set with a following  
dōu, the dōu appearing directly before the verb.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih yahtyaht dōu hohk Gwongdungwa. He studies Cantonese every day.
2. Kéuih gogo láihbaai dōu sihk yatleuhng chi Jūngchoi. He eats Chinese food once or twice every week.

(See Drills 2, 15)

The duplicated Measure is only used for 'every \_\_\_\_ without exception;' for 'every two \_\_\_\_,' etc., you must use múih.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih nihnnihñ dōu heui Méihgwok yat chi maaih yéh. Every year he goes to America on a buying trip.
2. Kéuih múih/<sup>léuhng nihñ</sup> dōu heui Méihgwok yat chi maaih yéh. He goes to America once every two years on a buying trip.

### 5. Voyage Measures

In English we may say:

- There are two planes taking off in an hour.  
There are two flights taking off in an hour.
- There are two ships on June 15.  
There are two sailings on June 15.

'Flight' and 'sailing' refer not to the vessel but to the voyage.

Cantonese makes the same distinction between vessel and voyage, but differs from English in that the distinction is compulsory. Referring to the vessel, Cantonese uses the individual measure for the vessel; when referring to a voyage, the voyage measure is used.

- Ex: 1. Gó ga fēigēi chōndāk géidō yáhn a? How many people does that plane seat? [that individual-M plane]
2. Gó bāan fēigēi géidimjūng hòì a? When does that flight leave? [that voyage-M plane]

Chart of Carriers with individual and voyage Measures:

individual measure	voyage measure	carrier
ga	bāan	fēigēi airplane
ga	lèuhn	chē, bāsí, laahmchē, lócnē, dihnchē. car, bus, cablecar, train, tram.
jek	douh	syùhn ship

This division is not always strictly adhered to. hahyāt ga chē, 'the next [individual-M] car' is said interchangeably with hahyāt bāan cnē.

'the next [voyage-M] car,' referring to the next car (usually bus) leaving.

(See BC and Drills 1, 8)

6. dímjūng, 'hour' as Time Spent word.

dímjūng in 'time when' position, i.e., before the verb, translates into English as 'o'clock,' a point in time. dímjūng in 'time spent' position, i.e., following the verb, indicates 'hour(s),' a length of time. It occupies the same sentence position that jūngtáuh, 'hour,' does.

Ex: 1. Kéuih sàam dímjūng heui gódouh. He's going there at 3 o'clock.

2. Heui gódouh yiu sàam dímjūng.

3. Heui gódouh yiu sàam go jūngtáuh.

} It takes three hours to get there.

(See Drill 6)

7. mhVerb as 'refuses to Verb,' 'refused to Verb,' 'unwilling to Verb' and V mhV? as 'willing to V?'

Compare:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1.a. Ngóh <u>mhji</u> bo—<br>kéuih mouh wah ngóh<br>ji.                               | I'm sorry, I don't know—<br>she didn't tell me.   |
| b. Ngóh <u>mhji</u> bo—kéuih<br>mhwah ngoh ji.  | I'm sorry, I don't know—<br>she wouldn't tell me.   |
| 2.a. Kéuih <u>káhmyaht</u> <u>díngáai</u><br>mouh túhng neih heui<br>a?               | Why didn't he go with you<br>yesterday? (plainfact question)  |
| b. Kéuih <u>káhmyaht</u> <u>díngáai</u><br>mhtúhng neih heui a?                       | Why didn't he go with you<br>yesterday? (implication that he<br>refused to go—that he could<br>have, but he wouldn't) |
| 3.a. Kéuih <u>gogo</u> <u>láihtaai</u><br>dou mhtúhng ngóh heui<br>gái ge.            | She won't ever go out with me<br>on Sunday.   |
| b. Gám, <u>káhmyaht</u> <u>láihtaai</u> —<br>kéuih túhng mhtúhng<br>neih heui a?      | Well, yesterday was Sunday—<br>did she (was she willing to)<br>go out with you?                                       |
| 4.a. Ngóh <u>néuihpahngyáuh</u> go—<br>go <u>láihtaai</u> dou túhng<br>ngóh heui gái. | My girlfriend always goes out<br>with me on Sunday.   |
| b. Gám, <u>káhmyaht</u> <u>láihtaai</u> —<br>kéuih yáuh mouh túhng<br>neih heui a?    | Well, yesterday was Sunday—<br>did she go out with you?   |

mhVerb may be used to express 'not willing to Verb,' in which case



the negative remains mh regardless of whether the sentence is one of past reference, non-past reference, or habitual action.

(See BC and Drill 19)

8. yi as 'cause or make (someone do something),' 'be caused or made (to do something)'

Ex: 1. Néih dǐngáai yiu [you why made walk-road go eh?]  
háahng louh heui nē? What makes you be walking?

or

What made you walk?

(Speaker indicates he expected addressee not to be walking and assumes something special made him walk.)

(Cf. English: 'What did you want to do that for?' when someone hits you unprovoked.)

2. Yiu néih dǎng ngóh Making you wait for me so long--  
gam noih, mnhou yisi. I'm very sorry.

yi which basically means 'require,' 'be required' has an extended meaning 'cause' or 'be caused.'

(See Drill 1,4)

9. SVO yáuh TS (time-spent) Expression.

Ex: Kéuih duhk Yíngmáhn yáuh His English study amounts to  
sei nih. four years.

He studied English four years.

In this type sentence the Subject is composed of an SVO phrase. There is a pause, then the Predicate, composed of yáuh TS Expression, follows.

We regard this type sentence as being derived from a V(jó) time-spent structure:

Ex: 1. Kéuih séung duhk He plans to study English  
sei nih Yíngmáhn. for four years.

2. Kéuih duhkjó sei nih He studied English for four  
Yíngmáhn. years.

In the SVO yáuh TS Expression, the time-spent expression has been separated from its verb. Its verb (duhk in the example above) becomes part of the Subject, and the TS expression (sei nih above) becomes Object in the Predicate. yáuh in this type sentence is an equating verb,

affirming that Subject 'amounts to' Object. (You will learn in later lessons that there are other sentence types in which yáuh is used as an equating verb.)

In this type sentence the verb of the SVO subject does not require (but can have) the verb suffix -jǒ, even when the action concerns one which began in the past. Talking of action which began in the past one may say:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih duhk Yíngmàhn<br>yáuh sei nihh.         | His English study--it amounted<br>to four years.   |
| 2. Kéuih duhkjǒ Yíngmàhn<br>yáuh sei nihh ge la. | He's studied English--it's been<br>four years now. |
|  | <u>or</u>  |
|  | He studied English--it was four years.             |

(See Drill 15)

10. Noun Modification: **Sp-M-N compound modified by VP**

A verbal modifier in Cantonese directly precedes a Sp+M+N phrase:

V Sp+M N

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Ex: Kéuih daap gó bāan fēigēi<br>sei dím hoi. | The plane he is taking leaves<br>at 4 o'clock. ( <u>or</u> took/left) |
| Kéuih máaih gó dī syù dōu hóu<br>gwai ga.     | The books he bought were<br>all very expensive.                       |

(See BC and Drill 16)

(The above contrasts with the situation of verbal modification in Mandarin, in which a verbal modifier is followed by the subordinating particle de ( ) before a Sp M N phrase.

V de Sp+M N

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: 1. Tā dzǒu de néi ban fēijǐ<br>sz dyǎn jǔng chǐfēi. | The plane he is taking<br>leaves at 4 o'clock.   |
| 2. Tā mǎi de nèi sye shū<br>dōu hén gwai.               | The books he bought were<br>all very expensive.) |

11. Noun modification: Verbal modifier preceding a numbered phrase.

When a verbal modifier precedes a numbered phrase, there are two possibilities: 1) the V modifier is followed by the subordinating particle ge; or 2) it is followed by Sp+the general plural M dī.

- |   |                      |                                    |
|---|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Ex: Kéuih máaih { <u>ge</u><br><u>go dī</u> } | sàam bún syù dōu hóu | The three books he                 |
|   | gwai.                | bought were all<br>very expensive. |

## III. DRILLS

## 1. Expansion Drill

- + 1. a. laahmchē.  
 b. yāt bāan laahmchē.  
 + c. Hahyāt bāan laahmchē.  
 (the next)  
 d. Hahyāt bāan laahmchē daahp géi hoi a?  
 e. Hahyāt bāan laahmchē daahp saam hoi.
1. a. cable car  
 b. one [trip] cable car  
 c. The next cable car  
 d. When does the next car leave?  
 e. The next car leaves at quarter after.
- Comment: Tape has lèuhn where text has bāan. bāan can always be substituted for lèuhn as a journey measure.
- + 2. a. bāsi.  
 b. yáuh bāsi.  
 c. yáuh bāan bāsi.  
 d. yáuh géidō bāan bāsi a?  
 e. Yāt go jūngtāuh yáuh géidō bāan bāsi a?  
 f. Yāt go jūngtāuh yauh sei bāan bāsi.
2. a. bus  
 b. there are buses  
 c. there's a [trip] bus  
 d. how many buses are there?  
 e. How many buses there are in one hour?  
 f. There are 4 buses an hour.
3. a. chē  
 b. bāan chē  
 c. yáuh bāan chē  
 d. múih léuhnggo jih yáuh bāan chē.  
 e. múih saamgo jih yáuh bāan chē.  
 f. múih seigo jih yáuh bāan chē.
3. a. bus [car]  
 b. a [trip] bus  
 c. there's a [trip] bus  
 d. There's a bus every 10 minutes.  
 e. There's a bus every 15 minutes.  
 f. There's a bus every 20 minutes.
- + 4. a. hāahng louh.  
 b. hāahng louh heui.  
 c. yiu hāahng louh heui.  
 d. dīngáai yiu hāahng louh?  
 e. Néih dīngáai yiu hāahng louh heui né?
4. a. walk [walk-road]  
 b. go on foot  
 c. have to go on foot  
 d. Why do you have to walk?  
or  
 What causes you to be walking?  
 e. How come you are walking?

Comment: The d and e sentences could be: 'Why do you (or did you) want to walk?' or 'Why is it you are (or were) walking? In the latter case yi has a new meaning:

+ yi =  
'cause, make (someone do something)': "What causes you to be walking?" The implication being that the speaker expects the addressee not to be walking.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| + 5. a. <u>fóchē</u>   | 5. a. <u>train</u>   |
| + b. <u>chóh</u> <u>fóchē</u> .  | b. <u>take</u> the train, <u>go by</u> train                     |
| c. <u>chóh</u> <u>fóchē</u> heui.  | c. go by train   |
| + d. <u>chóh</u> <u>fóchē</u> heui <u>Sàngaai</u> .  | d. go by train to the <u>New Territories</u>                     |
| e. <u>Chóh</u> <u>fóchē</u> heui <u>Sàngaai</u> <u>yi</u> <u>géi</u> <u>noih</u> a?  | e. How long does it take to get to the New Territories by train? |
| 6. a. <u>géi</u> <u>houh</u> <u>bāsi</u>   | 6. a. what number bus  |
| b. <u>daahp</u> <u>géi</u> <u>houh</u> <u>bāsi</u>   | b. catch what number bus   |
| c. <u>yi</u> <u>daahp</u> <u>géi</u> <u>houh</u> <u>bāsi</u>   | c. have to get what number bus                                   |
| + d. Heui <u>fēigēichèuhng</u> <u>yi</u> <u>daahp</u> <u>géi</u> <u>houh</u> <u>bāsi</u> a?  | d. What number bus do you catch to get to the <u>airport</u> ?   |
| + e. Heui <u>Sāandéng</u> <u>yi</u> <u>daahp</u> <u>géi</u> <u>houh</u> <u>bāsi</u> a?   | e. What number bus do you catch to get to <u>the Peak</u> ?      |
| f. Heui <u>Sàngaai</u> <u>yi</u> <u>daahp</u> <u>géi</u> <u>houh</u> <u>bāsi</u> a?  | f. What number bus do you catch to get to the New Territories?   |
| + 7. a. <u>léuihhàhng</u>  | 7. a. <u>trip</u> , <u>excursion</u>                             |
| b. heui <u>léuihhàhng</u>  | b. go on a trip, excursion                                       |
| c. heui <u>Tòihwāan</u> <u>léuihhàhng</u>  | c. go to Taiwan on a trip  |
| d. <u>gauh</u> <u>nín</u> heui <u>Tòihwāan</u> <u>léuihhàhng</u>   | d. took a trip to Taiwan last year                               |
| e. <u>Gauh</u> <u>nín</u> heui <u>Tòihwāan</u> <u>léuihhàhng</u> , <u>heuijó</u> <u>léuhng</u> <u>go</u> <u>lái</u> <u>hbaai</u> . | e. took a trip last year to Taiwan for two weeks.                |

2. Transformation Drill: Transform from múih time expression to equivalent expression using duplicated Measure.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| + 1. Kéuih múih yaht heui yāt chi.        | 1. Kéuih <u>yahtyaht</u> dōu heui yāt chi. ( <u>every day</u> )       |
| + 2. Kéuih múih go láihbaai heui yāt chi. | 2. Kéuih <u>gogo láihbaai</u> dōu heui yat chi. ( <u>every week</u> ) |
| + 3. Kéuih múih go yuht heui yāt chi.     | 3. Kéuih <u>gogo yuht</u> dōu keui yat chi. ( <u>every month</u> )    |
| + 4. Kéuih múih nihh heui yāt chi.        | 4. Kéuih <u>nihnnihh</u> dōu heui yāt chi. ( <u>every year</u> )      |

Comment: Note that in the above sentences the duplicated Measure expressions (nihnnihh, etc) are followed by dōu before the Verb: nihnnihh dōu fàanheui, etc. In the múih sentences dōu can be included, to indicate that the frequency stated is thought to be high.

### 3. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih haih m̄h haih chòh fóchē làih ga? /bāsi/  
S: M̄h haih. Ngóh chòh bāsi làih ge.

T: Did you come by train? /bus/  
S: No, I came by bus.

2. T: Néih haih m̄h haih chòh bāsi làih ga? /bāsi/  
S: Haih. Ngóh chòh bāsi làih ge.

T: Did you come by bus? /bus/  
S: Yes, I came by bus.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Néih haih m̄h haih daap syüh làih ga? /fēigēi/         | 1. M̄h haih. Ngóh daap fēigēi làih ge. |
| 2. Néih haih m̄h haih chòh fēigēi làih ga? /fēigēi/       | 2. Haih. Ngóh chòh fēigēi làih ge.     |
| 3. Néih haih m̄h haih chòh fóchē làih ga? /bāsi/          | 3. M̄h haih. Ngóh chòh bāsi làih ge.   |
| + 4. Néih haih m̄h haih chòh bāsi làih ga? /dīksi/ (taxi) | 4. M̄h haih. Ngóh chòh dīksi làih ge.  |
| 5. Néih haih m̄h haih chòh dīksi làih ga? /hàahng louh/   | 5. M̄h haih. Ngóh hàahng louh làih ge. |
| 6. Néih haih m̄h haih hàahng louh làih ga? /chòh fóchē/   | 6. M̄h haih. Ngóh chòh fóchē làih ge.  |
| 7. Néih haih m̄h haih daap fóchē làih ga? /fóchē/         | 7. Haih. Ngóh daap fóchē làih ge.      |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 8. Néih haih m̀h̄h̄aih daap f́ochē<br>l̀aih ga? /b́así/       | 8. M̀h̄h̄aih. Ngóh daap b́así l̀aih<br>ge.    |
| 9. Néih haih m̀h̄h̄aih daap b́así<br>l̀aih ga? /laahmchē/     | 9. M̀h̄h̄aih. Ngóh daap laahmchē<br>l̀aih ge. |
| 10. Néih haih m̀h̄h̄aih daap laahmchē<br>l̀aih ga? /laahmchē/ | 10. Haih. Ngóh daap laahm-<br>chē l̀aih ge.   |
- 

## 4. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih dím heui ga? T: How did you get there?  
/b́así/

S: Ngóh daap b́así heui ge. S: I went by bus.

2. T: Néih dím heui a? T: How are you going to get there?  
/h̀aahng louh/

S: Ngóh h̀aahng louh heui. S: I'm going to walk.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Néih dím heui a? /laahmchē/          | 1. Ngóh daap laahmchē heui.            |
| 2. Néih dím l̀aih ga? /f́ochē/          | 2. Ngóh daap f́ochē l̀aih ge.          |
| 3. Kéuih dím heui ga? /f́eigēi/         | 3. Kéuih daap f́eigēi heui ge.         |
| 4. Néih dím heui a? /syùhn/             | 4. Ngóh daap syùhn heui.               |
| 5. Néih dím l̀aih ga? /h̀aahng louh/    | 5. Ngóh h̀aahng louh l̀aih ge.         |
| 6. Néih dím l̀aih ga? /b́así/           | 6. Ngóh daap b́así l̀aih ge.           |
| 7. Néih dím heui a? /d́iksí/            | 7. Ngóh daap d́iksí heui.              |
| 8. Néih dím lohk heui ga?<br>/laahmchē/ | 8. Ngóh daap laahmchē lohk<br>heui ge. |
| 9. Néih dím heui a? /jà chē/            | 9. Ngóh jà chē heui.                   |
- 

## 5. Substitution Drill

1. Hahyāt b́aan chē daahp géi  
hòì a?  
When will the next bus  
leave?

1. Hahyāt b́aan chē daahp géi  
hòì a?

2. /b́aan f́eigēi/géisih/

2. Hahyāt b́aan f́eigēi géisih  
hòì a?

3. /b́aan laahmchē/daahp géi/

3. Hahyāt b́aan laahmchē daahp  
géi hòì a?

4. /bāan fóchē/géisih/

4. Hahyāt bāan fóchē géisih hòi a?

5. /bāan syùhn/daahpgéi/

5. Hahyāt bāan syùhn daahp géi hòi a?

6. Transformation Drill: Change the sentences from ziu to mhsái.Ex: T: Hàahng louh heui  
Jüngwáahn Gàaisih  
ziu sàam go jih.T: It takes [requires] 15 minutes  
to walk to Central Market.S: Hàahng louh heui  
Jüngwáahn Gàaisih  
mhsái sàam go jih.S: It takes less than [doesn't  
require] 15 minutes to walk  
to Central Market.

- + 1. Daap bāsi heui ziu yāt dím-jüng. (one hour)
2. Chóh syùhn heui ziu seíng yaht.
3. Chóh fēigèi heui Yahtbún ziu chātbaat dímjüng.
4. Daap laahmchē séuhng heui ziu nghluhk go jih.
5. Chóh díksi heui tòuhsyügwún ziu léuhngsàam go jih.
6. Hàahng louh heui ziu léuhng díng géi jüng.

1. Daap bāsi heui mhsái yāt dímjüng.
2. Chóh syùhn heui mhsái seíng yaht.
3. Chóh fēigèi heui Yahtbún mhsái chātbaat dímjüng.
4. Daap laahmchē séuhng heui mhsái nghluhk go jih.
5. Chóh díksi heui tòuhsyügwún mhsái léuhngsàam go jih.
6. Hàahng louh heui mhsái léuhng díng géi jüng.

## 7. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Gó dí ngàuhyuhk  
mhhóusihk. Ngóh  
mhsihk.T: That beef doesn't taste good.  
I'm not going to eat it.S: Yànwaih gó dí ngàuh-  
yuhk mhhóusihk,  
sóyih ngóh mhsihk.S: I'm not going to eat that beef,  
because it doesn't taste  
good.

1. Gó dí jyùyuhk mhhóusihk.  
Ngóh móuh sihk.
2. Kàhmyaht láihbaai. Ngóhdeih  
mhsái fàangüng.
3. Gó deui hàaih mhhótái.  
Ngóh mhjeuk.

1. Yànwaih gó dí jyùyuhk mhhóu-  
sihk, sóyih ngóh móuh sihk.
2. Yànwaih kàhmyaht láihbaai,  
sóyih mhsái fàangüng.
3. Yànwaih gó deui hàaih mhhóu-  
tái, sóyih ngóh mhjeuk.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. Ní gihn yúhlāu daaihđí.<br>ngóh m̄hséung máaih.           | 4. Yánwaih ní gihn yúhlāu<br>daaihđí, sóyih ngóh m̄hséung<br>máaih.             |
| 5. Gám̄yaht m̄hsái fàangùng.<br>Ngóh heui chàhlāuh yám chàh. | 5. Yánwaih gám̄yaht m̄hsái fàan-<br>gùng, sóyih ngóh heui<br>chàhlāuh yám chàh. |

## 8. Transformation Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: Múih yaht yáuh géi<br>(dō) baan fēigēi<br>a? /3/     | T: How many flights are there<br>each day?   |
| S: Múih yaht yáuh sām<br>baan.                              | S: There are three flights every<br>day.     |
| 1. Múih yaht dukh géi(dō) go<br>jūngtāuh syü a? /4/         | 1. Múih yaht dukh séi go<br>jūngtāuh.        |
| 2. Múih yaht yáuh géi(dō) lèuhn<br>fóchē a? /9/             | 2. Múih yaht yáuh gáu lèuhn.                 |
| 3. Múih go láihbaai hohk géi<br>dīm̄jūng Gwóngdùngwá a? /2/ | 3. Múih go láihbaai hohk léuhng<br>dīm̄jūng. |
| 4. Múih yaht hohk géi(dō) go<br>jūngtāuh yingmāhn a? /1/    | 4. Múih yaht hohk yāt go<br>jūngtāuh.        |
| 5. Múih go jūngtāuh yáuh géi(dō)<br>baan syühñ a? /9/       | 5. Múih go jūngtāuh yáuh gáu<br>baan.        |
| 6. Múih yaht yáuh géi(dō) baan<br>fēigēi a? /3/             | 6. Múih yaht yáuh sām baan.                  |

## 9. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: Chóh bāsí yiu géi<br>noih a? /Jūngwàahn/                       | T: How long does it take to go by<br>bus? /Central District/             |
| S: Chóh bāsí heui Jūng-<br>wàahn yiu géi noih<br>a?                   | S: How long will it take to go to<br>Central District by bus?            |
| 1. Hàahng louh yiu géi noih a?<br>/Hèunggóng Daaihohk<br>tòuhsyügwún/ | 1. Hàahng louh heui Hèunggóng<br>Daaihohk tòuhsyügwún<br>yiu géi noih a? |
| 2. Daap fēigēi yiu géi noih a?<br>/Yahtbun/                           | 2. Daap fēigēi heui Yahtbún<br>yiu géi noih a?                           |
| 3. Chóh dīksí yiu géi noih a?<br>/Daaih Douh Jūng/                    | 3. Chóh dīksí heui Daaih Douh<br>Jūng yiu géi noih a?                    |



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. Daap bāsi yiu géi noih a?<br>/Wihng Ūn Gūngsī/     | 4. Daap bāsi heui Wihng Ūn Gūng-<br>sī yiu géi noih a? |
| 5. Daap syùhn yiu géi noih a?<br>/Tòihwāan/           | 5. Daap syùhn heui Tòihwāan yiu<br>géi noih a?         |
| 6. Chóh laahmchē yiu géi noih a?<br>/séuhng Sāandéng/ | 6. Chóh laahmchē séuhng Sāan-<br>déng yiu géi noih a?  |
| 7. Daap fóchē yiu géi noih a?<br>/Sàngaai/            | 7. Daap fóchē heui Sàngaai yiu<br>géi noih a?          |
| 8. Chóh fóchē yiu géi noih a?<br>/Gwóngjāu/           | 8. Chóh fóchē heui Gwóngjāu<br>yiu géi noih a?         |

10. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Yàuh Jùngwàahn Gàaisih hàahng-<br>louh heui Tīnsing Mǎntàuh<br>yiu géi noih a? | 1. Yàuh Jùngwàahn Gàaisih<br>hàahnglouh heui Tīnsing<br>Mǎntàuh yiu géi noih a?         |
| 2. /Jùngwàahn Gàaisih/Mǎnwàh<br>Jáudim/   | 2. Yàuh Jùngwàahn Gàaisih<br>hàahng louh heui Mǎnwàh<br>Jáudim yiu géi noih a?          |
| 3. /Mǎnwàh Jáudim/Méihgwok<br>Jáudim/   | 3. Yàuh Mǎnwàh Jáudim hàahng<br>louh heui Méihgwok Jáudim<br>yiu géi noih a?            |
| 4. /Méihgwok Jáudim/Wihng Ūn<br>Gūngsī/   | 4. Yàuh Méihgwok Jáudim hàahng<br>louh heui Wihng Ūn Gūngsī<br>yiu géi noih a?          |
| 5. /daap dīksī/   | 5. Yàuh Méihgwok Jáudim daap<br>dīksī heui Wihng Ūn Gūngsī<br>yiu géi noih a?           |
| 6. /WihngŪn Gūngsī/(Hèung)góng<br>Daaih(hohk)/                                    | 6. Yàuh WihngŪn Gūngsī daap<br>dīksī heui (Hèung)góng<br>Daaih(hohk) yiu géi noih<br>a? |
| 7. /Hèunggóng Daaihhohk/séuhng<br>Sāandéng/                                       | 7. Yàuh Hèunggóng Daaihhohk<br>daap dīksī séuhng Sāandéng<br>yiu géi noih a?            |
| 8. /Sāandéng/lohk Jùngwàahn/  | 8. Yàuh Sāandéng daap dīksī<br>lohk Jùngwàahn yiu géi<br>noih a?                        |

Comment: Góng Daaih is an abbreviation for Hong Kong University.

11. Expansion Drill: Add gēi in the appropriate place.

- Ex: 1. T: Daap fēigēi yiu saam go jūngtāuh. T: It takes three hours to go by plane.  
 S: Daap fēigēi yiu saam go gēi jūngtāuh. S: It takes more than three hours (but less than 4) to go by plane.
2. T: Chóh syùhn yiu ngh yaht. T: It takes five days to go by boat.  
 S: Chóh syùhn yiu ngh yaht gēi. S: It takes a little over five days (but less than 6) to go by boat.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Jauh nī gihn sih yiu yāt nihh.<br>This job will take a year to do. | 1. Jauh nī gihn sih yiu (yāt) nihh gēi.           |
| 2. Chóh syùhn yiu yāt go yuht.  | 2. Chóh syùhn yiu go gēi yuht.                    |
| 3. Daap fóchē yiu séi go jih.   | 3. Daap fóchē yiu séi go gēi jih.                 |
| 4. Heui laahmchē jaahm yiu yāt go jūngtāuh.                           | 4. Heui laahmchē jaahm yiu (yāt) go gēi jūngtāuh. |
| 5. Fàan ūkkéi yiu sahp fānjūng.                                       | 5. Fàan ūkkéi yiu sahp gēi fānjūng.               |
| 6. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá yiu léuhng nihh.                                  | 6. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá yiu léuhng nihh gēi.          |
| 7. Daap syùhn heui Tòihwāan yiu saam yaht.                            | 7. Daap syùhn heui Tòihwāan yiu saam yaht gēi.    |
| 8. Heui fēigēichèuhng yiu léuhng dím jūng.                            | 8. Heui fēigēichèuhng yiu léuhng dím gēi jūng.    |

Repeat, thus:

- T: Daap fēigēi yiu saam go jūngtāuh.  
 S: Daap fēigēi yiu saam go jūngtāuh dóu lā.

## 12. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Néih heidou góján, kéuih-deih sihkjó faahn meih a?  
/nod/
- T: When you got there, had they eaten yet?
- S: Ngóh heidou góján, kéuihdeih yíhging sihkjó faahn laak.
- S: When I got there, they had already eaten their meal.

2. T: Néih heidou gó-ján, kéuihdeih síhkjó faahn meih a? /shake/

T: When you got there, had they eaten yet?

S: Ngóh heidou gó-ján, kéuihdeih juhng meih síhk faahn.

S: When I got there, they still hadn't eaten yet.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih heidou góján, néih síhkjó jóuchaan meih a? /shake/ | 1. Kéuih heidou góján, ngóh juhng meih síhk jóuchaan.  |
| 2. Kéuih heidou góján, néih táijó yísang meih a? /nod/      | 2. Kéuih heidou góján, ngóh yíhging táijó yísang laak. |
| 3. Néih làihdou góján, kéuih fàanjóheui meih a? /shake/     | 3. Ngóh làihdou góján, kéuih juhng meih fàanheui.      |
| 4. Néih heidou góján, kéuih jáujó meih a? /nod/             | 4. Ngóh heidou góján, kéuih yíhging jáujó laak.        |
| 5. Kéuih làihdou góján, néih yámjó chàh meih a? /shake/     | 5. Kéuih làihdou góján, ngóh juhng meih yam chàh.      |
| 6. Néih heidou góján, ga fóchē hòijó meih a? /nod/          | 6. Ngóh heidou góján, ga fóchē yíhging hòijó laak.     |
| 7. Néih heidou góján, jek syùhn hòijó meih a? /shake/       | 7. Ngóh heidou góján, jek syùhn juhng meih hoi.        |
| 8. Néih heidou góján, kéuih búnjó ùk meih a? /shake/        | 8. Ngóh heidou góján, kéuih juhng meih bún ùk.         |
| 9. Néih heidou góján, kéuih fàanjó ùkkéi meih a? /nod/      | 9. Ngóh heidou góján, kéuih yíhging fàanjó ùkkéi laak. |
| 10. Kéuih heidou góján, néih dukjó syù meih a? /shake/      | 10. Kéuih heidou góján, ngóh juhng meih duk.           |

### 13. Alteration Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih múih yaht dōu lohk Jǔngwáahn.

T: He goes to the Central District everyday.

S: Kéuih yahtyaht dōu lohk Jǔngwáahn.

S: He goes to the Central District everyday.

2. T: Kéuih múih go làihbaai dōu hái ùkkéi dá páai.

T: She plays mahjong at home every week.

S: Kéuih gogo láih- S: She plays mahjong at home  
baai dōu hái every week.  
ūkkéi dá páai.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih múih go láihbaai dōu heui dá bō.           | 1. Kéuih gogo láihbaai dōu heui dá bō.           |
| 2. Kéuih múih go yuht dōu fàan-heui Oumún.          | 2. Kéuih gogo yuht dōu fàan-heui Oumún.          |
| 3. Kéuih múih nih̄n dōu fàanheui Méihgwok.          | 3. Kéuih nih̄nnih̄n dōu fàan-heui Méihgwok.      |
| 4. Kéuih múih yaht dōu sihk Sāichāan.               | 4. Kéuih yahtyaht dōu sihk Sāichāan.             |
| 5. Kéuih múih go láihbaaiyaht dōu chéng sihk faahn. | 5. Kéuih gogo láihbaaiyaht dōu chéng sihk faahn. |
| 6. Kéuih múih go yuht yāt houh dōu heui ló chin̄.   | 6. Kéuih gogo yuht yāt houh dōu heui ló chin̄.   |
| 7. Kéuih múih nih̄n sei yuht dōu fàan Gwóngjāu.     | 7. Kéuih nih̄nnih̄n sei yuht dōu fàan Gwóngjāu.  |

#### 14. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih múih nih̄n heui T: He goes to Taipei twice each  
Tòihbāk léuhng chi. year. /week/  
/láihbaai/

S: Kéuih múih go láih- S: He goes to Taipei twice a  
baai heui Tòihbāk week.  
léuhng chi.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih múih yaht gwo hói sei chi. /láihbaai/             | 1. Kéuih múih go láihbaai gwo hói sei chi.             |
| 2. Kéuih múih go láihbaai làih ngóh ūkkéi yāt chi. /yuht/  | 2. Kéuih múih go yuht làih ngóh ūkkéi yāt chi.         |
| 3. Kéuih múih go yuht fàan Gwóng-jāu léuhng chi. /nih̄n/   | 3. Kéuih múih nih̄n fàan Gwóng-jāu léuhng chi.         |
| 4. Kéuih múih nih̄n fàanheui hohk-haauh sei chi. /yaht/    | 4. Kéuih múih yaht fàanheui hohkhaauh sei chi.         |
| 5. Kéuih múih yaht loh̄k Jùngwàahn sàamsei chi. /láihbaai/ | 5. Kéuih múih go láihbaai loh̄k Jùngwàahn sàamsei chi. |
| 6. Kéuih múih go láihbaai heui Sàngaai gei chi. /yuht/     | 6. Kéuih múih go yuht heui Sàngaai gei chi.            |

## 15. Alteration Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih làihjǎo Hèunggóng yáuh géi noih a? T: How long have you been in Hong Kong?

S: Néih làihjǎo Hèunggóng géi noih a? S: How long have you been in Hong Kong?

2. T: Kéuih gaaujǎo Gwokýuh yáuh sàam nihh laak. T: He has taught Mandarin for three years.

S: Kéuih gaaujǎo sàam nihh Gwokýuh laak. S: He has taught Mandarin for three years.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih heuijǎo Méihgwok yáuh géi noih a?   | 1. Kéuih heuijǎo Méihgwok géi noih a?                             |
| 2. Ngóh bǎnjǎo ūk yáuh bun nihh laak.<br>I moved half a year ago.                              | 2. Ngóh bǎnjǎo ūk bun nihh laak.                                  |
| 3. Kéuih gwojǎo hói yáuh géi go jǎngtáuh laak.   | 3. Kéuih gwojǎo hói géi go jǎngtáuh laak.                         |
| 4. Ngóh nàahmpáhngyáuh fàanjǎoheui Tòihbāk yáuh yāt go láihbaai laak.                          | 4. Ngóh nàahmpáhngyáuh fàanjǎo heui Tòihbāk yāt go láihbaai laak. |
| 5. Kéuih bātjǎo yihp yáuh léuhng nihh laak.  | 5. Kéuih bātjǎo yihp léuhng nihh laak.                            |
| 6. Néih gitjǎo fàn yáuh géi noih a?  | 6. Néih gitjǎo fàn géi noih a?                                    |
| 7. Kéuih sihkjǎo faahn yáuh yih-sahp fānjǎng laak.<br>He finished his meal twenty minutes ago. | 7. Kéuih sihkjǎo faahn yih-sahp fānjǎng laak.                     |
| 8. Ga fóchē hòijǎo yáuh géi noih a?  | 8. Ga fóchē hòijǎo géi noih a?                                    |

## 16. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Jèung Sàang daap fēigēi. T: Mr. Cheung is going to catch that flight.  
Gó bāan fēigēi géi dímjǎng hói a? When does that flight take off?

S: Jèung Sàang daap gó bāan fēigēi géi dímjǎng hói a? S: When does the flight Mr. Cheung is taking take off? or When does the flight take off that Mr. Cheung is taking?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Léih Táai chòh bāsi.<br>Gó bāan bāsi heui bīndouh a?                 | 1. Léih Táai chòh gó bāan bāsi<br>heui bīndouh a?   |
| 2. Ngóhdeih chòh fóchē.<br>Gó bāan fóchē láihbaaisei dou.               | 2. Ngóhdeih chòh gó bāan fóchē<br>láihbaaisei dou.  |
| 3. Wòhng Sàang daap syùhn.<br>Gó bāan syùhn daahp géi hòi a?            | 3. Wòhng Sàang daap gó bāan<br>syùhn daahp géi hòi a?   |
| 4. Kéuihdeih daap laahmchē.<br>Gó bāan laahmchē yāt go<br>jih hauh hòi. | 4. Kéuihdeih daap gó bāan laahm-<br>chē yāt go jih hauh hòi.  |
| 5. Kéuih máaih sēutsāam.<br>Gó gihn sēutsāam m̀hngāamjeuk.              | 5. Kéuih máaih gó gihn sēutsāam<br>m̀hngāamjeuk.  |
| 6. Hòh Sīujé duhk gó bún syù.<br>Gó bún syù maaih sah p m̀an.           | 6. Hòh Sīujé duhk gó bún syù<br>maaih sah p m̀an.<br>The book Miss Ho is reading<br>sells for \$10. |

Comment: Tape has lèuhn in sentences 1, 2, and 3, where text has bāan. In sentence 4, tape has douh where text has bāan. bāan can always be substituted for douh as a journey measure.

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih yāt go jùngt̀auh (ji)-<br>hauh f̀aanl̀aih.<br>[He, after an hour, return.]<br>He'll be back in an hour. | 1. Kéuih yāt go jùngt̀auh (ji)-<br>hauh f̀aanl̀aih.      |
| 2. /go géi jùngt̀auh/  | 2. Kéuih go géi jùngt̀auh (ji)-<br>hauh f̀aanl̀aih.      |
| 3. /léuhng go jùngt̀auh/   | 3. Kéuih léuhng go jùngt̀auh<br>(ji)hauh f̀aanl̀aih.     |
| 4. /léuhng go géi jùngt̀auh/   | 4. Kéuih léuhng go géi jùngt̀auh<br>(ji)hauh f̀aanl̀aih. |
| 5. /s̀aamsei go jùngt̀auh/   | 5. Kéuih s̀aamsei go jùngt̀auh<br>(ji)hauh f̀aanl̀aih.   |
| 6. /go géi láihbaai/   | 6. Kéuih go géi láihbaai (ji)-<br>hauh f̀aanl̀aih.       |
| 7. /yāt nìhn/  | 7. Kéuih yāt nìhn (ji)hauh<br>f̀aanl̀aih.                |
| 8. /nìhn géi/  | 8. Kéuih nìhn géi (ji)hauh<br>f̀aanl̀aih.                |
| 9. /léuhng nìhn géi/   | 9. Kéuih léuhng nìhn géi (ji)-<br>hauh f̀aanl̀aih.       |

10. /yāt nihŋ dóu/

10. Kéuih yāt nihŋ dóu (jǐ)hauh fàanlâih.

11. /yāt go yuht dóu/

11. Kéuih yāt go yuht dóu (jǐ)-hauh fàanlâih.

18. Double Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Kéuih heuijǒ Méihgwok--  
waahkjé sàam go yuht (jǐ)-  
hauh fàanlâih.

He's gone to America--and  
will probably be back in  
three months.

1. Kéuih heuijǒ Méihgwok--  
waahkjé sàam go yuht  
(jǐ)hauh fàanlâih.

2. /yám chàh/bun go jūngtâuh/

2. Kéuih heuijǒ yám chàh,  
waahkjé bun go jūngtâuh  
(jǐ)hauh fàanlâih.

3. /Yínggwok/léuhnggo géi yuht/

3. Kéuih heuijǒ Yínggwok,  
waahkjé léuhnggo géi yuht  
(jǐ)hauh fàanlâih.

4. /dá bō/yāt go géi jūngtâuh/

4. Kéuih heuijǒ dá bō, waahkjé  
yāt go géi jūngtâuh (jǐ)-  
hauh fàanlâih.

5. /Gwóngjâu/géi yaht/

5. Kéuih heuijǒ Gwóngjâu,  
waahkjé géi yaht (jǐ)hauh  
fàanlâih.

6. /yàuhséui/sàamsei go jūngtâuh/

6. Kéuih heuijǒ yàuhséui,  
waahkjé sàamsei go jūng-  
tâuh (jǐ)hauh fàanlâih.

7. /Jūngwàahn/géi go jih/

7. Kéuih heuijǒ Jūngwàahn,  
waahkjé géi go jih (jǐ)-  
hauh fàanlâih.

Comment: The structure Time Expression (jǐ) hauh 'after X time' as in sàam yaht hauh fàanlâih 'return after 3 days' represents a Time When expression which precedes the Verb it is connected to.

19. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from negatives to dínggái questions.

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih káhmyaht móuh tühng taai-tái heui yàuh-séui. T: He didn't go swimming with his wife yesterday.

S: Kéuih káhmyaht dínggái móuh tühng taaitái heui yàuhséui a? S: Why didn't he go swimming with his wife yesterday?

2. T: Kéuih káhmyaht mhtühng taaitái heui yàuhséui. T: He wouldn't go swimming with his wife yesterday.

S: Kéuih káhmyaht dínggái mhtühng taaitái heui yàuhséui a? S: Why wouldn't he go swimming with his wife yesterday?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih mhtái dihnsih.                      | 1. Kéuih dínggái mhtái dihnsih a?                     |
| 2. Kéuih mhje chin béi kéuih sailóu.         | 2. Kéuih dínggái mhje chin béi kéuih sailóu a?        |
| 3. Kéuih gājē mhtühng nàahnpàhng-yáuh dá bō. | 3. Kéuih gājē dínggái mhtühng nàahnpàhngyáuh dá bō a? |
| 4. Kéuih mhdaai go jái heui tái yīsāng.      | 4. Kéuih dínggái mhdaai go jái heui tái yīsāng a?     |
| 5. Kéuih mhgaau kéuih sé Jüngmahn.           | 5. Kéuih dínggái mhgaau kéuih sé Jüngmahn a?          |
| 6. Kéuih móuh dá dihnwá béi ngóh.            | 6. Kéuih dínggái móuh dá dihnwá béi ngóh a?           |
| 7. Kéuih móuh wah néih jí.                   | 7. Kéuih dínggái móuh wah néih jí a?                  |
| 8. Kéuih móuh máaih gāsi.                    | 8. Kéuih dínggái móuh máaih gāsi a?                   |
| 9. Kéuih mhchéng gūngyahn.                   | 9. Kéuih dínggái mhchéng gūngyahn a?                  |
| 10. Kéuih móuh wuhn sām.                     | 10. Kéuih dínggái móuh wuhn sām a?                    |

Comment: The mhV sentences depend on context to clarify whether the meaning is 'is not going to V' or 'wouldn't (i.e., refused to) V.'



## 20. Expansion Drill

- Ex: A: Kéuih yíhchíhn múih níhn dōu heui léuhng chi ga. A: Formerly he went twice every year.
- B: Kéuih yíhchíhn múih níhn dōu heui léuhng chi ga, bāt̄gwo gāmnín kéuih yāt chi dōu meih heuigwo. B: Formerly he went twice every year, but this year he hasn't gone even once.
1. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih yaht dōu làih sàam chi ga. 1. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih yaht dōu làih sàam chi ga, bāt̄gwo gāmyaht kéuih yāt chi dōu meih làihgwo.
  2. Ngóh yíhchíhn múih go yuht dōu heui sei chi ga. 2. Ngóh yíhchíhn múih go yuht dōu heui sei chi ga, bāt̄gwo ní go yuht ngóh yāt chi dōu meih heuigwo.
  3. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih go láihbaai dōu làih chāt chi ga. 3. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih go láihbaai dōu làih chāt chi ga, bāt̄gwo ní go láihbaai kéuih yāt chi dōu meih làihgwo.
  4. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih níhn dōu heui ngh chi ga. 4. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih níhn dōu heui ngh chi ga, bāt̄gwo gāmnín kéuih yāt chi dōu meih heuigwo.

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) louh = road
- 2) gwo = pass by
- 3) sung gēi = see (someone) off on a plane
- 4) Hóu wah = 'You're welcome'
- 5) Sātíhn = Shatin, a village in the New Territories of Hong Kong
- 6) fàandouheui = arrive back
- 7) hóu wáan ge deihfōng = fun places, amusing places
- 8) Nàh = used to attract attention. cf. English 'Listen',...

- 9) fūnggīng = scenery  
 10) louh = road  
     a) sīk louh = know the road; know your way around  
 11) Māt m̄hsīk a? = What do you mean, not know?  
 12) piu = ticket

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. How many hours a day do you study Cantonese?
2. How many planes to the U.S. are there a day?
3. How long does it take to walk to the Star Ferry?
4. It takes about 15 minutes to cross the harbor by ferry (ship).
5. It takes more than two hours by car.
6. How long have you studied English?
7. How long has Mr. Chang been in Japan?
8. When will Mr. Lau be back?
9. How long does it take by ship from Hong Kong to Japan?
10. How come you didn't go with your wife and children on vacation in Taiwan? (go to Taiwan on excursion)
11. It's so slow to go by ship-- Why are you going by ship? (speaker expected them to take a plane)
12. It's very nice to go by ship, why do you want to fly?

B. And he replies:

1. Every day I study five or six hours.
2. There are four or five a day.
3. It takes about 20 minutes to walk. If you take a cab it's just five minutes.
4. Not so! It doesn't require 15 minutes to get across-- it takes only 10 minutes.
5. It's faster by train--it takes just an hour and a half.
6. More than two years.
7. Over a week.
8. He'll be back in an hour. Please call back later.
9. It takes a little over five days by ship.
10. I've been very busy recently and so I couldn't go.
11. We're going by ship because I'm afraid of taking planes.
12. We have to reach Washington on the 15th, so we don't have time to go by ship.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 13. What time does the bus leave?                                   | 13. At quarter after.                            |
| 14. What time does the next train to the New Territories leave?     | 14. At 10:35.                                    |
| 15. Would you prefer to take the bus to the Peak, or the cable car? | 15. Either one--But I think maybe the cable car. |
| 16. What time does Miss Chang's plane leave?                        | 16. I don't know, you'll have to ask her.        |

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 20

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. bāan                | n: flight, trip; voyage Measure  |
| 2. bēsi                | n: bus   |
| 3. choh <u>vehicle</u> | CoV: travel by <u>vehicle</u> , go by <u>vehicle</u>                         |
| 4. choh fochē          | CoV+O: go by train, take the train   |
| 5. daap <u>vehicle</u> | CoV/v: travel by <u>vehicle</u> ; take <u>vehicle</u> ; catch <u>vehicle</u> |
| 6. -dāk                | Vsuf: verb suf. 'can,' 'able to,' indicating physical ability                |
| 7. dīksí               | n: taxi  |
| 8. dīngáai?            | QW: why?   |
| 9. dimjūng             | m: hour (length of time)   |
| 10. fēigēi             | n: airplane  |
| 11. fēigēi chēuhng     | n: airport   |
| 12. fochē              | n: train   |
| 13. gàyahn             | n: family members  |
| 14. gogo láihbaai      | Ph: every week   |
| 15. gogo yuht          | Ph: every month  |
| 16. nihnnih            | Ph: every year   |
| 17. gónàhchit          | Ph: can't make it in time; [hurry-not-make it]                               |
| 18. hàahng louh        | CoV+O: go on foot  |
| 19. hahyēt <u>M</u>    | Ph: the next <u>M</u>  |
| 20. hah yāt bāan ohē   | Ph: the next trip of the vehicle   |
| 21. hòi                | v: start off, set out, (for vehicles)  |
| 22. laahmchē           | n: cable car, Peak Tram  |
| 23. léuihhāhng         | VO: excursion  |

24. múih Sp: every, each
25. pa v: frightened of, be afraid of
26. sàamsei nu: three or four - an approximate number
27. Sàandéng Pw: the Peak
28. sahpgéi nu: a few more than 10
29. Sàngaai Pw: the New Territories
30. sóyih Cj: therefore
31. syùhn n: ship, ferry
32. tùhng person yáitcháih Y Ph: Y together with person
33. yahtyaht Ph: every day
34. yànwaih Cj: because
35. yànwaih..., sóyih... PCj: because..., therefore...; since..., so...
36. yihché Cj: furthermore
37. yiu CoV: cause, make (someone do something)
38. yiu length of time v: takes length of time
39. yùhnlòih MA/n : basically; basis, origin
40. Yùhnlòih haih gám ge. Ph: Oh, so that's why. So that's the reason!
-

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(It's February in Hong Kong, and a native of Hong Kong is talking about the weather with a native of Taiwan:)

Bundeihyahn

dung  
Gàmyaht hóu dung bo!

cold  
Gosh it's cold today!

Tòihwāanyahn

dunggwo kàhmyaht  
dunggwo kàhmyaht hóu dò  
Haih a. Gàmyaht dunggwo kàhmyaht  
hóudò.

colder than yesterday  
much colder than yesterday  
Sure is. Today is a lot colder  
than yesterday.

Bundeihyahn

ji-  
  
ji dung  
síhsih  
síhsih dōu  
Yihyuht síhsih dōu haih ji dung  
ge lā.

superlative degree; -est,  
most  
coldest  
always  
always, every time  
February is always the coldest  
(month).

Tòihwāanyahn

yihttīn  
láahngtīn  
yihttīn hóu, yikwaahk  
láahngtīn hóu a?  
  
gokdāk  
Gám, néih gokdāk yihttīn hóu,  
yikwaahk láahngtīn hóu a?

hot weather; summer  
cold weather; winter  
is summer good, or winter  
good? (i.e., which is  
better?)  
feel, consider  
Do you think summer is better,  
or winter is better?

Bundeihyahn

béigaau  
  
béigaau hóudī  
Ngóh wah yihttīn béigaau  
hóudī laak.

comparatively, in  
comparison  
in comparison better  
I think summer is a bit better.

Yànwaih ngóh ji pa dung ge.

tùhng X yátyeuhng ge  
tínhei

Tòihwāan ge tínhei haih àhnhai  
tùhng nídouh yátyeuhng ga?

Tòihwāanyàhn

juhng Adj-dí  
juhng dungdí

Tòihwāan ge láahngtín juhng  
dungdí tím.

Búndeihiyáhn

dím a? or dímyéung?

Gám, yihttín dí a?

Tòihwāanyàhn

tùhng nídouh chàmhō

sāp

móuh gam sāp

móuh nídouh gam sāp

Tùhng nídouh chàmhō, daahnhaih

móuh nídouh gam sāp.

Búndeihiyáhn

béi

1 béi 2 hóu

Hèunggóng tínhei béi

Tòihwāan hóu

Gám, ngóh wah Hèunggóng tínhei

béi Tòihwāan hóu--

Yànwaih ngóh àhpa sāp, ji pa  
dung.

Because what I hate most is  
cold weather. [...I am a  
fear-cold-the-most-one]  
the same as X  
weather

Is the weather in Taiwan the  
same as here?

even more Adj, even Adj-er  
even colder

Taiwan's winter is even colder.

how is it?

What's the summer like?

about like this [with this  
approximately the same]

damp

not so damp

not as damp as here

About the same as here, but not  
so damp as here.

in comparison

1, in comparison with 2,  
is better. (or) 1 is  
better than 2.

Hong Kong's weather is  
better than Taiwan's

In that case, I say Hong Kong's  
weather is better than  
Taiwan's--

Because I don't mind the damp,  
but I can't stand the cold.

Tòihwāanyàhn

ngóh jauh wah ...

I then say ..., I in response  
say ...Ngóh jauh wah Tòihwāan tinhei  
bèi Hèunggóng hóu laak.Well I say Taiwan's weather is  
better than Hong Kong's.Yànwaih ngóh m̀hpa dung ji pa  
sāp!Because I'm not bothered by cold  
but I can't stand damp  
(weather)!B. Recapitulation:(It's February in Hong Kong and a  
native of Hong Kong is talking about  
the weather with a native of Taiwan:)Búndehyàhn

Gámyaht hóu dung bo.

Gosh it's cold today.

BòihwāanyàhnHaih a. Gámyaht dunggwo kàhmyaht  
hóudò.Sure is. Today is a lot colder  
than yesterday.BúndehyàhnYihyuht síhsih dōu haih ji dung  
ge lā.February is always the coldest  
month.TòihwāanyàhnGám, néih gokdāk yihttín hóu,  
yikwaahk láahngtín hóu a?Do you think summer is better,  
or winter is better?BúndehyàhnNgóh wah yihttín béigaaú hóudí  
laak.

I think summer is a bit nicer.

Yànwaih ngóh ji pa dung ge.

Because what I hate most is  
cold weather.Tòihwāan ge tinhei haih m̀hhaih  
túhng nídouh yātyeuhng ga?Is the weather in Taiwan the  
same as here?TòihwāanyàhnTòihwāan ge láahngtín juhng  
dungdí tím.

Taiwan's winter is even colder.

Búndeihyáhn

Gám, yíhttín dím a?

What's the summer like?

TòihwāayāhnTúhng nídoh chàhdō, daahnhaih  
móuh nídoh gam sāp.About the same as here, but not  
so damp as here.BúndeihyáhnGám, ngóh wah Hèunggóng tinhei  
bái Tòihwāan hóu--Yánwaih ngóh  
m̀hpa sāp, ji pa dung.In that case, I say Hong Kong's  
weather is better than  
Taiwan's--Because I don't mind  
the damp, but I can't stand  
the cold.TòihwāanyāhnNgóh jauh wah Tòihwāan tinhei  
bái Hèunggóng hóu laak.  
Yánwaih ngóh m̀hpa dung ji pa  
sāp!Well I say Taiwan's weather is  
better than Hong Kong's.  
Because I'm not bothered by cold  
but I can't stand the damp!

## II. NOTES

## A. Culture Notes.

-seui, '-years old' (for people). The Chinese count a child as being one year old at birth. At every Chinese New Year (lunar new year) thereafter, one more year is added, rather than adding a year on the anniversary of the date of birth. Since the system of counting age differs in English and Chinese, '-years old' is only an approximate rendering of the term -seui. A Chinese who is 17-seui may be 16, or he may be 15, by Western reckoning.

(See Drill 5)



## B. Structure Notes.

1. Comparison forms in Cantonese.a. Similarity of two substantives is expressed as:

- |                                 |                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) A tühng B chámhdō (gam Adj.) | A is about like B.       |
| A tühng B yátyeuhng (gam Adj.)  | A is like B.             |
|                                 | A is about as Adj. as B. |
|                                 | A is as Adj. as B.       |
- 
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: 1. Gám yaht tühng kám yaht yátyeuhng.            | Today is the same as yesterday.                          |
| 2. Gám yaht tühng kám yaht chámhdō.                  | Today and yesterday are about the same.                  |
| 3. Gám yaht tühng kám yaht yátyeuhnt gam yíht.       | Today and yesterday are equally hot.                     |
| 4. Yáuh séui tühng dá bō chámhdō gam yáuh cheuimeih. | Swimming and playing ball are about equally interesting. |

(See BC and Drill 9)

- 2) Sp.-Nu.-M (-N) yátyeuhng gam Adj. These 2 Ms are equally Adj.

Ex: Ní léuhng gíhn (yúhláu)      These two (raincoats) are  
yátyeuhng gam gwai.      equally expensive.

(See Drill 9)

- 3) (A,B) léuhng-M dōu chámhdō/yátyeuhng (gam Adj). A and B, these two things are the same (are equally Adj.).

Ex: Gám yaht kám yaht, léuhng yaht dōu chámhdō gam yíht.      Today and yesterday--the two are both about equally hot.

b. Dissimilarity of two substantives.

- 1) When two substantives (AB) are stated:

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| a) <u>A</u> Adj-gwo <u>B</u> .      | <u>A</u> is more <u>Adj.</u> than <u>B</u> .           |
| Ex: 1. Kéuih gòugwo ngóh.           | He is taller than I.                                   |
| 2. Dá bō yáuh cheuimeihgwo dá páai. | Playing ball is more interesting than playing mahjong. |

(See BC and Drill 4)

- b)
- A
- béi
- B
- Adj. =
- A
- , in comparison to
- B
- , is more
- Adj.

Ex: Hèunggong béi Tòihwān sǎp.      Hongkong is damper than Taiwan.

(See BC)

o) A móuh B gam Adj. = A is not as Adj. as B.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih móuh ngóh gam gòu. He's not as tall as I.  
 2. Daap syùhn móuh daap fēigāi gam faai. Taking a ship isn't as fast as taking a plane.

(See BC and Drills 7, 11)

d) Dissimilarity by X amount is expressed:

1) A Adj-gwo B Nu-M (or = A is more Adj than B by X indefinite amount) amount.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih gòugwo ngóh yāt chyun. He is taller than I by one inch. He is an inch taller than I.  
 2. Kéuih gòugwo ngóh síusíu. He is a little bit taller than I.

(See BC and Drill 6)

2) A béi B Adj Nu-M/indef = A, in comparison to B, is Adj amount phrase than B by X amount.

- Ex: Kéuih béi ngóh gòu yāt chyun. He is taller than I by one inch.

2) When one substantive is stated, and compared to another which is not stated, the substantive occupies subject position, and the comparison occupies predicate position.

a) Substantive Adj. Substantive is Adj-er. (See Lesson 8, Note 2.e.2, p.184)

- Ex: 1. Ní gihn leng. This one is prettier.  
 2. Toihwāan yiht. Taiwan is hotter (than the other place under discussion).

b) Substantive Adj-dī. Substantive is a little Adj-er.  
 Ex: Ní gihn lengdī. This one is a little prettier.

c) Substantive béigaau Adj(-dī). Substantive is comparatively (i.e. in comparison to the other substantive under discussion) Adj-er.  
 or:  
 Substantive is fairly Adj. (in comparison to other members of same category.)

- Ex: Toihwāan tinhei béigaau yiht dī. Taiwan's weather is relatively hot (in comparison to other places)  
 or  
 ...hotter than the other places under discussion.

(See BC)

- d) Substantive juhng Adj (dī)      Substantive is even Adj-er.  
 Ex: 1. NĪ gihn juhng lengdī tim!      This one is even prettier!  
 2. Kéuih juhng gón.      He is even taller.

(See BC and Drill 12)

- e) Substantive Adj Amount phrase      Substantive is Adj by X amount.  
 Ex: 1. NĪ gihn leng hóudò.      This one is prettier by far.  
       or: This one is much prettier.  
 2. Kéuih gòu sei chyun.      He is taller by 4 inches.

(See Drill 8)

- f) Substantive móuh gam Adj.      Substantive is not as Adj.  
 Ex: NĪ gihn móuh gam leng.      This one is not as pretty.

(See Drill 7)

2. Superlative: ji + Adj, or jeui + Adj.      'Adj.-est'

Superlative degree is expressed by ji or jeui immediately preceding the adjective concerned.

- Ex: Yihyuht síhsih dōu haih      February is always the  
       ji dung ge la.      coldest.

(See BC and Drills 13, 14, 15)

3. Measurable adjectives: géi Adj a?, 'which number Adj?', 'how Adj?'

- a. Some but not all adjectives can follow the question word géi?, 'which number?' and fill the blank in the question sentence Géi \_\_\_\_ a?, 'which number \_\_\_\_ (tall, short, etc)', i.e., 'How \_\_\_\_ (tall, short, etc.)?'

- Ex: NĪ dī bou géi chéuhng a?      How long is this cloth?  
       [This cloth which-number long?]

(See Drill 5)

The question pattern can be expanded by a Measure, and the answer requires a Measure, between géi and the adjective.

- Ex: 1. NĪ dī bou géi (máh)      How (many yards) long is  
       chéuhng a?      this cloth?  
 2. NĪ dī bou sei máh      This cloth is four yards  
       chéuhng.      long.

We designate adjectives which can follow the question word géi? as 'measurable adjectives.'

b. Measurable adjectives can combine with number-measure expressions in the following ways:

1. Nu-M Adj

The number-measure expression can be the center of the predicate, with the adjective following as an adjunct to indicate in what respect the number-measure phrase applies.

S	P	
Ex: Nĭ jèung tói sei chek chèuhng.		This table is four feet in length.
Gó jèung	sei chek gòu.	That one is four feet in height.
Gó jèung	gèi chek fut a?	That one is how many feet in width?

(See Drill 5)

2. Adj Nu-M

The adjective can be the subject, and the number-measure expression the predicate. In this case there is a pause between subject and predicate, and the Subject-Predicate sentence often is Comment in a larger Topic-Comment sentence.

Topic	Comment	
Ex:	Subject	Predicate
Nĭ jèung tói chèuhng	48 chyun,	This table--it's length is 48 inches,
	fut 24 chyun,	width 24 inches,
	gòu 16 chyun,	height 16 inches.

3. Adj Nu-M

The adjective can be the center of the predicate in a sentence of implied or explicit comparison, with the number-measure expression following to indicate the amount of the difference in the comparison.

Ex: S	P	
Nĭ jèung	fut yāt chek.	This one is wider by one foot, i.e., one foot wider than another one (here unspecified).
Nĭ jèung béi gó jèung	fut yāt chek.	This one, in comparison to that one, is wide by one foot, i.e., This one is one foot wider than that one.

(See Drill 6)

c. Measurable adjective sentence in SVO form with yáuh as equative verb.

The measurable adjective sentence in the positive degree (as opposed to the comparative degree in examples immediately above) can be expressed in SVO form with yáuh as equative verb and the measured adjective phrase (or the Nu-M phrase) as Object.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: 1. Nĭ dī bou yáuh géi<br>(chek) chéuhng a? | How (many feet) long is this cloth?                            |
| 2. Nĭ dī bou yáuh sei<br>chek chéuhng.         | This cloth is 4 feet long.<br>This cloth has 4 feet in length. |
| 3. Nĭ jèung tóí chéuhng<br>yáuh sei chek.      | This table, the length is four feet.                           |

(See Drill 5)

4. daaih, 'big,' and sai, 'small' used in reference to years of age.

sai is used to mean 'young(er)' in comparing the ages of two people:

Ex: Kéuih saigwo ngóh (yāt seui). He is (a year) younger than I.

daaih is used to mean 'years of age,' in the question formula.

géi daaih a? 'How many years of age (is he)?,' 'How old (is he)?'

It is also used to mean 'old(er)' in comparing the ages of two people.

- |                           |                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| Ex: 1. Kéuiy géi daaih a? | How old is he?      |
| 2. Kéuih béi ngóh daaih.  | He is older than I. |

(See Drill 5)

## 5. Frequency words in Cantonese.

In Cantonese frequency words are adverbs which precede the verb concerned:

- |               |   |                                      |
|---------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| sĭhsĭh dōu    | = | always                               |
| hóudō sĭh dōu | = | very often, lots of times            |
| yáuhshĭh      | = | sometimes                            |
| hóu síu       | = | very rarely, seldom, i.e., not often |

- |                          |                 |                                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| Ex: Kéuihdeih sĭhsĭh dōu | sĭhk Jùngchoi.  | They always eat Chinese food.         |
| "                        | hóudō sĭh dōu " | " " They eat Chinese food very often. |
| "                        | yáuhshĭh "      | " " They sometimes eat Chinese food.  |
| "                        | hóu síu "       | " " They seldom eat Chinese food.     |

(See BC and Drill 17)

## III. DRILLS

## 1. Response Drill

Ex: T: Dung mhdung a?

T: Is it cold?

S: Mnhaih géi dung.

S: It's not very cold.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| + 1. <u>Lèuhng</u> mhlèuhng a?<br>Is it <u>cool</u> ?  | 1. Mnhaih géi lèuhng.<br>It's not very cool.           |
| 2. Hóu mhhóu a?  | 2. Mnhaih géi hóu.                                     |
| + 3. <u>Yiht</u> mhyiht a?<br>Is it <u>hot</u> ?   | 3. Mnhaih géi yiht.                                    |
| + 4. <u>Chúhng</u> mhchúhng a?<br>Is it <u>heavy</u> ?   | 4. Mnhaih géi chúhng.<br>It's not very heavy.          |
| + 5. <u>Lēk</u> mhlēk a?<br>Is he <u>smart</u> ?   | 5. Mnhaih géi lēk.<br>Not very smart.                  |
| + 6. <u>Nàahn</u> mhnàahn a?<br>Is it <u>difficult</u> ?   | 6. Mnhaih géi nàahn.<br>Not very difficult.            |
| + 7. <u>Yih</u> mhyih a?<br>Is it <u>easy</u> ?  | 7. Mnhaih géi yih.<br>It's not very easy.              |
| + 8. <u>Gòu</u> mhgòu a?<br>Is he <u>tall</u> ?  | 8. Mnhaih géi gòu.<br>Not very tall.                   |
| + 9. <u>Yáuh</u> móuh <u>cheuimeih</u> a?<br>Is it interesting?<br>( <u>yáuh cheuimeih</u> =<br><u>interesting</u> ) | 9. Mnhaih géi yáuh cheuimeih.<br>Not very interesting. |

## 2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Haih sàh ge.

It is new.

S: Haih mnhaih sàh ga?

Is it new?

- |                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Haih gauh ge.      | 1. Haih mnhaih gauh ga?      |
| 2. Haih baahk sīk ge. | 2. Haih mnhaih baahk sīk ga? |
| 3. Haih hāak sīk ge.  | 3. Haih mnhaih hāak sīk ga?  |
| 4. Haih yātyeuhng ge. | 4. Haih mnhaih yātyeuhng ga? |
| 5. Haih sàh ge.       | 5. Haih mnhaih sàh ga?       |
| 6. Haih yiht ge.      | 6. Haih mnhaih yiht ga?      |
| 7. Haih dung ge.      | 7. Haih mnhaih dung ga?      |
| 8. Haih daaih ge.     | 8. Haih mnhaih daaih ga?     |
| 9. Haih sai ge.       | 9. Haih mnhaih sai ga?       |

## 3. Response Drill

Ex: T: Dī bējáu dung m̀dung    T: Is the beer cold?  
           a? /nod/

S: Hóu dung.                    S: Very cold.

T: Dī gafē yiht m̀hyiht    T: Is the coffee hot?  
           a? /shake/

S: M̀hahh géi yiht.            S: Not very hot.

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. Kàhmyaht lèuhng m̀hlèuhng a?<br>/shake/        | 1. M̀hahh géi lèuhng.         |
| 2. Gàmyaht yiht m̀hyiht a? /nod/                  | 2. Hóu yiht.                  |
| 3. Gó jèung tóí ch̀uhng m̀ch̀uhng<br>a? /nod/     | 3. Hóu ch̀uhng.               |
| 4. Kéuih go jái lēk m̀hlēk a?<br>/shake/          | 4. M̀hahh géi lēk.            |
| 5. Hohk Gwóngd̀ungwá nàahn m̀nàahn<br>a? /nod/    | 5. Hóu nàahn.                 |
| 6. Gó go bíu jéun m̀jéun a?<br>/shake/            | 6. M̀hahh géi jéun.           |
| 7. Ní gàn ūk daaih m̀daaih a?<br>/nod/            | 7. Hóu daaih.                 |
| 8. Gó tou hei yáuh móuh cheui-<br>meih a? /shake/ | 8. M̀hahh géi yáuh cheuimeih. |

## 4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Gàmyaht dungdī.            T: It's colder today.  
           /kàhmyaht/

S: Gàmyaht dunggwo            S: It's colder today than  
    kàhmyaht.                    yesterday.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ní gihn sēutsāam daaihđī.<br>/gó gihn/        | 1. Ní gihn sēutsāam daaihgwó<br>gó gihn.        |
| 2. Ngóh gàn séjihlāuh saidī.<br>/néih gàn/       | 2. Ngóh gàn séjihlāuh saigwó<br>néih gàn.       |
| 3. Kéuih gàn ūk lengđī.<br>/ngóh gàn/            | 3. Kéuih gàn ūk lenggwó ngóh<br>gàn.            |
| 4. Néih sīnsàng go dáfógēi<br>gwaidī. /kéuih go/ | 4. Néih sīnsàng go dáfógēi<br>gwaigwó kéuih go. |
| 5. Wòhng Sàng go bíu jéundī.<br>/ngóh go/        | 5. Wòhng Sàng go bíu jéungwó<br>ngóh go.        |
| 6. Kàhmyaht yihtđī. /gàmyaht/                    | 6. Kàhmyaht yihtgwó gàmyaht.                    |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. Ní ga fēigēi faaidī. /gó ga/                        | 7. Ní ga fēigēi faaigwo gó ga.                        |
| 8. Hohk Gwóngdungwá yáuh cheui-meihdī. /hohk Yíngmàhn/ | 8. Hohk Gwóngdungwá yáuh cheui-meihgwo hohk Yíngmàhn. |
| 9. Hohk Gwóngdungwá nàahndī. /Yíngmàhn/                | 9. Hohk Gwóngdungwá nàahngwo hohk Yíngmàhn.           |
| 10. Kéuih gòudī. /kéuih bàhbā/                         | 10. Kéuih gòugwo kéuih bàhbā.                         |

## 5. Response Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Néih géi gòu a?<br>+ /ngh <u>chek</u> gáu/<br><u>chek</u> =<br><u>foot, feet (long)</u>   | T: How tall are you? /five foot nine/  |
| S: Ngóh ngh <u>chek</u> gáu gòu.   | S: I'm five foot nine. ( <u>or</u> five-nine)                                    |
| 1. Ní jek gāi géi chúhng a?<br>/sàam gàn/  | 1. Ní jek gāi sàam gàn chúhng.   |
| 2. Gó tìuh yú géi chúhng a?<br>/(yāt) gàn géi/   | 2. Gó tìuh yú (yāt) gàn géi chúhng.  |
| 3. Ní dī bou géi chéuhng a?<br>/sàam mǎh bun/  | 3. Ní dī bou sàam mǎh bun chéuhng.<br>This cloth is three and a half yards long. |
| + 4. Néih go jái géi daaih a?<br>( <u>géi daaih</u> = ( <u>in reference to age</u> ) <u>how old?</u> )<br><u>How old</u> is your son?<br>/17 <u>seui</u> / | 4. Ngóh go jái sahphāt seui.<br>My son is 17 years old.                          |
| + ( <u>seui</u> = <u>years (of age)</u> )  |  |
| 5. Kéuih go néui géi daaih a?<br>/yahsei seui/   | 5. Kéuih go néui yahsei seui.  |
| 6. Néih pàhngyáuh géi daaih a?<br>/sàamsahp seui/  | 6. Ngóh pàhngyáuh sàamsahp seui.   |
| 7. Néih taaitái géi daaih a?<br>/yahyāt seui/  | 7. Ngóh taaitái yahyāt seui.   |
| 8. Ní jèung tói géi chéuhng a?<br>/luhk chek/  | 8. Ní jèung tói luhk chek chéuhng.<br>This table is six feet long.               |
| + 9. Ní dī faaijǐ géi chéuhng a?<br>/sahp <u>chyun</u> /   | 9. Ní dī faaijǐ sahph chyun chéuhng.   |



(chyun = inch)

These chopsticks are 10  
inches long.How long are these chopsticks?  
/10 inches/a. Repeat, expanding with yáuh, thus:T: Néih yáuh géi gòu a?  
/ngh chek gáu/How tall are you?  
/five foot nine/S: Ngòh yáuh ngh chek  
gáu gòu.I am five foot nine inches  
tall.

## 6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ní jek gāi chúngh  
yāt gān. /gò jek/T: This chicken is one catty  
heavier.S: Ní jek gāi chúnghgwo  
gò jek yāt gān.S: This chicken is one catty  
heavier than that one.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Hèunggóng tinhei hóu sèsiu.<br>/Wahsíhngdeuhn/                                   | 1. Hèunggóng tinhei hóugwo<br>Wahsíhngdeuhn sèsiu.    |
| 2. Ngòh go jái gòu yāt chyun.<br>/néih go/<br>My son is one inch taller.<br>/yours/ | 2. Ngòh go jái gòugwo néih go<br>yāt chyun.           |
| 3. Ní jūng yínjái gwai yāt hòuh-<br>jí. /go jūng/                                   | 3. Ní jūng yínjái gwaigwo gò<br>jūng yāt hòuhjí.      |
| 4. Yahtbun faaijǐ dyún sèsiu.<br>/Jūnggwok ge/                                      | 4. Yahtbún faaijǐ dyungwo<br>Jūnggwok sèsiu.          |
| 5. Gó jèung tóí chéuhng sàam chek.<br>/ní jèung/                                    | 5. Gó jèung tóí chéuhnggwo ní<br>jèung sàam chek.     |
| 6. Kéuih ge jáinéui lēk hóudò.<br>/ngòh ge/   | 6. Kéuih ge jáinéui lēkgwo<br>ngòh ge hóudò.          |
| 7. Ní jek dǐp daaih sèsiu.<br>/gò jek/  | 7. Ní jek dǐp daaihgwò gò<br>jek sèsiu.               |
| 8. Ní jèung tóí dyún léuhngsàam<br>chyun. /gò jèung/                                | 8. Ní jèung tóí dyúngwo gò<br>jèung léuhngsàam chyun. |
| 9. Gó jèung yǐ chúngh géi bohng.<br>/ní jèung/                                      | 9. Gó jèung yǐ chúnghgwo ní<br>jèung géi bohng.       |
| 10. Hèunggóng yiht sèsiu.   | 10. Hèunggóng yihtgwo Tòihwāan                        |
| 11. Hèimohng tǐngyaht lèuhng<br>hóudò. /gàmyaht/                                    | 11. Hèimohng tǐngyaht lèuhnggwo<br>gàmyaht hóudò.     |
| 12. Ní go jūng daaih sèsiu.<br>/gò go/  | 12. Ní go jūng daaihgwò gò go<br>sèsiu.               |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>13. Hòh Táai gàan ngūk daaih móuh-géidò. /ngòh gàan/<br/>         14. Kéuih daaih yāt seui.<br/>         He is one year older.<br/>         /ngòh/<br/>         + 15. Hòh Táai <u>sai</u> yāt seui.<br/>         /Hòh Sàang/<br/>         Mrs. Ho is one year <u>younger</u>.</p> | <p>13. Hòh Táai gàan ngūk daaihgwò ngòh gàan móuhgéidò.<br/>         14. Kéuih daaihgwò ngòh yāt seui.<br/>         He is one year older than I.<br/>         15. Hòh Táai saigwò Hòh Sàang yāt seui.<br/>         Mrs. Ho is one year younger than Mr. Ho.</p> |
|--|---|

## 7. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Ex: T: Nĭ dĭ yĭnjái móuh gam hóusihk.<br/>         /gó dĭ/<br/>         S: Nĭ dĭ yĭnjái móuh go dĭ gam hóusihk.</p> <p>1. Bāsĭ móuh gam faai. /dĭksĭ/<br/>         2. Nĭ deui hàaih móuh gam hóutái.<br/>         /gó deui/<br/>         3. Yihttĭn móuh gam sĕp.<br/>         /láahngtĭn/<br/>         4. Nĭ ga chē móuh gam leng.<br/>         /néih gĕ/<br/>         5. Kéuih go jái móuh gam gòu.<br/>         /ngòh go/<br/>         6. Nĭ jek dĭp móuh gam daaih.<br/>         /gó jek/<br/>         7. Gàmyaht móuh gam yiht.<br/>         /kàhmyaht/<br/>         8. Daap syùhn móuh gam gwai.<br/>         /fēigēi/</p> | <p>T: These cigarettes are not as good.<br/>         S: These cigarettes are not as good as those.</p> <p>1. Bāsĭ móuh dĭksĭ gam faai.<br/>         2. Nĭ deui hàaih móuh gó deui gam hóutái.<br/>         3. Yihttĭn móuh láahngtĭn gam sĕp.<br/>         4. Nĭ ga chē móuh néih ga gam leng.<br/>         5. Kéuih go jái móuh ngòh go gam gòu.<br/>         6. Nĭ jek dĭp móuh gó jek gam daaih.<br/>         7. Gàmyaht móuh kàhmyaht gam yiht.<br/>         8. Daap syùhn móuh fēigēi gam gwai.</p> |
|---|--|

## 8. Reduction Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Ex: T: Kéuih gòugwò ngòh yāt chyun.<br/>         S: Kéuih gòu yāt chyun.</p> <p>1. Néih chúhnggwò kéuih ngh bohng.<br/>         You weigh 5 pounds more than he does.</p> | <p>T: He is one inch taller than I.<br/>         S: He is one inch taller.</p> <p>1. Néih chúhng ngh bohng.<br/>         You weigh five pounds more.</p> |
|--|--|

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 2. Gàm̄yaht dunggwo kàhmyaht hóudò.            | 2. Gàm̄yaht dung hóudò.           |
| 3. Ní jèung ch̀euhnggwo gó jèung léuhng chek.  | 3. Ní jèung ch̀euhng léuhng chek. |
| 4. Ní gihn gwaigwo gó gihn sàam mán.           | 4. Ní gihn gwai sàam mán.         |
| 5. Ngóh t̄uh p̀ehnggwo néih t̄uh luhk mán.     | 5. Ngóh t̄uh p̀ehng luhk mán.     |
| 6. Kéuih bá dyúngwo néih bá bun chyun.         | 6. Kéuih bá dyún bun chyun.       |
| 7. Yahtbún láahngt̄in dunggwo Hèunggóng hóudò. | 7. Yahtbún láahngt̄in dung hóudò. |
| 8. Kéuih go jái lēkgwo ngóh go hóudò.          | 8. Kéuih go jái lēk hóudò.        |

## 9. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Ní go bíu t̀uhng gó go yátyeuhng.<br>/gwai/               | T: This watch is the same as that one.  |
| S: Ní go bíu t̀uhng gó go yátyeuhng gam gwai.                    | S: This watch is as expensive as that one. <u>or</u><br>This one and that one are both equally expensive. |
| 1. Gàm̄yaht t̀uhng kàhmyaht yátyeuhng. /yíht/                    | 1. Gàm̄yaht t̀uhng kàhmyaht yátyeuhng gam yíht.   |
| 2. Sàamyuht t̀uhng Seiyuht yátyeuhng. /sāp/                      | 2. Sàamyuht t̀uhng Seiyuht yátyeuhng gam sāp.   |
| 3. Ngóh bàhbā t̀uhng mǎhmā yátyeuhng. /daaih/                    | 3. Ngóh bàhbā t̀uhng mǎhmā yátyeuhng gam daaih.   |
| 4. Gwóngd̀ung choi t̀uhng Seuhng-hóih choi yátyeuhng. /hóu síhk/ | 4. Gwóngd̀ung choi t̀uhng Seuhng-hóih choi yátyeuhng gam hóu síhk.  |
| 5. Kéuih t̀uhng ngóh yátyeuhng. /gòu/                            | 5. Kéuih t̀uhng ngóh yátyeuhng gam gòu.   |
| 6. Duhk syù t̀uhng jòuh síh yátyeuhng. /yáuh cheuimeih/          | 6. Duhk syù t̀uhng jòuh síh yátyeuhng gam yáuh cheuimeih.   |
| 7. Cháau míhn t̀uhng t̀ong míhn yátyeuhng. /p̀ehng/              | 7. Cháau míhn t̀uhng t̀ong míhn yátyeuhng gam p̀ehng.   |
| 8. Ní go j̀ung t̀uhng gó go yátyeuhng. /j̀éun/                   | 8. Ní go j̀ung t̀uhng gó go yátyeuhng gam j̀éun.  |

## 10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Jùngchoi tùhng Sāi- T: Chinese food and Western food  
 chāan yātyeuhng gam are equally expensive.  
 gwai.

S: Jùngchoi gwai m̄h- S: Is Chinese food more expensive  
 gwaigwo Saichāan a? than Western food?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Cháang tùhng pìhnggwó yāt-<br>yeuhng gam pèhng.                                       | 1. Cháang pèhng m̄hpèhngwo<br>pìhnggwó a?   |
| 2. Ní deui tùhng gó deui yāt-<br>yeuhng gam daaih.                                       | 2. Ní deui daaih m̄hdaaihwo<br>gó deui a?   |
| 3. Ngóh jyuh ge deihfōng tùhng<br>Tòihwāan yātyeuhng gam yiht.                           | 3. Néih jyuh ge deihfōng yiht<br>m̄hyihtgwo Tòihwāan a?   |
| 4. Dī bējáu tùhng heisēui yātyeuhng<br>gam dung.   | 4. Dī bējáu dung m̄hdungwo<br>heisēui a?  |
| 5. Yahtbún tìnhei tùhng Tòihwāan<br>ge yātyeuhng gam hóu.                                | 5. Yahtbún tìnhei hóu m̄hhóugwo<br>Tòihwāan ge a?   |
| 6. Ngóh gāan ūk tùhng Hòh Táai<br>ge yātyeuhng gam sai.                                  | 6. Ngóh gāan ūk sai m̄hsaigwo<br>Hòh Táai ge a?   |
| 7. Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh<br>yātyeuhng gam <u>nàahnhoik</u> .<br>(difficult to learn) | 7. Gwóngdùngwá nàahn m̄hnàahn-<br>hohkgwo Gwokyúh a?<br>Is Cantonese more dif-<br>ficult to learn than<br>Mandarin? |
| 8. Tòihwāan tìnhei tùhng Yahtbún ge<br>yātyeuhng gam s̄ap.                               | 8. Tòihwāan tìnhei s̄ap m̄hs̄ap-<br>gwo Yahtbún ge a?   |

a. Repeat, students responding with haih m̄hhaih question, thus:

T: Jùngchoi tùhng  
Saichāan yāt-  
yeuhng gam gwai.

Chinese food and Western  
food are both equally  
expensive.

S: Jùngchoi tùhng  
Saichāan haih  
m̄hhaih yātyeuhng  
gam gwai a?

Are Chinese food and Western  
food equally expensive?

11. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from Negative to choice-type question.

Ex: T: Ní dī móuh gó dī gam T: This isn't as big as that.  
daaih.

S: Ní dī yáuh móuh gó dī S: Is this as big as that?  
gam daaih a?

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Tòihwāan móuh nīdoh gam yiht.                  | 1. Tòihwāan yáuh móuh nīdoh gam yiht a?                  |
| 2. Nī deui móuh gó deui gam fut.                  | 2. Nī deui yáuh móuh gó deui gam fut a?                  |
| 3. Nī gihn móuh gó gihn gam jaak.                 | 3. Nī gihn yáuh móuh gó gihn gam jaak a?                 |
| 4. Hèunggóng tinhei móuh Yínggwok gam dung.       | 4. Hèunggóng tinhei yáuh móuh Yínggwok gam dung a?       |
| 5. Yātyuht móuh yihyuht gam dung.                 | 5. Yātyuht yáuh móuh Yihyuht gam dung a?                 |
| 6. Hèunggóng ge yihttín móuh Yínggwok gam léuhng. | 6. Hèunggóng ge yihttín yáuh móuh Yínggwok gam léuhng a? |

## 12. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Méihgwok tinhei hóu dung. /Yínggwok/    | T: In America the weather is very cold. /England/  |
| S1: Yínggwok tinhei juhng dungdí tím.          | S1: In England the weather is even colder.   |
| S2: Haih a, Yínggwok tinhei dunggwo Méihgwok.  | S2: Yes, the weather in England is colder than America.  |
| 1. Hèunggóng yihttín hóu yiht. /Wáhsihngdeuhn/ | 1. A: Wáhsihngdeuhn yihttín juhng yihtdí tím.<br>B: Haih a, Wáhsihngdeuhn yihttín yihtgwo Hèunggóng. |
| 2. Yahtbún hàaih hóu pèhng. /Daaihluhk/        | 2. A: Daaihluhk hàaih juhng pèhngdí tím.<br>B: Haih a, Daaihluhk hàaih pèhnggwo Yahtbún hàaih.       |
| 3. Gwokýúh hóu nàahnhoik. /Seuhnghóiwá/        | 3. A: Seuhnghóiwá juhng nàahnhoikdí tím.<br>B: Haih a, Seuhnghóiwá nàahnhoikgwo Gwokýúh.             |
| 4. Tòihwāan hóu sai. /Hèunggóng/               | 4. A: Hèunggóng juhng saidí tím.<br>B: Haih a, Hèunggóng saigwo Tòihwāan.                            |
| 5. Gámýaht tinhei hóu sǎp. /kàhmyaht/          | 5. A: Kàhmyaht juhng sǎpdí tím.  |

6. Hèunggong Chātyuht hóu yíht.  
/Baatyuht/
- B: Haih a, káhmyaht sǎpgwo gǎmyaht.
6. A: Baatyuht juhng yíhtdī tīm.
- B: Haih a, Baatyuht yíhtgwo Chātyuht.

## 13. Expansion Drill

- Ex: T: Ngóh séung oi léuhng jek gāi. /ji leng/  
T: I want two chickens. /the prettiest/
- S: Ngóh séung oi léuhng jek ji leng ge gāi.  
S: I want the two of the best chickens.
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh séung oi tou gāsi.<br>/ji leng/                                       | 1. Ngóh séung oi tou ji leng ge gāsi.   |
| 2. Ngóh séung oi jèung yí.<br>/ji leng/                                       | 2. Ngóh séung oi jèung ji leng ge yí.   |
| 3. Ngóh séung oi sǎam jek būi.<br>/ji hóu/                                    | 3. Ngóh séung oi sǎam jek ji hóu ge būi.  |
| 4. Ngóh séung oi go dáfógēi.<br>+ /jeui sai/<br>( <u>most</u> , <u>-est</u> ) | 4. Ngóh séung oi go jeui sai go dáfógēi.<br>I want one of your smallest lighters. |
| 5. Ngóh séung oi géi go wún.<br>/jeui leng/                                   | 5. Ngóh séung oi géi go jeui leng ge wún.   |
| 6. Ngóh séung oi deui faaijǐ.<br>/jeui chéuhng/                               | 6. Ngóh séung oi deui jeui chéuhng ge faaijǐ.                                     |
| 7. Ngóh séung oi luhk jek díp.<br>/jeui daaih/                                | 7. Ngóh séung oi luhk jek jeui daaih ge díp.                                      |
| 8. Ngóh séung oi jèung tóí.<br>/jeui pèhng/                                   | 8. Ngóh séung oi jèung jeui pèhng ge tóí.   |
- Comment: jeui, 'most', '-est,' is interchangeable with ji.

## 14. Response Drill

- Ex: T: Jí daaih géidō chǐn a? /\$3.00/  
T: How much is (or are) the biggest? (i.e., the biggest one(s))
- S: Jí daaih sǎam mǎn.  
S: The biggest is (or are) three dollars.
- |                                  |                       |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Jí sai géidō chǐn a? /\$5.50/ | 1. Jí sai ñgh go bun. |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 2. Ji gwai géidō chín a? /\$10/     | 2. Ji gwai sahp mán.                |
| 3. Ji gòu géidō chín a? /\$21/      | 3. Ji gòu yahyāt mán.               |
| 4. Ji daaih géidō chín a? /\$36/    | 4. Ji daaih sa'ahlukh mán.          |
| 5. Ji leng géidō chín a? /\$25/     | 5. Ji leng yahng mán.               |
| 6. Ji hóu géidō chín a? /\$33/      | 6. Ji hóu sa'ahsám mán.             |
| 7. Ji pèhng géidō chín a? /\$2/     | 7. Ji pèhng léuhng mán.             |
| 8. Ji chéuhng géidō chín a? /\$220/ | 8. Ji chéuhng yih baak yihsahp mán. |

Comment: In a different context, #7 above can mean 'What's the cheapest (you'll sell it for)?', with the answer being 'The cheapest (I'll sell it for) is \$2.00.'

Repeat, with ge, thus:

T: Jeui daaih ge géidō chín a? /\$3.00/

How much is the biggest one (or ones)? /\$3.00/

S: Jeui daaih ge sàam mán.

The biggest one (or ones) is (or are) \$3.00.

The meaning is no different from that without -ge.

#### 15. Transformation Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: 1. T: Ngóh séung oi géi go lengdī ge.  | T: I want a few nice ones. <u>or</u> of the nicer ones.  |
| S: Béi géi go lengdī ge ngóh lā.           | S: Give me a few nice ones. <u>or</u> of the nicer ones. |
| 2. T: Ngóh séung oi géi gihn jeui leng ge. | T: I want a few of the nicest ones.                      |
| S: Béi géi gihn jeui leng ge ngóh lā.      | S: Give me a few of the nicest ones.                     |
| 1. Ngóh séung oi jèung hóudī ge.           | 1. Béi jèung hóudī ge ngóh lā.                           |
| 2. Ngóh séung oi léuhng gàn lengdī ge.     | 2. Béi léuhng gàn lengdī ge ngóh lā.                     |
| 3. Ngóh séung oi lukh jek daaih-dī ge.     | 3. Béi lukh jek daaih-dī ge ngóh lā.                     |
| 4. Ngóh séung oi géi go jeui leng ge.      | 4. Béi géi go jeui leng ge ngóh lā.                      |
| 5. Ngóh séung oi ga jeui pèhng ge.         | 5. Béi ga jeui pèhng ge ngóh lā.                         |
| 6. Ngóh séung oi sàam gihn jeui sai ge.    | 6. Béi sàam gihn jeui sai ge ngóh lā.                    |

7. Ngóh séung oi bùi dungdī ge.      7. Béi bùi dungdī ge ngóh lā.  
 8. Ngóh séung oi wún jeui yiht ge.    8. Béi wún jeui yiht ge ngóh lā.

Comment: Note that the comparative -dī is used in the example sentence above, and in the problem sentences that follow. In the idiomatic English equivalents the comparative is not required. This use of the comparative parallels that in the following sentence, which you have encountered before:

Ngóh go bíu faaidī.      My watch is fast.  
 [my watch faster  
 (than it should be.)]

#### 16. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kàhmyaht m̀hdung.

T: It was not cold yesterday.

S: Kàhmyaht dung  
 m̀hdung a?

S: Was it cold yesterday?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| + 1. Ní tou gāsí m̀hhóutái.<br>This set of furniture is<br><u>ugly</u> .<br>(hóutái =<br><u>nice-looking, pretty</u> )<br>(not said in reference to<br>people) | 1. Ní tou gāsí hóu m̀hhóutái a?<br>Is this set of furniture<br>nice-looking? |
| 2. Gàmyaht m̀hdung.  | 2. Gàmyaht dung m̀hdung a?   |
| 3. Ngóh jèung tóí m̀hhaih hóu<br>gwai jē.  | 3. Néih jèung tóí gwai m̀hgwai<br>a?   |
| 4. Gó gàn ūk m̀hhaih hóu daaih jē.   | 4. Gó gàn ūk daaih m̀hdaaih a?   |
| 5. Kéuih ge sànséui m̀hhaih géi<br>gòu.  | 5. Kéuih ge sànséui gòu m̀hgòu<br>a?   |
| 6. Hèunggóng ūkjōu m̀hpèhng ga.  | 6. Hèunggóng ūkjōu pèhng m̀h-<br>pèhng a?                                    |
| 7. Ngóh go gùngyàhn (ge) yàhn-<br>gùng m̀hhaih hóu gwai.   | 7. Néih go gùngyàhn (ge) yàhn-<br>gùng gwai m̀hgwai a?                       |
| 8. Kéuih go jái m̀hhaih géi lēk.   | 8. Kéuih go jái lēk m̀hlēk a?  |



## 17. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yahtyaht dōu  
chēut gāai sihk  
faahn ge.  
/sihsih dōu/

T: I eat out everyday. /always/

S: Ngóh sihsih dōu  
chēut gaai sihk  
faahn ge.

S: I always eat out.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh sihsih dōu chēut gāai<br>sihk faahn ge.<br>+ /hóudòsih dōu/<br>(very often) | 1. Ngóh hóudò sih dōu chēut<br>gāai sihk faahn ge.<br>I eat out a lot. [I eat<br>out every often.] |
| 2. Ngóh hóudò sih dōu chēut gāai<br>sihk faahn ge. /yáuhsih/<br>(sometimes)         | 2. Ngóh yáuhsih chēut gāai<br>sihk faahn ge.<br>Sometimes I eat out.                               |
| 3. Ngóh yáuhsih chēut gāai sihk<br>faahn ge. /hóusíu/<br>(rarely, seldom)           | 3. Ngóh hóusíu chēut gāai sihk<br>faahn ge.<br>I don't eat out much. [I<br>seldom eat out.]        |
| 4. Ngóh hóusíu chēut gāai sihk<br>faahn ge. /yahtyaht dōu/                          | 4. Ngóh yahtyaht dōu chēut gāai<br>sihk faahn ge.  |
| 5. Ngóh yahtyaht dōu tái dihnsih<br>ge. /hóusíu/                                    | 5. Ngóh hóusíu tái dihnsih ge.   |
| 6. Ngóh hóusíu tái dihnsih ge.<br>/yáuhsih/   | 6. Ngóh yáuhsih tái dihnsih ge.  |
| 7. Ngóh yáuhsih tái dihnsih ge.<br>/hóudò sih dōu/                                  | 7. Ngóh hóudò sih dōu tái<br>dihnsih ge.   |

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) hói tāan = seaside
- 2) Chín Séui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay]
- 3) Chínséui Wāan = Repulse Bay
- 4) Chínséui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay] a beach on  
the South shore of Hong Kong island.
- 5) Chekchyúh = Stanley, a village and beach on the south-  
eastern tip of Hong Kong island.
- 6) taai = too
- 7) fòngbihn = convenient

- 8) Lóuh Léih = 'Old Lee'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends.
- 9) māt = exclamation of surprise, Compare English 'Why' in 'Why he's a full 20 years older than she!'
- 10) sèhng yihsahp seui = a full 20 years
- 11) Lóuhdauh = father, equivalent to 'The Old Man'
- 12) yáuh chín = rich, wealthy
- 13) Wáh...háai! = exclamation of awe and astonishment.

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. You say to the person sitting next to you:               | B. And he replies:   |
| 1. My it's hot today!                                       | 1. Yes, it's hotter then yesterday.                                  |
| 2. Hong Kong is hotter than the U.S.                        | 2. In August Hong Kong and Washington are both equally hot.          |
| 3. I think Washington is a bit hotter.                      | 3. I like hot weather, I don't like cold weather.                    |
| 4. How old is your father?                                  | 4. He's 55 years old. He's three years older than my mother.         |
| 5. My elder brother is 6 feet tall, but I'm just 5 foot 10. | 5. How tall is your father?  |
| 6. Her son isn't as smart at Mrs. Lee's.                    | 6. Is her daughter smart?  |
| 7. Is that new table you bought very heavy?                 | 7. Not as heavy as our old one.                                      |
| 8. We often go out to have tea on Sundays.                  | 8. My husband has to work on Sundays, so we rarely go out on Sunday. |
| 9. Which do you think is easier--Mandarin or Cantonese?     | 9. I think Mandarin is easier than Cantonese.                        |
| 10. How much does the biggest one cost?                     | 10. The biggest is \$20.00   |
| 11. Please give me a dozen of your nicest oranges.          | 11. I'm sorry, we're all sold out.                                   |
| 12. This shirt is \$1.00 cheaper.                           | 12. OK, give me the cheaper one.                                     |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 13. Is Cantonese hard to learn?                   | 13. It's comparatively hard, but it's very interesting.      |
| 14. These trousers are an inch longer than these. | 14. Give me the shorter ones.                                |
| 15. These trousers aren't as wide as those.       | 15. These are even narrower.                                 |
| 16. Are these cigarettes the long kind?           | 16. No, those are the short kind. Do you want the long kind? |

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 21

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. béi                      | bf: in comparison   |
| 2. béigaau                  | adv: in comparison, comparatively   |
| 3. chàmhō                   | Ph: more or less, approximately   |
| 4. chek                     | m: foot (measurement)   |
| 5. chúhng                   | adj: heavy  |
| 6. chyun                    | m: inch   |
| 7. daaih                    | adj: in ref. to age: years of age 'old' in How old are you, I am older than he.               |
| 8. <u>X</u> dīm?            | QW: How about <u>X</u> ?, What's <u>X</u> like?   |
| 9. dung                     | adj: cold   |
| 10. géi daaih?              | Ph: how old (as in 'How old are you?')  |
| 11. géi chúhng?             | Ph: how heavy?  |
| 12. gokdāk                  | v: feel, consider, realize  |
| 13. gòu                     | adj: tall   |
| 14. -gwo, in <u>Adj-gwo</u> | bf: [exceed, surpass] used to form the comparative: more <u>Adj</u> than, <u>Adj</u> -er than |
| 15. hóudòsìh                | advPh: very often   |
| 16. hóusíu                  | advPh: rarely, seldom   |
| 17. hóutái                  | adj: nice-looking, pretty   |
| 18. jeui                    | bf: most..., exceedingly...   |
| 19. ji                      | bf: (superlative) most..., exceedingly...   |
| 20. juhng                   | adv: even   |
| 21. juhng... <u>Adj</u> -dī | Ph: even more <u>Adj</u> .  |
| 22. láahngtīn               | TW: winter  |
| 23. lēk                     | adj: smart, brilliant   |
| 24. lèuhng                  | adj: cool   |

---

25. nàahn	adj: difficult
26. nàahnhoik	adj: difficult to learn
27. sai	adj: younger in age; used in comparison sentences to indicate 'younger than'
28. sǎp	adj: wet
29. seui	m: years of age
30. síhsih	adv: always, at all times
31. tinhei	n: weather
32. Tòihwāanyáhn	n: Taiwanese person
33. tùhng.ɿ.yǎtyeuhng	Ph: the same as.ɿ.
34. yáuh cheuimeih	adj: interesting
35. yáuhshih	adv: sometimes
36. yǎh	adj: easy
37. yih	adj: hot
38. yihhtín	TW: summer

---

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Miss Jones, a young foreigner employed as secretary in Hong Kong, is talking to her friend, Miss Lee, a young Cantonese employed in the same office:)

Jùnggwokyàhn

góngdāk géi hóu	Speak quite well
Néih ge Gwóngdùngwá yìhgā	Say: Your Cantonese is pretty
góngdāk géi hóu bo.	good now.

Ngoihgwokyàhn

gwojéung	'You praise me too much.'
māhmádeí	[over-speak], overdo it
	Middling, indifferent, so-
	so, just scrapes by
Gwojéung laak; māhmádeí jē.	You overdo it--it just barely
	scrapes by.
leuhnjeuhn	clumsy, awkward, stupid
Ngóh góngdāk hóu leuhnjeuhn ga.	I speak very stupidly.

Jùnggwokyàhn

kínggái	have a chat
tùhng néih kínggái	chat with you
ngāamngāam (āamāam)	just, only a moment ago
héisáu	begin [lift-hand]
ngāamngāam héisáu	just begun
jih	written word, written
	figure, Chinese character
sé jih	to write [words]
héisáu hohk sé jih	begin learning to write
Ngóh daihyātchi tùhng néih kíng-	The first time I talked with
gái, néih ngāamngāam héisáu	you, you had just begun to
hohk sé jih, haih m̀hhaìh nē?	learn Chinese characters,
	isn't that right?

Ngoihgwokyàhn

sailóu	younger brother
Haih. Ngóh tùhng ngóh sailóu	That's right. My younger
léuhng go yātchāih hohk.	brother and I are studying

together.

Jùnggwokyàhn

Hohkdāk dīm a?

How are you doing?

Ngoihgwokyàhn

yáih

terrible, awful

Sédāk hóu yáih.

My writing is awful.

ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hcho

my younger brother writes

pretty well

ngóh sédāk móuh kéuih gam

I don't write as well as

leng

he

Ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hcho, daahnhaih

My younger brother writes pretty

ngóh sédāk móuh kéuih gam leng.

well, but I don't write as

well as he.

Jùnggwokyàhn

(seeing some Chinese characters written  
on a piece of scratch paper on the desk:)

Ní dī jih haih m̀hhaih néih

These characters, are they ones

sé ga?

that you wrote?

Ngoihgwokyàhn

Móuh cho.

That's right.

Jùnggwokyàhn

Sédāk m̀hcho ā.

They're written quite well.

Hohkdāk géi faai bo.

You learn fast!

Ngoihgwokyàhn

S̀insàng hóu jē.

It's just that the teacher is  
good.

A! Ngóh t̀engginwah néih jyú

Oh--I hear that you cook Chinese  
food very well.

J̀ungchoi jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.

learn from you [follow you  
learn]

gàn néih hohk

Ngóh hóu séung gàn néih hohkháh.

I'd like very much to learn  
from you.

Jùnggwokyàhn

Néih gwojéung jē, ngóh m̀hdāk ge.

You praise me too much, I'm  
no good.

Ngoihgwokyàhn

taai	too, excessively
hím	humble
Néih taai hím laak.	You're too modest.

B. Recapitulation:Jünggwokyàhn

Néih ge Gwóngdúngwá yíngā	Say! Your Cantonese is pretty
góngdāk géi hóu bo.	good now.

Ngoihgwokyàhn

Gwojéung laak; mǎhmádeí jē.	You overdo it--it barely scrapes
Ngóh góngdāk hóu leuhnjeuhn ga.	by. I speak very stupidly.

Jünggwokyàhn

Ngóh daihyātchi túhng néih kíng-	The first time I talked with you,
gái, néih ngāamngāam héisáu	you had just begun to learn
hohk sé jih, haih mǎhhaíh nē?	Chinese characters, isn't
	that right?

Ngoihgwokyàhn

Haih. Ngóh túhng ngóh sailóu	That's right. My younger brother
léuhng go yātchǎih hohk.	and I are studying together.

Jünggwokyàhn

Hohkdāk díng a?	How are you doing?
-----------------	--------------------

Ngoihgwokyàhn

Sédāk hóu yáih.	My writing is awful.
Ngóh sailóu sédāk mǎhcho, daahn-	My younger brother writes pretty
haih ngóh sédāk móuh kéuih	well, but I don't write as
gam leng.	well as he.

Jünggwokyàhn

Ní dí jih haih mǎhhaíh néih sé ga?	These characters, are they
	ones that you wrote?

Ngoihgwokyàhn

Móuh cho.	That's right.
-----------	---------------

Jünggwokyàhn

Sédāk mǎhcho ā.	They're written quite well.
Hohkdāk géi faai bo.	You learn fast!

Ngoihgwokyáhn

Sínsàang hóu jē.

It's just that the teacher is good.

A! Ngóh tèngginwah néih jyú  
Jùngchoi jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.

Oh--I hear that the Chinese food you cook is delicious.

Ngóh hóu séung gán néih hohkháh.

I'd like very much to study with you.

Jùnggwokyáhn

Néih gwojéung jē, ngóh àhdāk ge.

You praise me too much, I'm no good.

Ngoihgwokyáhn

Néih taai him laak!

You're too modest!

## II. NOTES

## A. Culture Notes

Siblings.

Brothers and sisters in Cantonese are specified according to their age in relation to oneself.

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| Ex: 1. agō | elder brother                                     |
| 2. gājē    | elder sister                                      |
| 3. sailóu  | younger brother                                   |
| 4. saimúi  | younger sister, (also: <u>múi</u> , <u>amúi</u> ) |

There is no word for 'brother' referring to one person, or 'sister' referring to one person, though there is a collective noun for 'brothers': hìngdaih, 'elder and younger brothers,' and one for 'sisters': jímuih, 'elder and younger sisters'.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Ex: 1. Néih yáuh móuh hìngdaih a?              | Do you have any brothers?<br>[elder and younger brothers]                     |
| 2. Néih yáuh móuh jímuih a?                    | Do you have any sisters?<br>[elder and younger sisters]                       |
| 3. Néih ūkkéi yáuh géidō<br>hìngdaih jímuih a? | How many brothers and sisters<br>are there in your family?<br>[at your house] |



Within the family children call their elder siblings by their rank in the family and their younger siblings by their given names.

Ex: You are the third born of five sons. You call your elder two brothers and your younger two as follows:

- #1 Daaihō                      #4 by given name.    Ex: A Mihn  
 #2 Yihō                        #5 by given name.    Ex: A Mähn  
 #3 (you)

### B. Structure Notes

#### 1. Manner patterns in Cantonese (how something is done)

The manner in which an action is carried out (fast, slow, well, badly, etc.) is expressed by two patterns: 1) V-dāk hōu Adj. = Verb in such and such a way; and 2) hōu Adj V. = Verb in such and such a way. The former is very common, the latter used with only a few adjectives.

V -dāk hōu Adj.

Ex: Kéuih hàahngdāk hōu faai.      He walks very fast. The way he walks is very fast.

hōu Adj + V.

Kéuih hōu kahnlihk dukh syù.      He studies very hard.

#### a. Verbdāk hōu Adjective = Verb in such and such a way

1) V-dāk hōu Adj is a pattern expressing the way the action of the verb is/was done, or the way the action turns/turned out.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih hàahngdāk hōu faai.      He walks fast. The way he walks is fast.  
 2. Kéuih jouhdāk taai daaih laak.      She made it too big. She made it in such a way that it was too big.

2) The affirmative, negative, and question forms operate on the adjective portion of the phrase.

Ex: sédāk hōu chingchó = writes clearly; written clearly

a	V-dāk hōu Adj.	Kéuih sédāk hōu chingchó. Ní dí jih sédāk hōu chingchó.	He writes clearly. These words are written very clearly.
n	V-dāk mhhaih géi Adjective	Ngón sédāk mhhingchó.	I don't write clearly.
q	V-dāk Adj. mhh Adj?	Néih sédāk ching mhhingchó?	Do you write clearly?

(See BC and Drills 2-14)

3) dím?, 'how?' can substitute in the adjective position in this pattern.

Ex: V-dāk díng a? How is it/was it V-ed?, How does subject V?

1. Kéuih hàahngdāk díng a? How does he walk? What is the manner in which he walks?
2. Dī béng jingdāk díng a? How did the cookies turn out? How did the cookie-making go?

(See Drill 3)

4) Subject patterns in V-dāk hóu Adj sentences

a) Loose relationship of Subject and Predicate.

In keeping with the loose relationship of subject and predicate in Chinese sentences, (see Note 6, Lesson 3), the Subject of a V-dāk hóu Adj sentence can be the performer of verb, or the thing performed upon, without any change in the verb form.

Example:

Subject	Predicate	
1. Kéuih	jouhdāk hóu ngāamjeuk.	She made it in such a way that it fits very well.
2. Gihn sām	jouhdāk hóu ngāamjeuk.	The dress is made in such a way that it fits very well.

In English the two types of subject (performer and performed upon) require the active and passive voice of the verb respectively, but in Chinese note that the same verb form is used whether the subject is the performer of the action (Kéuih above), or the object performed upon (Gihn sām above).

b) Subject types for Verb-dāk hóu Adjective sentences

In addition to performer and performed-upon discussed above, a third subject type is the SVO subject. Examples of the three types are:

Subject	Predicate	
1. Kéuih	} jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.	She made it in such a way that it is very tasty.
2. Dī choi		The food has been cooked so it is very tasty.
3. Kéuih jyú Jùngchoi		He cooks Chinese food in such a way that it is very tasty.

(See Drill 8)

## 5) Contracted form with SVO subject

Some SVO, Vdāk hóu Adjective types permit omission of the V-dāk portion, leaving the SVO subject to precede the predicate Adjective portion directly.

Compare:

1. Kéuih jā chē jādāk hóu faai. He drives fast.
2. Kéuih jā chē hóu faai. He drives fast.

(See Drill 11)

b. hóu Adj. + Verb = Verb in such and such a way

- 1) hóu Adj + V expresses how, in what manner, a V is or was done. Note that the Verb does not use dāk. Only a few adjectives use this pattern. One of them, for example, is kàhnlihk, 'industrious.'

Kéuih hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù. He studies very industriously.  
or, He is very industrious  
 in his studies.

(See Drill 15)

- 2) The hóu Adj V pattern can be rephrased with the V transposed to the center of an SVO subject, and the hóu Adj by itself forming the predicate.

Compare:

Subject	Predicate	
1. Kéuih	hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù.	He is very industrious in his studies.
2. Kéuih duhk syù	hóu kàhnlihk.	(The way) he studies is very industrious.

2. Verbal comparison forms:  $A \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{Vs} \\ \underline{Ved} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more} \\ \text{not as} \\ \text{equally} \end{array} \right\} \underline{Adj} \text{ in relation to } \underline{B}$

a. V more Adj than

- 1) A V-dāk Adj-gwo B.  $\frac{A}{\text{does/did}}$  Vs/Ved more Adj than B

(See BC and Drill 12)

- 2) A V-dāk béi B Adj.  $\frac{A}{\text{does/did}}$  Vs/Ved more Adj than B  
 (See Drill 12.a)

b. V not as Adj as

1) A V-dāk móuh B gam Adj.      A Vs/Ved not as Adj as B  
does/did.

(See BC and Drill 13)

2) A móuh B V-dāk gam Adj.      A Vs/Ved not as Adj as B

(See Drill 13 Comment)

c. V equally Adj

A V-dāk tühng B yātyeuhng      A and B V equally Adj.  
gam Adj.

(See Drill 14)

3. héisáu, 'begin.'

Another common word for 'begin' is hòichí, used interchangeably with héisáu.

4. taai, 'excessively,' 'too'

taai + Adj, 'excessively Adj.,' 'too Adj.'

taai + Adj is different in emphasis from Adj-dī, though both can be translated into English as 'too Adj.' The import of taai X is 'excessively X,' 'much too X,' whereas the import of X-dī is 'a bit on the X side,' 'a little X-er than the ideal.'

Ex: Néih taai him laak.      You're too modest!  
(excessively modest, much too modest)

Tiuh kwahn chèuhngdī.      The skirt is too long.  
(a bit longer than it should be)

(Students who have previously studied Mandarin should guard against using taai in Cantonese everywhere where tài would be appropriate in Mandarin. Oftimes where Mandarin would have tài, Cantonese has Adj-dī. The Adj-dī form in Cantonese corresponds to the Adj + (yì)dyǎn form in Mandarin, but is more widespread in use.)

## III. DRILLS

## 1. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh bàh**bā** ge Yíng-màhn hóu jéun.  
/màhmā/  
T: My father's English is very good. [accurate in pronunciation] /mother/

S: Ngóh màhmā ge Yíng-màhn hóu jéun.  
S: My mother's English is very good.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh saimú <b>í</b> ge Yíngmàhn jéun.<br>/gājē/ | 1. Ngóh gājē ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun.<br>My elder sister's English is very good.             |
| 2. Ngóh gājē ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun. /agō/           | 2. Ngóh agō ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun.<br>My elder brother's English is very good.             |
| 3. Ngóh agō ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun. /sailóu/         | 3. Ngóh sailóu ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun.<br>My <u>younger brother's</u> English is very good. |
| 4. Ngóh sailóu ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun. /go múi/      | 4. Ngóh go múi ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun.<br>My <u>younger sister's</u> English is very good.  |
| 5. Ngóh go múi ge Yíngmàn hóu jéun. /gùngyàhn/     | 5. Ngóh gùngyàhn ge Yíngmàn hóu jéun.   |

Comment: múi and saimúi both mean 'younger sister' and are interchangeable. However, as noun head in a possessive NP, saimúi can follow the possessive pronoun directly, and múi requires either the Measure go (or dí), or the subordinating ge between possessive pronoun and noun head.

Ex: Ngóh (go) saimúi (preferred without go)  
ngóh go múi (go or ge required)

## 2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh gājē sэдāk hóu chingchó.  
T: My elder sister writes very clearly.

S: Ngóh gājē sэдāk m̀h-haih géi chingchó.  
S: My elder sister doesn't write clearly, or writes unclearly.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh sailóu hohkdāk hóu lēk.<br>My younger brother is clever in his studies. | 1. Ngóh sailóu hohkdāk m̀h-haih géi lēk. |
|---|--|

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. Ngóh sailóu sédāk hóu leng.   | 2. Ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hhaih géi leng.                                       |
| + 3. Ngóh agō góngdāk hóu <u>lauhleih</u> .<br>My elder brother speaks <u>fluently</u> .   | 3. Ngóh agō góngdāk m̀hhaih géi lauhleih.                                    |
| 4. Ngóh agō hàahngdāk hóu faai.  | 4. Ngóh agō hàahngdāk m̀hhaih géi faai.                                      |
| 5. Ngóh saimúi ge béng jingdāk géi hóusihk.  | 5. Ngóh saimúi ge béng jingdāk m̀hhaih géi hóusihk.                          |
| 6. Ngóh go múi ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk géi hóu.   | 6. Ngóh go múi ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk m̀hhaih géi hóu.                       |
| + 7. Kéuih ga chē <u>hòidāk</u> hóu faai.<br>His car is <u>running</u> very fast.  | 7. Kéuih ga chē hòidāk m̀hhaih géi faai.<br>His car doesn't drive very fast. |
| +++ 8. <u>Chisó lauhdāk</u> hóu <u>gányiu</u> .<br>The <u>toilet</u> is <u>leaking</u> quite <u>seriously</u> .<br>chisó = <u>toilet</u><br><br>lauh- = to <u>leak</u><br><br>gányiu = <u>serious, important</u> | 8. Chisó lauhdāk m̀hhaih géi gányiu.<br>The toilet isn't leaking very badly. |

3. Response Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Agō sédāk dím a?<br>/hóu yáih bo/   | T: How's elder brother's writing?        |
| S: Agō sédāk hóu yáih bo.  | S: Elder brother's writing is awful.     |
| + 1. <u>Séuihàuh</u> lauhdāk dím a?<br>/hou gányiu bo/<br>How's the leak in the <u>water-pipes</u> ? | 1. Séuihàuh lauhdāk hóu gányiu bo.       |
| 2. Ngóh saimúi hohkdāk dím a?<br>/m̀hcho á/  | 2. Néih saimúi hohkdāk m̀hcho á.         |
| 3. Chisó lauhdāk dím a?<br>/m̀hhaih hóu gányiu jē/   | 3. Chisó lauhdāk m̀hhaih hóu gányiu.     |
| 4. Kéuih sailóu góngdāk dím a?<br>/hóu lauhleih bo/  | 4. Kéuih sailóu góngdāk hóu lauhleih bo. |
| 5. Agō jouhdāk dím a? /m̀hmadéi jē/  | 5. Agō jouhdāk m̀hmadéi jē.              |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. Gājē jādāk dīm a?<br>/hóu leuhnjeuhn ga/   | 6. Gājē 佢 游 水 好 游 得 几 好 嘅。   |
| 7. Kéuih yàuhdāk dīm a?<br>/hóu lēk ga/<br>How does he swim? <u>or</u><br>How's his swimming?   | 7. Kéuih yàuhdāk hóu lēk ga.<br>He swims very well. <u>or</u><br>He's clever at swimming.                                      |
| 8. Kéuih góngdāk dīm a?<br>+ /hóu <u>saisèng</u> ga/<br>How does he speak?<br>/very softly/<br><u>saisèng</u> =<br><u>small-sound; in a small voice</u> | 8. Kéuih góngdāk hóu saisèng ga.<br>He speaks very softly. <u>or</u><br>He speaks in a low ( <u>i.e.</u> ,<br>not loud) voice. |
| 9. Kéuih sédāk dīm a?<br>/béigaau chingchó/   | 9. Kéuih sédāk béigaau ching-<br>chó.  |

## 4. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Kéuih góngdāk hóu<br>lauhleih. /Yingmahn/     | T: He speaks fluently.                         |
| S: Kéuih góng Yingmahn<br>góngdāk hóu lauh-<br>leih. | S: He speaks English fluently.                 |
| 1. Kéuih hàahngdāk hóu maahn.<br>/louh/              | 1. Kéuih hàahng louh hàahngdāk<br>hóu maahn.   |
| 2. Kéuih táidāk hóu faai. /syù/                      | 2. Kéuih tái syù táidāk hóu<br>faai.           |
| 3. Kéuih yuhngdāk hóudò. /chín/                      | 3. Kéuih yuhng chín yuhngdāk<br>hóudò.         |
| 4. Kéuih góngdāk hóu chingchò.<br>/Gwokýuh/          | 4. Kéuih góng Gwokýuh góngdāk<br>hóu chingchó. |
| 5. Kéuih dádāk mhcho. /páai/                         | 5. Kéuih dá páai dádāk mhcho.                  |
| 6. Kéuih hohkdāk hóu lēk.<br>/yàuhséui/              | 6. Kéuih hohk yàuhséui hohkdāk<br>hóu lēk.     |
| 7. Kéuih jeukdāk hóu leng.<br>/sāam/                 | 7. Kéuih jeuk sāam jeukdāk<br>hóu leng.        |

## 5. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih jingdāk hōu  
hōusihk. /béng/

S: Kéuih ge béng jing-  
dāk hōu hōusihk.

T: She bakes well. [She bakes  
tasty.] /cakes/

S: Her cakes are very tasty.  
[Her cakes baked very tasty.]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih sédāk hōu chingchó.<br>/jih/<br>She writes clearly. | 1. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hōu ching-<br>chó.<br>Her handwriting is quite<br>clear. |
| 2. Kéuih góngdāk hōu làuhleih.<br>/Gwóngdùngwá/              | 2. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk<br>hōu làuhleih.                               |
| 3. Kéuih dádāk m̄hcho. /bō/                                  | 3. Kéuih ge bō dádāk m̄hcho.   |
| 4. Kéuih góngdāk hōu jéun.<br>/Yingmahn/                     | 4. Kéuih ge Yingmahn góngdāk<br>hōu jéun.                                      |
| 5. Kéuih maaihdk hōu pèhng.<br>/yéh/                         | 5. Kéuih ge yéh maaihdk hōu<br>pèhng.  |
| 6. Kéuih jouhdāk hōu ngāamjeuk.<br>/saam/                    | 6. Kéuih ge saam jouhdāk hōu<br>ngāamjeuk.                                     |
| 7. Kéuih jyúdāk hōu hōu. /yéh/                               | 7. Kéuih ge yéh jyúdāk hōu hōu.  |
| 8. Kéuih góngdāk béigaau hōu.<br>/Yingmán/                   | 8. Kéuih ge Yingmán góngdāk<br>béigaau hōu.                                    |

## 6. Expansion Drill:

Ex: T: Ngóh gājē ge béng  
jingdāk hōu hōu.  
/múi/

S: Ngóh gājē ge béng  
jingdāk hōu hōu,  
ngóh go múi dōu  
jingdāk hōu hōu.

T: My elder sister makes good  
cakes. [My elder sister's  
cakes are made very well.]

S: My elder sister makes good  
cakes, and so does my younger  
sister.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh agō ge bō dádāk m̄hcho.<br>/sailóu/<br>My elder brother plays ball<br>well. | 1. Ngóh agō ge bō dádāk m̄hcho,<br>ngóh go sailóu dōu dá-<br>dāk m̄hcho. |
| 2. Ngóh gājē júngyi dá páai.<br>/saimui/  | 2. Ngóh gājē júngyi dá páai,<br>ngóh saimui dōu júngyi dá.               |
| 3. Ngóh mähmā séung heui Yahtbún.<br>/néui/   | 3. Ngóh mähmā séung heui Yaht-<br>bún, ngóh go néui dōu<br>séung heui.   |
| 4. Ngóh bàhbā júngyi tái dihnsih.<br>/jái/  | 4. Ngóh bàhbā júngyi tái dihn-<br>sih, ngóh go jái dōu                   |



5. Ngoh gājē séung hohk yàuh-séui. /múi/      5. Ngoh gājē séung hohk yàuh-séui, ngoh go múi dōu séung hohk.
- júngyi tái.

## 7. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Ex: 1. T: Kéuih ge béng jingdāk hóu hóusihk. /negative/</p> <p>S: Kéuih ge béng jingdāk mhhaih géi hóusihk.</p>   | <p>T: Her cookies are very well made. <u>or</u> Her cookies are very good.</p> <p>S: Her cookies aren't very well made. <u>or</u> Her cookies aren't very tasty.</p>  |
| <p>2. T: Kéuih ge béng jingdāk hóu hóusihk. /question/</p> <p>S: Kéuih ge béng jingdāk hóu mhhousihk a?</p>  | <p>T: Her cookies are very good.</p> <p>S: Are her cookies good?</p>  |
| <p>1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk hóu hóu. /negative/</p> <p>2. Kéuih ga chē hàahngdāk hóu faai. /question/</p> <p>3. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu leng. /negative/</p> <p>4. Kéuih dī gafē jingdāk hóu hóuyám. /question/</p> <p>5. Ní ga bāsi hòidāk hóu faai. /negative/</p> <p>6. Go chisó lauhdāk hóu gányiu. /question/</p> | <p>1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk mhhaih géi hóu.</p> <p>2. Kéuih ga chē hàahngdāk faai mhfai a?</p> <p>3. Kéuih ge jih sédāk mhhaih géi leng.</p> <p>4. Kéuih dī gafē jingdāk hóu mhhóuyám a?</p> <p>5. Ní ga bāsi hòidāk mhhaih géi faai.</p> <p>6. Go chisó lauhdāk gán mhgányiu a?</p> |

## 8. Transformation Drill: Transform the cue sentences into question sentences.

Ex: T: Kéuih sé jih sédāk  
m̄hchǐngchó.

T: Her words are not very clearly  
written.

S: Kéuih sé jih sédāk  
chǐng m̄hchǐngchó  
a?

S: Are her words clearly written?

+ 1. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk hóu  
saisèng.  
(góng yéh =  
say-things, i.e., to talk)

1. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk  
sai m̄hsaisèng a?

2. Kéuih yàuhséui yàuhdāk hóu  
lèk.

2. Kéuih yàuhséui yàuhdāk lèk  
m̄hlèk a?

3. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá góng-  
dāk hóu leuhnjeuhn.

3. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá góng-  
dāk leuhn m̄hleuhnjeuhn a?

4. Kéuih jǐng chāan jǐngdāk  
m̄h hóusihk.

4. Kéuih jǐng chāan jǐngdāk  
hóu m̄h hóusihk a?

5. Kéuih hàahng louh hàahngdāk  
hóu maahn.

5. Kéuih hàahng louh hàahngdāk  
maahn m̄hmaahn a?

## 9. Alteration Drill: Change from an NP subject to an SVO subject.

Ex: T: Kéuih ge jih sédāk  
hóu hóu.

T: His handwriting is very nice.

S: Kéuih sé jih sédāk  
hóu hóu.

S: He writes a nice hand.

1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk  
géi hóu.

1. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá  
góngdāk géi hóu.

2. Kéuih ge náai dádāk hóu faai.

2. Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu  
faai.

3. Kéuih ge bēng jǐngdāk hóu  
hóusihk.

3. Kéuih jǐng bēng jǐngdāk  
hóu hóusihk.

4. Kéuih ge jih sédāk m̄hcho.

4. Kéuih sé jih sédāk m̄hcho.

5. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk m̄hlàuh-  
leih.

5. Kéuih góng wá góngdāk m̄h-  
làuhleih.

6. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk m̄hchǐng-  
chó.

6. Kéuih góng wá góngdāk  
m̄hchǐngchó.

## 10. Alteration Drill:

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih jing chāan      T: She cooks meals well.  
           jingdāk hōu hōu.

+ S: Kéuih hōu wúih      S: She's a terrific cook.  
           jing chāan.                      [very able cook meal]  
           (wúih =  
           can, is able to,  
           capable of...  
           hōu wúih =  
           does a good job  
           of ...)

2. T: Kéuih ge chāan      T: His meals are well prepared.  
           jingdāk hōu hōu.

S: Kéuih hōu wúih      S: He's a terrific cook.  
           jing chāan.

1. Kéuih máaih yéh máaih dāk  
           hōu hōu.

1. Kéuih hōu wúih máaih yéh.  
           She really knows how to  
           buy things.  
           (for example, she gets a  
           good price, or she selects  
           the good and leaves the  
           bad, etc.)

2. Kéuih yàuh séui yàuh dāk hōu  
           hōu.

2. Kéuih hōu wúih yàuh séui.

3. Kéuih ge jih sé dāk hōu hōu.

3. Kéuih hōu wúih sé jih.

4. Kéuih ge sāam jōuh dāk hōu hōu.

4. Kéuih hōu wúih jōuh sāam.

5. Kéuih ge bēng jing dāk hōu hōu.

5. Kéuih hōu wúih jing bēng.

6. Kéuih dá bō dādāk hōu hōu.

6. Kéuih hōu wúih dá bō.

7. Kéuih ge páai dādāk hōu hōu.

7. Kéuih hōu wúih dá páai.

8. Kéuih paak chē paak dāk hōu  
           hōu.

8. Kéuih hōu wúih paak chē.

a. Repeat 1 - 4 as negative.

b. Repeat 5 - 8 as question.

## 11. Reduction Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih jà chē jādāk  
hóu faai.

T: He drives very fast.  
[He (regarding) driving a  
car, drives very fast.]

S: Kéuih jà chē hóu  
faai.

S: He drives very fast.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Gājē duhk syù duhkdāk hóu lēk.              | 1. Gājē duhk syù hóu lēk.               |
| 2. Gājē góng yéh góngdāk hóu<br>lauhleih.      | 2. Gājē góng yéh hóu lauhleih.          |
| 3. Gājē sihk faahn sihk dāk hóu<br>faai.       | 3. Gājē sihk faahn hóu faai.            |
| 4. Gājē gaau syù gaau dāk hóu<br>chingchó.     | 4. Gājē gaau syù hóu chingchó.          |
| 5. Gājē hàahng louh hàahng dāk<br>hóu maahn.   | 5. Gājē hàahng louh hóu maahn.          |
| 6. Gājē jyú yéh jyú dāk hóu hóu-<br>sihk.      | 6. Gājē jyú yéh hóu hóu sihk.           |
| 7. Kéuih jyú Jùngchoi jyú dāk<br>hóu hóu sihk. | 7. Kéuih jyú Jùngchoi hóu hóu-<br>sihk. |

Comment: The form without Vdāk is suitable in some cases, but not all. We give it to you here for recognition, but advise you not to make up a sentence on this pattern unless you have heard someone say it.

## 12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih sé jih sé dāk  
hóu chingchó.

T: He writes very clearly. or  
His handwriting is very clear.

S: Kéuih sé jih sé dāk  
chingchó gwo ngóh.

S: His handwriting is clearer  
than mine. or  
He writes clearer than I.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Agō góng wá góng dāk hóu<br>lauhleih.       | 1. Agō góng wá góng dāk lauh-<br>leih gwo ngóh.      |
| 2. Ngóh gājē dá páai dádāk hóu<br>lēk.         | 2. Ngóh gājē dá páai dádāk<br>lēk gwo ngóh.          |
| 3. Mähmā máaih yéh máaih dāk hóu<br>pèhng.     | 3. Mähmā máaih yéh máaih dāk<br>pèhng gwo ngóh.      |
| 4. Gājē jà chē jādāk hóu maahn.                | 4. Gājē jà chē jādāk maahn gwo<br>ngóh.              |
| 5. Ngóh sailóu yàuh séui yàuh dāk<br>hóu faai. | 5. Ngóh sailóu yàuh séui yàuh-<br>dāk faai gwo ngóh. |

6. Ngóh go múi héisàn héidāk hóu jóu.      6. Ngóh go múi héisàn héidāk jóu gwo ngóh.
7. Ngóh sīnsàng yám bējáu yám-dāk hóudò.  
He drinks a lot of beer. or  
He is capable of drinking a lot of beer. He can drink a lot of beer.
7. Ngóh sīnsàng yám bējáu yámdāk dò gwo ngóh.
- a. Repeat with teacher cueing as before, students responding with the following type of comparison:
- T: Kéuih séjih sédāk hóu chingchó.      He writes very clearly.
- S: Kéuih séjih béi ngóh chingchó.      He writes more clearly than I.
- Comment: With the béi verbal comparison, the following variations are also possible:
1. Kéuih sé jih sédāk béi ngóh chingchó.      He writes more clear than I.
2. Kéuih sédāk béi ngóh chingchó.      He writes more clearly than I.

## 13. Expansion Drill

- Ex: T: Kéuih góng yéh góng-dāk mhláuhleih.      T: He doesn't speak fluently.
- S: Kéuih góng yéh góng-dāk móuh ngóh gam láuhleih.      S: He doesn't speak as fluently as I.
1. Kéuih saimúí dá páai dádāk mhlēk.      1. Kéuih saimúí dá páai dá dāk móuh ngóh gam lēk.
2. Ngóh sailóu sé jih sédāk mhleng.      2. Ngóh sailóu sé jih sédāk móuh ngóh gam leng.
3. Kéuih gājē duhk syù duhk dāk mchíngchó.      3. Kéuih gājē duhk syù duhk dāk móuh ngóh gam chingchó.
4. Kéuih agō góng yéh góngdāk mhhóu.  
His choice of words isn't good.      4. Kéuih agō góng yéh góngdāk móuh ngóh gam hóu.

Comment: An alternate form of the above pattern is:  
A móuh B V-dāk gam Adj. A doesn't/didn't V as Adj as B.

## 14. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih ge béng jing-dāk hóu hóusihk.

T: Her cookies are very good.

S: Ngóh ge béng jing-dāk tühng kéuih ge yátyeuhng gam hóusihk.

S: My cookies are as good as hers. or  
My cookies are as well made as hers.

1. Kéuih ga chē hàahngdāk hóu faai.

1. Ngóh ga chē hàahngdāk tühng kéuih ga yátyeuhng gam faai.

2. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk hóu hóu.

2. Ngóh ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk tühng kéuih yátyeuhng gam hóu.

3. Kéuih go bíu hàahngdāk hóu jéun.  
My watch runs accurately; keeps good time.

3. Ngóh go bíu hàahngdāk tühng kéuih g yátyeuhng gam jéun.

+ hàahng =  
runs (of watches)

4. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu leng.

4. Ngóh ge jih sédāk tühng kéuih yátyeuhng gam leng.

5. Kéuih ge Yíngmàhn góngdāk hóu làuhleih.

5. Ngóh ge Yíngmàhn góngdāk tühng kéuih yátyeuhng gam làuhleih.

6. Kéuih ge Gwokýuh hohkdāk hóu lèk.

6. Ngóh ge Gwokýuh hohkdāk tühng kéuih yátyeuhng gam lèk.

## 15. Transformation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu hóu.  
/question/

T: He plays mahjong very well.  
/question/

S: Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu mhhóu a?

S: Does he play mahjong well?

2. T: Kéuih ge páai dádāk hóu hóu.  
/negative/

T: His mahjong game is quite good. /negative/

S: Kéuih ge páai dá-dāk mhhaih géi hóu.

S: His mahjong game isn't very good.

3. T: Kéuih dá páai dádāk mhhaih

T: He doesn't play mahjong at high speed. /affirmative/

gēi faai.  
/affirmative/

S: Kéuih dá páai  
dádāk hóu faai.

S: He plays mahjong at high speed.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih m̄hahí gēi wúih góng<br>Gwokyúh. /affirmative/       | 1. Kéuih hóu wúih góng Gwokyúh.                      |
| 2. Kéuih ge jih sēdāk hóu leng.<br>/negative/                 | 2. Kéuih ge jih sēdāk m̄hahí<br>gēi leng.            |
| 3. Kéuih yáuh séui yáuh dāk hóu<br>faai. /question/           | 3. Kéuih yáuh séui yáuh dāk faai<br>m̄hfaai a?       |
| 4. Kéuih máaih yéh máaih dāk<br>hóu pèhng. /question/         | 4. Kéuih máaih yéh máaih dāk<br>pèhng m̄hpèhng a?    |
| 5. Kéuih ge wá góng dāk m̄hahí<br>gēi chingchó. /affirmative/ | 5. Kéuih ge wá góng dāk hóu<br>chingchó.             |
| 6. Kéuih góng yéh góng dāk hóu<br>daaih sèng. /negative/      | 6. Kéuih góng yéh góng dāk<br>m̄hahí gēi daaih sèng. |

### 16. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: Néih túhng bínggō  
kínggái a?

A: Who are you chatting with?

B: Túhng ngóh go múi.

B: With my younger sister.

A: Néihdeih kíng mē-  
yéh a?

A: What are you chatting about?

B: Ngóhdeih kínggháh  
heui bíndouh hohk  
Yíngmáhn jē.

B: We're talking about where we  
went to study English; that's  
all. (or Where we are going  
for studying English)

1. A. ....?

1. A. Néih túhng bínggō kínggái  
a?

B. ....sailóu.

B. Túhng ngóh sailóu.

A. ....?

A. Néihdeih kíng mēyéh a?

B. ....kínggháh heui bíndouh  
yáuh séui.....

B. Ngóhdeih kínggháh heui  
bíndouh yáuh séui jē.

2. A. ....?

2. A. Néih túhng bínggō kínggái  
a?

B. ....saimúi.

B. Túhng ngóh saimúi.

A. ....?

A. Néihdeih kíng mēyéh a?

B. ....heui bíndouh léuih-  
hàhng.....

B. Ngóhdeih kínggháh heui  
bíndouh léuih hàhng jē.

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 3. A. ....?                     | 3. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái a?             |
| B. ....gājē.                    | B. Tùhng ngóh gājē.                           |
| A. ....?                        | A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a?                     |
| B. ....heui bīndouh tái hei.... | B. Ngóhdeih kīngháh heui bīndouh tái hei jē.  |
| 4. A. ....?                     | 4. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái a?             |
| B. ....agō.                     | B. Tùhng ngóh agō.                            |
| A. ....?                        | A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a?                     |
| B. ....gàmyaht ge tīnhei....    | B. Ngóhdeih kīngháh gàm-yaht ge tīnhei jē.    |
| 5. A. ....?                     | 5. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái a?             |
| B. ....màhmā.                   | B. Tùhng ngóh màhmā.                          |
| A. ....?                        | A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a?                     |
| B. ....heui bīndouh dá páai.... | B. Ngóhdeih kīngháh heui bīndouh dá páai jē.  |
| 6. A. ....?                     | 6. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái a?             |
| B. ....bàhbā.                   | B. Tùhng ngóh bàhbā.                          |
| A. ....?                        | A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a?                     |
| B. ....heui bīndouh làuhhohk... | B. Ngóhdeih kīngháh heui bīndouh làuhhohk jē. |

## 17. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Néih géisih héi-sáu hohk jyú faahn ga? /sahp seui góján, jauh/ T: When did you start learning to cook? /as early as when I was 10/  
 S: Ngóh sah p seui góján jauh héisáu hohk jyú faahn ge laak. S: When I was 10, I started to learn to cook.
2. T: Néih géisih héi-sáu hohk jyú faahn ga? /git-jófan, sinji/ T: When did you start learning to cook? /not until I got married/  
 S: Ngóh gitjófan sin-ji héisáu hohk jyú faahn ga ja. S: When I got married, I finally started learning to cook.



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Néih géisih héisáu hohk yàuh-séui ga? /duhk daaihohk góján, sinji/<br/> 2. Néih gājē géisih héisáu hohk ja chē ga? /daaihohk bātjō yihp, jauh/<br/> 3. Kéuih saimúi géisih héisáu jough sih ga? /sahp chāt seui góján, jauh/<br/> 4. Kéuih agō géisih héisáu maaih syū ga? /léuhng go yuht<br/> + <u>jichihn</u>, sinji/<br/> (...<u>jichihn</u> = <u>ago</u>)<br/> 5. Néih go jái géisih héisáu hohk hàahng louh ga? /sahp go yuht, jauh/<br/> 6. Hèunggóng géisih héisáu yáuh Jùngmàhn Daaihohk ga?<br/> + /gēi nihh <u>chihn</u>, sinji.../<br/> (-<u>chihn</u> = <u>ago</u>)</p> | <p>1. Ngóh duhk daaihohk góján, sinji héisáu hohk yàuh-séui ga ja.<br/> 2. Ngóh gājē daaihohk bātjō yihp jauh héisáu hohk jà chē ge laak.<br/> 3. Kéuih saimúi sah p chāt seui góján, jauh héisáu jough sih ge laak.<br/> 4. Kéuih agō léuhng go yuht jichihn sinji héisáu maaih syū ga ja.<br/> 5. Ngóh go jái sah p go yuht jauh héisáu hohk hàahng louh ge laak.<br/> 6. Hèunggóng gēi nihh chihn sinji héisáu yáuh Jùngmàhn Daaihohk ga ja.<br/> It was only several years ago that H.K. began to have Chinese University.</p> |
|--|--|

## 18. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>Ex: T: Ngóh saimúi hohk sé jih. /kàhnlihk/<br/> + S: Ngóh saimúi hóu kàhnlihk hohk sé jih.</p>   | <p>T: My younger sister is learning to write. /industrious/<br/> S: My younger sister works hard at learning to write.<br/> [My younger sister industriously learns to write.]</p>  |
| <p>+ 1. Ngóh sailóu duhk syù. /láahn/<br/> My younger brother is studying. /lazy, idle/<br/> 2. Ngóh gājē sé jih. /láahn/<br/> 3. Ngóh go múi hohk Yíngmàhn. /kàhnlihk/<br/> 4. Ngóh bàhbā jough sih. /kàhnlihk/<br/> + 5. Ngóh agō jà chē. /siusām/<br/> [careful]</p> | <p>1. Ngóh sailóu hóu láahn duhk syù.<br/> My younger brother is lazy in his studying.<br/> 2. Ngóh gājē hóu láahn sé jih.<br/> 3. Ngóh go múi hóu kàhnlihk hohk Yíngmàhn.<br/> 4. Ngóh bàhbā hóu kàhnlihk jough sih.<br/> 5. Ngóh agō hóu siusām jà chē.<br/> My elder brother is driving carefully.</p> |

6. Ngóh saimúì yàuhséui. /síusām/      6. Ngóh saimúì hóu síusām  
yàuhséui.

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) síuhóhk = elementary school
- 2) síhk ngaanjau = síhk ngaan = 'eat lunch'

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. My younger brother speaks Cantonese better than I.
2. These characters are not written very clearly.
3. Does your elder sister speak Cantonese fluently?
4. I hear you cook Chinese food very well.
5. Her handwriting is terrible.
6. Is your watch running on time?
7. The water is dripping [leaking] pretty badly.
8. She speaks in a very small voice.
9. He drives a car too fast.
10. Two years ago he began to study writing Chinese characters.
11. Who are you chatting with? What are you talking about?
12. My elder brother is very industrious in his studies.
13. When did you begin studying Cantonese?

B. And he replies:

1. You're too modest--you speak very well.
2. Who was it that wrote them?
3. She speaks more fluently than I do.
4. You praise me too much--I'm no good!
5. She's just begun to learn to write Chinese characters.
6. Running right on time--it's now 4:15.
7. Can you fix it?
8. Ask her to speak a little louder.
9. He doesn't drive as fast as my younger brother.
10. He writes pretty well now [not bad].
11. With my friend. We're talking about studying Cantonese, that's all.
12. Is your younger brother also industrious in his studies?
13. It was just three months ago that I began.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 14. Does your younger sister swim well?                      | 14. Not bad, but she swims not as well as my elder sister. |
| 15. The way I swim is terrible!                              | 15. Not so! You swim pretty well.                          |
| 16. He plays mahjong very fast.                              | 16. Yes--. I don't play as fast as he.                     |
| 17. My father drives a car carefully.                        | 17. Does your mother drive carefully?                      |
| 18. That child is quite smart but he is lazy in his studies. | 18. His elder brother is also in his studies.              |

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 22

- |                                |         |   |
|--------------------------------|---------|---|
| 1. āamāam <u>or</u> ngāamngāam | adv:    | just, only a moment ago   |
| 2. chisó                       | n:      | toilet  |
| 3. chíhn                       | bf:     | ago   |
| 4. -dāk...                     | Vsuf:   | grammatical word coming between verb and following verbal complement which tells how verb is done, or what result of verb is. |
| 5. gān                         | CV:     | from as in: learn from someone  |
| 6. gányiu                      | adj:    | important, serious  |
| 7. góng yéh                    | VO:     | say things, i.e. to talk  |
| 8. Gwojéung la.                | Ph:     | 'You praise me too much.' [response to compliment]  |
| 9. hàahng                      | v:      | run (of watches)  |
| 10. héisáu                     | AuxV/V: | begin   |
| 11. hím                        | adj:    | modest  |
| 12. hòì (chē)                  | V(O):   | drive (a car)   |
| 13. hóu wáih <u>V</u>          | Ph:     | does a good job of <u>V</u> -ing, is good at <u>V</u> -ing  |
| 14. ...jíchíhn                 | Ph:     | ...ago (when used after numbered time expression, as in '3 years ago')  |
| 15. jih                        | n:      | written word, written figure, Chinese character   |
| 16. kàhnlihk                   | adj:    | industrious   |
| 17. kǐnggái                    | v:      | have a chat, talk casually  |
| 18. láahn                      | adj:    | lazy, idle  |
| 19. lauh                       | v:      | leak  |
| 20. làuhleih                   | adj:    | fluent in speech, fluently  |
| 21. leuhnjeuhn                 | adj:    | clumsy, awkward, stupid   |

---

22. mǎhmádeí	Ph: middling, sloppy, indifferent, so-so, just scrapes by
23. múi	n: younger sister
24. ngāamngāam	adv: just, only a moment ago
25. sailóu	TA/N: younger brother
26. saisèng	adj: quiet-voiced, soft (opposite of loud) in regard to speech [small-sound]
27. sé jih	VO: to write [write words]
28. séuihàuh	n: water faucet, water pipes
29. síusām	adj: careful
30. taai	adv: too, excessively
31. yáih	adj: terrible, awful

---

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(A tourist in a hotel in Hong Kong has rung for the roomboy:)

sihjái

roomboy

Sihjái

fànfu

instructions

Sínsàang yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

Yes sir--you called? [what instructions does the gentleman have?]

Yáuhhaak

yáuhhaak

tourist

sái

wash

Ngóh yáuh dī sām yiu sái ge.

I have some clothes to be washed.

Sihjái

Hóu--béi ngóh jauh dāk laak.

Fine--give them to me and they'll be done.

Yáuhhaak

hauhyaht

the day after tomorrow

jiujóu

morning

Ngóh hauhyaht jiujóu yiu jáu laak.

I'm leaving the day after tomorrow in the morning.

sáidākchit

able to get (it) washed in time

Sái mhsáidākchit nē?

Will you be able to get them washed in time?

Sihjái

Dāk gé.

Yes indeed.

hahjau

afternoon

níngfàan

carry back

níngfàanlaih

bring back

hahjau níngfàanlaih

bring (it) back in the afternoon

Tíngyaht hahjáu yātdihng níngfàanlaih béi néih.

We'll bring it back to you tomorrow afternoon without fail.

Yàuhhaak

Gám, m̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh nǐng-  
chēutheui lā.

(The tourist points out a spot on one of the garments:)

yan  
Nǐdoh yáuh go yan--  
gònjehng  
sáidāk gònjehng  
m̀hjí...?  
M̀hjí sái m̀hsáidāk gònjehng nē?

In that case, please take them  
[away for me].

spot  
There's a spot here--  
clean  
able to be washed clean  
I wonder...?  
I wonder whether you can get it  
clean?

Sihjái

hóu chíh  
Mmm...Hóu chíh m̀hdāk bo.  
Siháh lā!

it seems, probably, it looks  
like ...  
Mmm...It looks like it can't be  
done--  
But we'll give it a try.

Yàuhhaak

A--juhng yáuh!  
tong  
tong chēuhng fu  
M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh tongjó  
nǐtiuh chēuhng fu lā.

Oh--there's something else!  
iron, press  
press trousers  
Please get these trousers  
pressed for me.

Sihjái

Hóu aak.  
dāan  
séfàan  
Dāng ngòh séfàan jèung dāan bēi  
néih lā.  
Juhng yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

Yes sir.  
list  
write and return  
I'll write you a list.  
Anything else, sir? [In addition  
what instructions do you  
have?]

Yàuhhaak

fan or fangaau  
Ngòh yǐngā fan la.  
séng

sleep  
I'm going to sleep now.  
wake up

giuséng	wake (someone) up, be waked up [call-wake]
tíngyaht jiujóu	tomorrow morning
tíngjiu	tomorrow morning
tíngjàu giuséng ngóh	wake me up in the morning
Mhòì néih tíngjiu chāt díim bun	Please wake me up tomorrow
giuséng ngóh lā.	morning at 7:30
jóu	early
Ngóh yiu jóudī chēut gāai.	I want to go out a little early. (i.e., earlier than customarily)

B. Recapitulation:Sihjái

Sínsàang yáuh mēyóh fānfu a?

Yes sir--you called? [what  
instructions' does the  
gentleman have?]Yáuhhaak

Ngóh yáuh dí sām yiu sái ge.

I have some clothes to be  
washed.Sihjái

Hóu--béi ngóh jauh dāk laak.

Fine--give them to me and  
they'll be taken care of.YáuhhaakNgóh hauhyaht jiujóu yiu jáu  
laak.I'm leaving day after tomorrow  
in the morning.

Sái mhsáidākchit nē?

Will you be able to get them  
washed in time?Sihjái

Dāk gé.

Yes indeed.

Tíngyaht hahjau yātdihng  
níngfàanlāih béi néih.We'll bring it back to you  
tomorrow afternoon without  
fail.

Yàuhhaak

Gám, m̀h̀gòì néih tùhng ngòh  
níngchēutheui lā.

Níidouh yáuh go yan--M̀h̀jǐ sáì  
m̀hsáidāk gònjehng nē?

Sihjǎi

Mmm...Hóu chíh m̀hdāk bo.

Siháh ㄤ

Yàuhhaak

A--juhng yáuh!  
M̀h̀gòì néih tùhng ngòh tongjǒ  
nítiuh chēuhng fu lā.

Sihjǎi

Hóu aak.  
Dáng ngòh séfàan jèung dāan  
bái néih lā.  
Juhng yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

Yàuhhaak

Ngòh yíhḡ fan la.  
M̀h̀gòì néih tǐngjiu chāt díu bun  
giuséng ngòh lā.  
Ngòh yiu jóudí chēut gāi.

In that case, please take them  
[away for me].

There's a spot here--I wonder  
whether you can get it clean?

Mmm... It looks like it can't  
be done.

But we'll give it a try.

Oh--there's something else!  
Please get these trousers  
pressed for me.

Yes, sir.  
I'll write you a list.

Anything else, sir? [In  
addition what instructions do  
you have?]

I'm going to bed now.  
Please wake me up tomorrow  
morning at 7:30  
I want to go out a little  
early.



## II. NOTES

## A. Culture Notes.

1. fànfu, (N/V) 'instructions, orders (given by a superior to a subordinate);' 'to order, instruct (someone to do something)'

The term fànfu is most frequently encountered said by a subordinate to a superior, particularly in the fixed phrase: 'Yáuh mēyéh fànfu?', 'what instructions (or orders) do you have?' From a superior to a subordinate it is not used in direct address, being considered too peremptory. In direct address, instructions are phrased in courtesy forms.

- Ex: 1. M̀hgòì néih t̀hng ngóh cheunghòì    Would you please change a hundred  
jeung baak mán jí.                            dollar bill for me.
2. Kéuih fànfu ngóh t̀hng kéuih            He instructed me to change a  
cheunghòì jeung baak mán jí.            hundred dollar bill for him.

2. hahjau, 'afternoon.' Another word for afternoon is hahng. (ng)aanjau is also used by some people to mean 'afternoon,' but other people mean 'around noontime' when they say ngaanjau. (sikh ngaanjau, sikh ngaan is 'eat noontime meal,' 'eat lunch'). Twelve o'clock noon is expressed as ngaanjau sahpyih dím, and twelve midnight as bun yeh sahpyih dím.

## B. Structure Notes.

1.  $V\text{-}d\bar{a}k\text{-}\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{Adj.} \\ V.\text{suf} \end{array}\right\}$  = 'can V so that  $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{Adj.} \\ V.\text{suf} \end{array}\right\}$  occurs,' 'can  $\left\{\begin{array}{l} V\text{-Adj} \\ V\text{-Vsuf} \end{array}\right\}$ ,

The above represents how the dāk, 'can' construction is used with two-part verb constructions of performance+achievement.

You remember from Lesson 20 encountering the dāk 'can' pattern with the single verb: V-dāk, 'can V.' For example:

1. Kéuih nīpáai m̀hheuidāk.            He can't get away these few days.
2. Ga ch̀è h̀ahngdāk ga-- Néih    The car can run-- you simply haven't  
meih hòi sosih ja!                    turned on the ignition!

(See Drill 15)

With a two-part verb dāk comes between the two parts, the first part being the performance, the second part the outcome which can or cannot be achieved.

Examples:

1. Performance verb + achievement suffix, with dāk becomes V-dak-Vsuf

Ex: jíng hóu = [work on + successful outcome], i.e., fix, fix so that it is OK

jíng dāk hóu = can be repaired

	Forms	Examples	English Equivalents
p	V-dāk-hóu	Fong sām laak- néih ga chē hóu íh <u>jíng dāk hóu.</u>	Don't worry-- your car can be fixed.
n	m̄hV-dāk-hóu  or V-m̄h hóu	Ga chē taai gauh-- <u>m̄h jíng dāk hóu.</u>  or ... <u>jíng m̄h hóu.</u>	The car is too old-- it can't be fixed.
q	Vm̄hV-dāk-hóu	Ga chē gam gauh-- juhng <u>jíng m̄h jíng- dāk hóu a?</u>	The car is so old-- can it still be repaired?

(See Drill 17)

2. Performance verb + achievement Adj, with dāk becomes V-dāk-Adj.

sái gòn jehng = wash (so that it becomes) clean

sái dāk gòn jehng = can be washed clean, can be cleaned

	Forms	Examples	English Equivalents
p	V-dāk Adj.	Ngóh nám ní dī yéh <u>sái dāk gòn jehng.</u>	I think this stuff can be cleaned. [washed clean]
n	m̄hV-dāk Adj.  or V-m̄h Adj.	Ngóh nám ní dī yéh <u>m̄h sái dāk gòn jehng.</u>  or ... <u>sái m̄h gòn jehng</u>	I don't think this stuff can be cleaned.
q	Vm̄hV-dāk Adj	Néih nám ní dī yéh <u>sái m̄h sái dāk gòn jehng</u> a?	Do you think this stuff can be cleaned?

Note that there are two alternate forms of the negative of the V-dāk-achievement pattern. m̄h either precedes the whole V-dāk-achievement phrase, or it supplants dāk in the phrase:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{m̄h} + \text{Verb-dāk-Adj} \\ \text{Suffix} \end{array} \right\} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{l} \text{m̄hV-dāk-Adj/Suf} \\ \text{V-m̄h -Adj/Suf} \end{array}$$

2. Use of V-dāk (can V) construction in VO phrases.

In a Verb-Object phrase V-dāk is rendered as V-dāk O, 'can VO,' 'able to VO.'

Ex: paak chē = park a car  
paakdāk chē = can park a car

a	Hauhbihn paakdāk chē.	You can park a car in the back. (i.e., there's space for parking there)
n	Chihnbihn m̄hpaakdāk chē.	You can't park a car in front. (i.e., there's no space)
q	Chihnbihn paak m̄hpaakdāk chē a?	Can you park a car in front? (i.e., is there space?)

(See Drill 16)

3. -jǒ, as verb suffix in imperative sentence: V-jǒ, 'get V done'

a. In an imperative sentence -jǒ conveys the meaning 'get the action accomplished.'

Ex: M̄ngòì, néih t̄uhng ngóh Please wash the clothes for me. (or)  
saijǒ dī sām. Please have the clothes washed for me.

(See BC and Drills 6, 14)

b. Inasmuch as Cantonese doesn't differentiate active and passive voice, a Verb-jǒ imperative sentence may mean 'do it yourself,' or it may mean 'have someone else do it.' cf. example sentence above.

c. A Verb-jǒ imperative sentence requires an object. For this type of sentence a pronoun object is permitted.

Ex: Níidouh yáuh yāt jeung baak Here's a hundred dollar bill--  
mān jí; m̄ngoi neih t̄uhng please change it for me.  
ngóh cheungjǒ kéuih lā.

(See BC and Drills 6, 14)

4. ngaan (var:aan), 'late (in the daytime)' and yeh, 'late (in the evening)' and jóu, 'early'
- a. When bound to -dī, the implication is 'earlier (or later) than usual or expected'
- Ex: Ngóhdeih gámáahn jóudī      We'd like dinner a little early  
sìhk faahn lā.                      tonight. (Said by housewife to  
her cook)
- b. jóu, ngaan and yeh may occupy the position of Time When words before the Verb or they may follow the verb, in which case -dāk is suffixed to the verb, making the phrase into the form of the V-dāk hóu Adjective phrase of manner. (The pré-verb position is favored for sentences of non-past reference.)
- Ex: 1. Ngóhdeih kàhmmáahn hóu      We ate very late last night.  
yeh sìhk faahn.  
2. Ngóhdeih kàhmmáahn              We ate very late last night.  
sìhk dāk hóu yeh.  
3. Ngóhdeih gámáahn hóu              We're going to eat very early  
jóu sìhk faahn.                      this evening.
- c. ngaan and yeh do not mean 'late' in the sense 'unpunctual,' 'not on time.' The word for 'unpunctual' is chih.

(See Drill 9.4)

5. Reference charts for morning, noon and night.

- a. Sections of the day.

morning:	jíujóu, <u>or</u> jíutàuhjóu
noon:	(ng)aanjau
afternoon:	hahjau
night:	yehmáahn, <u>or</u> máahntàuhhaak

- b. Sections of the day for yesterday, today, and tomorrow.

	Yesterday	Today	Tomorrow
	kàhmyaht chàhmyaht	gàmyaht	tíngyaht
morning:	kàhmyaht jíu	gámjìu	tíngjìu
noon:	kàhmyaht (ng)aanjau	gàmyaht (ng)aanjau	tíngyaht (ng)aanjau
afternoon:	kàhmyaht hahjau	gàmyaht hahjau	tíngyaht hahjau
night:	kàhmmáahn	gámáahn	tíngmáahn

6. jiujiu, 'every morning' and maahnmaahn, 'every evening'

The boundwords jiu, 'morning' and maahn, 'evening' pattern like duplicated Measures to mean 'each and every \_\_\_\_.' Thus, jiujiu is 'every morning,' and maahnmaahn, 'every evening.'

Ex: Ngoh jiujiu tai joubou, I read the morning paper every  
maahnmaahn tai maahnbou. morning and the evening paper  
every evening.

(See Drill 13)

7. yauh 'have,' in pivotal construction with personal subject: S yauh SVO

In the pivotal construction the object of the first verb is the subject of the second one. We have encountered this pattern before (in Lesson 10) with a PW as subject of the whole sentence: PW yauh SVO. Example: Godouh yauh go yahn da dihnwa, Over there is a man talking on the phone.

In this lesson we have an example of a pivotal construction with a personal noun/pronoun as subject of the sentence.

Ex: 1. Ngoh yauh di sam yiu sai ge. I have clothes needing washing.  
2. Ngoh yauh go pahngyauh sik I have a friend who can speak  
gong Gwongdungwa. Cantonese.

(See BC)

## III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first two sentences after the teacher, then substitute as directed:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>sái sām</u> .<br>She washes clothes everyday.                       | 1. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>sái sām</u> .          |
| 2. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>jiujóu sái sām</u> .<br>She washes clothes in the morning everyday. | 2. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>jiujóu sái sām</u> .   |
| + 3. / <u>ngaanjau</u> / (or <u>aanjau</u> )<br>( <u>morning</u> ; <u>around noon</u> )  | 3. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>ngaanjau sái sām</u> . |
| 4. / <u>hahjau</u> /<br>( <u>afternoon</u> )   | 4. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>hahjau sái sām</u> .   |
| + 5. / <u>yehmáahn</u> /<br>( <u>night</u> )   | 5. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>yehmáahn sái sām</u> . |
- 

2. Substitution Drill:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>fàanheui</u> .<br>He went back yesterday.    | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>fàanheui</u> .          |
| + 2. / <u>kàhmyaht jiu</u> /<br>( <u>yesterday morning</u> )      | 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>jiu fàanheui</u> .      |
| + 3. / <u>kàhmyaht ngaanjau</u> /<br>( <u>yesterday noon</u> )    | 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>ngaanjau fàanheui</u> . |
| + 4. / <u>kàhmyaht hahjau</u> /<br>( <u>yesterday afternoon</u> ) | 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>hahjau fàanheui</u> .   |
| + 5. / <u>kàhmmáahn</u> /<br>( <u>last night</u> )                | 5. Kéuih kàhmmáahn <u>fàanheui</u> .         |
| + 6. / <u>chihnyaht</u> /<br>( <u>the day before yesterday</u> )  | 6. Kéuih <u>chihnyaht fàanheui</u> .         |

Comment: 1) kàhmyaht uses its contracted form kàhm- with -máahn but not with jiu.

kàhmmáahn            yesterday evening

kàhmyaht jiu        yesterday morning

2) ngaanjau and hahjau don't have contracted forms.

---

## 3. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh gàmyaht yiu hohk yātgo<br>jùngtāuh Yíngmán.<br>I'm going to study English<br>for an hour today. | 1. Ngóh gàmyaht yiu hohk yātgo<br>jùngtāuh Yíngmán.               |
| + 2. /gàmjiu/<br>( <u>this morning</u> )  | 2. Ngóh gàmjiu yiu hohk yātgo<br>jùngtāuh Yíngmán.                |
| + 3. /gàmyaht ngaanjau/<br>( <u>this morning; today around<br/>noon</u> )                               | 3. Ngóh gàmyaht ngaanjau yiu<br>hohk yātgo jùngtāuh Yíng-<br>mán. |
| + 4. /gàmyaht hahjau/<br>( <u>this afternoon</u> )  | 4. Ngóh gàmyaht hahjau yiu hohk<br>yātgo jùngtāuh Yíngmán.        |
| + 5. /gàmmáahn/<br>( <u>this evening; tonight</u> )   | 5. Ngóh gàmmáahn yiu hohk yāt-<br>go jùngtāuh Yíngmán.            |
- 

## 4. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Tíngyaht jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu a?<br>Can it be fixed by tomorrow?      | 1. Tíngyaht jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu<br>a?          |
| 2. /tíngjiu/<br>( <u>tomorrow early morning</u> )                       | 2. Tíngjiu jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu<br>a?           |
| + 3. /tíngyaht ngaanjau/<br>( <u>tomorrow morning around<br/>noon</u> ) | 3. Tíngyaht ngaanjau jíng<br>m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu a? |
| + 4. /tíngyaht hahjau/<br>( <u>tomorrow afternoon</u> )                 | 4. Tíngyaht hahjau jíng m̀hjíng-<br>dāk̀hóu a? |
| + 5. /tíngmáahn/<br>( <u>tomorrow night</u> )                           | 5. Tíngmáahn jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu<br>a?         |
| 6. /hauhyaht/<br>( <u>day after tomorrow</u> )                          | 6. Hauhyaht jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu<br>a?          |
- 

## 5. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Jek b̄ui.                         | T: A cup.                                   |
| S: M̀hgòì néih níng dò<br>jek b̄ui làih. | S: Please bring another cup.                |
| 1. jí bējáu.                             | 1. M̀hgòì néih níng dò jí bējáu<br>làih.    |
| 2. go wúnjái.                            | 2. M̀hgòì néih níng dò go wún-<br>jái làih. |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. géi jek séui búi.  | 3. M̀ngòì néih níng dò géi jek séui búi làih. |
| + 4. géi go <u>sāamgá</u> .<br>several <u>clothes hangers</u> . | 4. M̀ngòì néih níng dò géi go sāamgá làih.    |
| 5. jek gāng.  | 5. M̀ngòì néih níng dò jek gāng làih.         |
| ++ 6. <u>gauh fāangáan</u> .<br>a <u>bar of soap</u> .          | 6. M̀ngòì néih níng dò gauh fāangáan làih.    |
| 7. deui faaijǐ.   | 7. M̀ngòì néih níng dò deui faaijǐ làih.      |
| 8. sàam jek búi.  | 8. M̀ngòì néih níng dò sàam jek búi làih.     |
| + 9. tǐuh <u>mòuhgān</u> .<br>( <u>towel</u> )                  | 9. M̀ngòì néih níng dò tǐuh mòuhgān làih.     |
| + 10. dǐ <u>chijǐ</u> .<br>( <u>toilet paper</u> )              | 10. M̀ngòì néih níng dò dǐ chíjǐ làih.        |

## 6. Expansion Drill

+ Ex: T: Gihn sēutsāam hóu lahttaat.

S: Gihn sēutsāam hóu lahttaat, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.

T: The shirt is very dirty.

S: The shirt is very dirty, please wash it for me. (or please get it washed for me)

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. dǐ chēunglím                     | 1. Dǐ chēunglím hóu lahttaat, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.  |
| 2. go wúnjái                        | 2. Go wúnjái hóu lahttaat, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.   |
| 3. tǐuh mòuhgān<br>( <u>towel</u> ) | 3. Tǐuh mòuhgān hóu lahttaat, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.<br>The towel is very dirty, please wash it for me. |
| 4. gihn lāangsāam                   | 4. Gihn lāangsāam hóu lahttaat, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.  |
| 5. tǐuh kwàhn<br>( <u>skirt</u> )   | 5. Tǐuh kwàhn hóu lahttaat, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.<br>The skirt is very dirty, Please wash it for me.   |



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>+ 6. /hóu chàauh/tong/<br/>(<u>wrinkled</u>)</p> <p>7. gihn sēutsāam</p> <p>8. tiuh fu</p> | <p>6. Tiuh kwáhn hóu chàauh,<br/>m̀hgòì néih tùhng ngòh<br/>tongjò kéuih lā.<br/>The skirt is wrinkled,<br/>would you please press it<br/>for me.</p> <p>7. Gihn sēutsāam hóu chàauh,<br/>m̀hgòì néih tùhng ngòh<br/>tongjò kéuih lā.</p> <p>8. Tiuh fu hóu chàauh, m̀hgòì<br/>néih tùhng ngòh tongjò<br/>kéuih lā.</p> |
|---|---|
- 

## 7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: /tingjiu/

S: 'Tingjiu' jikhaih  
tingyaht jiujóu.S: 'Tingjiu'--that's 'tomorrow  
morning'.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. /gámjiu/</p> <p>2. /gámáahn/</p> <p>3. /tingjiu/</p> <p>4. /tingmáahn/</p> <p>5. /kàhmáahn/</p> <p>+ 6. /chihnjíu/<br/>(<u>the day before yesterday<br/>morning</u>)</p> <p>+ 7. /chihnámáahn/<br/>(<u>the night before last</u>)</p> <p>8. /hauhjiu/</p> <p>+ 9. /hauhámáahn/<br/>(<u>two nights from now</u>)</p> | <p>1. 'Gámjiu' jikhaih gámyaht<br/>jiujóu.</p> <p>2. 'Gámáahn' jikhaih gámyaht<br/>yehmáahn.</p> <p>3. 'Tingjiu' jikhaih tingyaht<br/>jiujóu.</p> <p>4. 'Tingmáahn' jikhaih tingyaht<br/>yehmáahn.</p> <p>5. 'Kàhmáahn' jikhaih kàhmyaht<br/>yehmáahn.</p> <p>6. 'Chihnjíu' jikhaih chihnyaht<br/>jiujóu.</p> <p>7. 'Chihnámáahn' jikhaih chihn-<br/>yaht yehmáahn.</p> <p>8. 'Hauhjiu' jikhaih hauhyaht<br/>jiujóu.</p> <p>9. 'Hauhámáahn' jikhaih hauhyaht<br/>yehmáahn.</p> |
|---|--|
-

## 8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néih gàmyaht hah-      T: When will you be free this  
       jau géidím dāk-                afternoon?  
       hàahn a? /sàam dím/

S: Ngóh gàmyaht hahjau      S: I am free at 3 p.m.  
       sàam dím dākhaahn.

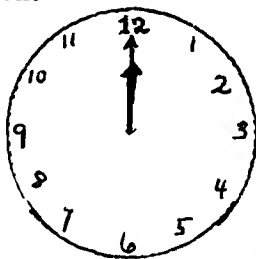
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Néih bàhbā jiujóu géi dím fàan gùng a? /gáu dím/             | 1. Ngóh bàhbā jiujóu gáu dím fàan gùng.              |
| 2. Néih sailóu jiujóu géidím fàan hohk a? /baat dím bun/        | 2. Ngóh sailóu jiujóu baat dím bun fàan hohk.        |
| 3. Néih gājē hahjau géidím chēut gāai a? /léuhng dím géi/       | 3. Ngóh gājē hahjau léuhng dím géi chēut gāai.       |
| 4. Néih agō yehmáahn géidím fàan ūkkéi a? /sahp dím lèhng/      | 4. Ngóh agō yehmáahn sah p dím lèhng fàan ūkkéi.     |
| 5. Néih màhmā kàhmyaht jiu géi-dím héi sán a? /baat dím dóu/    | 5. Ngóh màhmā kàhmyaht jiu baat dím dóu héi sán.     |
| 6. Néih go néui hauhmáahn géi-dím dākhaahn a? /baatgáu dím dóu/ | 6. Ngóh go néui hauhmáahn baat-gáu dím dóu dākhaahn. |

## 9. Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. jōu<br>jōudī<br>jōudī wah<br>jōudī wah kéuih jī<br>dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jī a? | 1. early<br>earlier, a bit early<br>say earlier<br>tell her earlier<br>why didn't (you) tell her earlier? |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jī a?  | Why didn't you tell her earlier?  |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jī néih m̄hheui a?                                     | Why didn't you tell her earlier you weren't going?  |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jī néih m̄hheuidāk a?                                  | Why didn't you tell her earlier you couldn't go?  |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jī néih m̄hheuidāk kéuih douh a?                       | Why didn't you tell her earlier you couldn't go to her house?   |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jī néih m̄hheuidāk kéuih                               | Why didn't you tell her earlier that you wouldn't   |

- douh dá páai a?  
be able to go to her house  
to play mahjong?
- + 2. yeh  
gam yeh  
dimgáai gam yeh a?  
néih dimgáai gam yeh a?  
néih dimgáai gam yeh tái syù a?  
Néih dimgáai gam yeh juhng tái syù a?
- + 3. ngaan, (aan)  
ngaandī  
ngaandī heui  
ngaandī ji heui  
ngaandī ji heui wán kéuih  
néih ngaandī ji heui wán kéuih dōu mhgányiu.  
Ngóh wah néih ngaandī ji heui wán kéuih dōu mhgányiu (ge).
- + 4. chih  
chih dou  
Deuihnhjyuh ngóh chih dou.
2. late (in the evening)  
so late  
why so late?  
why are you so late?  
why are you reading so late?  
How come you're still reading so late?
3. late (in the day)  
later  
go later  
(wait) until later to go  
(wait) until later to go see him  
it won't matter if you (wait) until later to go see him.  
I think it won't matter if you (wait till) later to go to see him.
4. late (for an appointment),  
not on time, tardy  
late in arriving  
Sorry I'm late.

10. Response Drill: For the purposes of this drill pretend that it is now 12 o'clock noon.



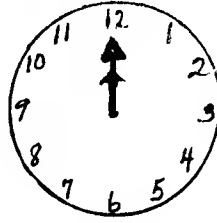
- Ex: 1. T: Néih sáijó sām meih a? /gámjiu/  
T: Have you washed the clothes yet? /this morning/  
S: Sáijó la. Ngóh gámjiu yínging sáijó la.  
S: Yes. I have already washed them this morning.

2. T: Kéuih tongjó t'ih T: Has she ironed the skirt yet?  
kwahn meih a?  
/hahjau/

S: Juhng meih. Kéuih S: Not yet, she will iron it in  
hahjau ji tong. the afternoon.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Néih gājē heuijó Tòihbāk meih<br>a? /t'ingjiu/   | 1. Juhng meih. Kéuih t'ingjiu<br>ji heui.   |
| 2. Néih agō máaihjó bouji meih<br>a? /gámjiu/   | 2. Máaihjó la. Kéuih gámjiu<br>y'ing'ing máaihjó la.                                    |
| 3. Néih sailóu fàanjó hohk meih<br>a? /hahjau/  | 3. Juhng meih. Kéuih hahjau ji<br>fāan.   |
| 4. Néih saimúí heuijó jough sán<br>sāam meih a? /t'ingyaht<br>hahjau/   | 4. Juhng meih. Kéuih t'ingyaht<br>hahjau ji heui.                                       |
| 5. Néih néuihpahngyáuh làihjó<br>meih a? /kàhmyaht jiu/   | 5. Làihjó la. Kéuih kàhmyaht<br>jiu y'ing'ing làihjó la.                                |
| 6. Néih dī sailógō máaihjó syù<br>meih a? /kàhmyaht jiu/  | 6. Máaihjó la. Kéuihdeih kàhm-<br>yaht jiu y'ing'ing máaihjó<br>la.                     |
| 7. Néih màhmā joughjó chēunglím<br>meih a? /t'ingmāahn/   | 7. Juhng meih. Kéuih t'ingmāahn<br>ji jough.  |
| 8. Léih Táai fàanjó ūkkéi meih<br>a? /kàhmmāahn/  | 8. Fàanjó la. Kéuih kàhmmāahn<br>y'ing'ing fàanjó la.                                   |
| 9. Néih gungyáhn n'ingjó jèung<br>tói làih meih a? /kàhmmāahn/  | 9. N'ingjó la. Kéuih kàhmmāahn<br>y'ing'ing n'ingjó làih la.                            |
| 10. Néih heuijó ngàhnhòhng meih a?<br>+ /yātjān/<br>(in a little while)   | 10. Juhng meih. Ngóh yātjān ji<br>heui.   |
| 11. Néih dájó dihnwá béi kéuih<br>meih a? /ngāamngāam/<br>Did you phone him (as I<br>knew you were planning<br>to)? | 11. Dájó la. Ngóh ngāamngāam<br>dájó béi kéuih la.<br>Yes, I've just now phoned<br>him. |

## 11. Response Drill: It is now 12 noon. (ngaanjau sahpyih dím)



- Ex: 1. T: Ga chē jǐnghóu meih a? /kǎhmyaht jiu/  
T: Is the car repaired yet? /yesterday morning/  
S: Jǐnghóu la. Kǎhmyaht jiu yǐnging jǐnghóujó la.  
S: Yes, it was finished yesterday morning.
2. T: Gihn sāam dāk meih a? /hahjau/  
T: Is the dress ready yet? /afternoon/  
S: Juhng meih dāk bo. Hahjau sǐn lā.  
S: Still not ready yet. It'll be ready this afternoon.
1. Néih go dihnwá jǐngbóu meih a? /kǎhmmáahn/  
1. Jǐnghóu la. Kǎhmmáahn yǐnging jǐnghóujó la.  
2. Wahjó kéuih jí meih a? /hahjau/  
2. Juhng meih wah kéuih jí bo. Hahjau sǐn lā.  
3. Nǐngjó chēutheui meih a? /kǎhmyaht jiu/  
3. Nǐngjó la. Kǎhmyaht jiu yǐnging nǐngjó la.  
4. Deui hàaih dāk meih a? /tingyaht hahjau/  
4. Juhng meih dāk bo. Tingyaht hahjau sǐn lā.  
5. Di chēunglím dāk meih a? /kǎhmyaht jiu/  
5. Dāk la. Kǎhmyaht jiu yǐnging dākjó laak.  
6. Gihn lāangsāam sáihóu meih a? /tingmáahn/  
Is the sweater ready yet? (said to clerk at dry cleaning establishment)  
6. Juhng meih sáihóu bo. Tingmáahn sǐn lā.  
+ 7. Jèung tóí jǐngfàan meih a? /kǎhmmáahn/  
(fix back to original shape)  
Have you repaired the table yet? [fix back (to original condition)]  
7. Jǐngfàan laak. Kǎhmmáahn yǐnging jǐngfàan laak.  
8. Mǎaihjó wúndíhp meih a? /tingyaht hahjau/  
8. Juhng meih mǎaih bo. Tingyaht hahjau sǐn lā.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>9. Sihkdāk faahn meih a? /yātjān/<br/>Is dinner ready? <u>or</u><br/>Are you ready to eat?<br/>[able to eat yet? <u>or</u><br/>Dating--is it able to be<br/>done yet?]</p> <p>10. Heuidāk meih a? /gāmmāahn/<br/>Are you ready to go yet?<br/>Can you go yet?</p> | <p>9. Juhng meih sihkdkāk bo.<br/>Yātjān sīn lā.</p> <p>10. Juhng meih heuidāk bo.<br/>Gāmmāahn sīn lā.</p> |
|--|---|

## 12. Substitution Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Ngóhdeih gāmmāahn T: Tonight we'll eat at six  
luhk dīm jauh o'clock.  
sihk faahn laak.  
/joudī/  
S: Ngóhdeih gāmmāahn S: We'll have dinner earlier  
joudī sihk faahn. (than usual) tonight.
2. T: Ngóhdeih gāmmāahn T: Tonight we won't eat until 9  
gáu dīm bun ji o'clock. /later/  
sihk faahn.  
/yehdī/  
S: Ngóhdeih gāmmāahn S: We'll have dinner later (than  
yehdī sihk faahn. usual) tonight.
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Ngóh tīngjiu gáu dīm bun ji<br/>sihk jouchāan. /ngaandī/<br/>2. Ngóh hahjau sām dīm jauh<br/>yám chàh laak. /joudī/<br/>3. Ngóh gāmmāahn sah p dīm ji<br/>chēut gāai. /yehdī/<br/>4. Kéuih kàhmyaht jiu luhk dīm<br/>jauh héi sán laak. /hóu jóu/<br/>5. Agō kàhmmāahn léuhng dīm<br/>ji fan gaau. /hóu yeh/</p> | <p>1. Ngóh tīngjiu ngaandī sihk<br/>jouchāan.<br/>2. Ngóh hahjau joudī yám chàh.<br/>3. Ngóh gāmmāahn yehdī chēut<br/>gāai.<br/>4. Kéuih kàhmyaht jiu hóu jóu<br/>héi sán.<br/>5. Agō kàhmmāahn hóu yeh fan<br/>gaau.</p> |
|--|---|

## 13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh láihbaai hái ukkéi sík faahn. /hóusíu/ T: I eat at home on Sunday. /very seldom/

S: Ngóh láihbaai hóusíu hái ukkéi sík faahn. S: I don't eat at home much on Sunday.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóhdeih láihbaai m̀hái ukkéi sík faahn. /yáuhsíh/               | 1. Ngóhdeih láihbaai yáuhsíh m̀hái ukkéi sík faahn.               |
| 2. Ngóhdeih múih go láihbaai sík léuhng s̀am chí J̀ng-choi. /jísíu/ | 2. Ngóhdeih múih go láihbaai jísíu sík léuhng s̀am chí J̀ng choi. |
| 3. Ngóh múih níhn heui f̀igēi-ch̀uhng ỳtchi. /jídò/                | 3. Ngóh múih níhn jídò heui f̀igēich̀uhng ỳtchi.                 |
| 4. Kéuih heui wán p̀hngyáuh ch̀oh. /hóusíu/                         | 4. Kéuih hóusíu heui wán p̀hngyáuh ch̀oh.                         |
| 5. Ngóh m̀gēidāk néih ge dihnwá géidō houh. /hóudòsíh/              | 5. Ngóh hóudòsíh m̀gēidāk néih ge dihnwá géidō houh.              |
| 6. Kéuih gónm̀hchit sík jóuchāan. + /jiujiu/ (every morning)        | 6. Kéuih jiujiu dōu gónm̀hchit sík jóuchāan.                      |
| 7. Kéuih hóu yeh jí fan. + /m̀ahn m̀ahn/ (every evening)            | 7. Kéuih m̀ahnm̀ahn dōu hóu yeh jí fan.                           |

## 14. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yiu wuhn j̀ung sahp m̀n jí. T: I want to change a ten dollar bill.

S: M̀gòì néih tùhng ngóh wuhnjó j̀ung sahp m̀n jí lā. S: Would you please change a ten dollar bill for me?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh yiu tong tíuh kwàhn.                | 1. M̀gòì néih tùhng ngóh tong-jó tíuh kwàhn lā.       |
| 2. Ngóh yiu sái dī s̀am.                    | 2. M̀gòì néih tùhng ngóh sáijó dī s̀am lā.            |
| 3. Ngóh yiu jough gihn s̀eutsāam. /joughóu/ | 3. M̀gòì néih tùhng ngóh jough-hóu gihn s̀eutsāam lā. |
| 4. Ngóh yiu sái go chisó.                   | 4. M̀gòì néih tùhng ngóh sáijó go chisó lā.           |
| 5. Ngóh yiu jough dī ch̀eunglím.            | 5. M̀gòì néih tùhng ngóh jough-jó dī ch̀eunglím lā.   |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>6. Ngóh yiu bún jèung tóí chēut-heui.</p> <p>+ 7. Ngóh yiu <u>gwa</u> tiuh kwáhn.<br/>/gwahóu/<br/>(<u>hang up</u>)</p> | <p>6. Mhgoi néih tühng ngóh búnjó jèung tóí chēutheui là.</p> <p>7. Mhgoi néih tühng ngóh gwa-hóu tiuh kwáhn là.<br/>Please hang the skirt up for me.</p> |
|--|---|
- 

## 15. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Ex: 1. T: Ga chē gam gauh, hàahng mhhàahng-dāk a? /nod/</p> <p>S: Hàahngdāk gé.</p> <p>2. T: Ngóhdeih tǐngyaht chéng haak, néih làih mhláihdāk a? /shake/</p> <p>S: Mhláihdāk bo.</p> | <p>T: That car is so old--can it run?</p> <p>S: Sure it can!</p> <p>T: We're having company for dinner tomorrow. Can you come?</p> <p>S: I'm sorry I can't.</p> |
|--|---|
- 
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Néih ūkkéi chíhnbíhn paak mhpakdāk chē a? /nod/</p> <p>2. Kàhmmáahn gam dung, néih fan mhfandāk a? /shake/</p> <p>3. Kéuihdeih tǐngmáahn chéng haak, néih heui mhheuidāk a? /nod/</p> <p>4. Góidí tòng gam yíht, néih yám mhyámdāk a? /nod/</p> <p>5. Gíhn sēutsāam gam sai, néih jeuk mhjeukdāk a? /shake/</p> <p>6. Néih yāt go jūngtáuh duhk mhduhkdāk yāt baak yihp a? /shake/</p> | <p>1. Paakdāk gé.</p> <p>2. Mhfandāk bo.</p> <p>3. Heuidāk gé.</p> <p>4. Yámdāk gé.</p> <p>5. Mhjeukdāk bo.</p> <p>6. Mhduhkdāk bo.</p> |
|--|---|
-



## 16. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngòh yáuh gam dò chin, yátdihng máaihák hóudò yéh. /móuh géidò/ T: I have so much money, I can buy a lot. /not much/

S: Ngòh móuh géidò chin, S: I don't have much money, I can't buy much. yéh.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Gógàan jáudim gam daaih, yátdihng jyuhdák géi baak yáhn. /gam sai/<br>The hotel is so large it can accommodate several hundred people. | 1. Gógàan jáudim gam sai, mhjyuhdák géi baak yáhn.         |
| 2. Ní go fēigēichèuhng gam daaih, yátdihng tihngdák hóudò (ga) fēigēi. /gam sai/  | 2. Ní go fēigēi chēuhng gam sai, mhtihngdák géidò fēigēi.  |
| 3. Néih ga chē gam daaih, yátdihng chóhdák baat go yáhn. /gam sai/  | 3. Néih ga chē gam sai, mhchóhdák baat go yáhn.            |
| 4. Ngòh tingyaht móuh yéh jough, yátdihng heuidák wán Hòh Siuje chón. /mhdákhaahn/  | 4. Ngòh tingyaht mhdákhaahn, mhheuidák wán Hòh Siuje chón. |
| 5. Gámuyaht gam yiht, yátdihng heuidák yáuhséui. /gam dung/   | 5. Gámuyaht gam dung, mhheuidák yáuhséui.                  |
| 6. Kéuih yáuh dukh syù, yátdihng bātdák yihp. /móuh dukh syù/   | 6. Kéuih móuh dukh syù, mhbātdák yihp.                     |

## 17. Response Drill: answer in the negative.

Ex: T: Yauh gam dò yéh, sihk mhsihkdák-saai a? T: There's so much stuff, can you eat it all?

S: Gam dò yéh, mhsihkdák saai bo. S: There's so much stuff, I can't eat it all.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Yáuh gam dò yéh, jough mhjouhdák saai a?        | 1. Yáuh gam dò yéh, mhjouhdák saai bo.          |
| 2. Yáuh gam dò sām, sái mhsáidák saai a?           | 2. Yáuh gam dò sām, mhsáidák saai bo.           |
| 3. Ga chē gam gauh, jing mhjíngdák hóu a?          | 3. Ga chē gam gauh, mhjíngdák hóu bo.           |
| 4. Gihn sām gam lahttaat, sái mhsáidák gònjuhng a? | 4. Gihn sām gam lahttaat, mhsáidák gònjuhng bo. |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. Tíuh kwáhn gam chàauh, tong m̀htongdāk fàan a? | 5. Tíuh kwáhn gam chàauh, m̀h-tongdāk fàan bo. |
| 6. Go yan gam daaih, sái m̀hsáidāk dóu a?         | 6. Go yan gam daaih, m̀hsáidāk dóu bo.         |

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) sái s̄ambouh = laundry department
- 2) fan ngaandī = sleep late, i.e., get up latsr (than usual)
- 3) ch̀unglèuhng = take a bath, take a shower
- 4) ch̀unglèuhngfóng = bathroom
- 5) māt = here: d̀ingáai?
6. jihg̀sí = yourself
- 7) Gám dím dāk ga? = That way, how (is it) OK? i.e., How could that be? How could you allow such?
- 8) yeuhngysuhng = everything
- 9) Luhk jé = The family's name for the servant. The Luhk part is taken from one of the 3 characters in her name (maybe Luhk Siuying or Ch̀ahn Ngáh-luhk) and the je part means 'elder sister'.
- 10) gón = in a hurry; gón m̀hgónjyuh? = Are you in a hurry?
- 11) Sihkdāk faahn meih? = Can we eat yet?
- 12) m̀hhaih = otherwise, if not,...

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. This shirt is very dirty--would you get it washed for me?
2. This skirt is very wrinkled--would you press it for me?
3. There's a spot here on my tie--do you think it can be washed clean?

B. And he replies:

1. All right. (I'll) bring it back tomorrow--OK?
2. I'm vstry busy right now--I'll prsse it this afternoon, would that be all right?
3. Probably it can't be washed clean.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. What time do you want dinner tonight?   | 4. Tonight we're going to go to the movies, so we'd like to eat a bit early. |
| 5. It was very late last night before I went to bed.                                   | 5. I went to bed late too.   |
| 6. Please excuse my late arrival--I got up late this morning.                          | 6. That's all right. I've just arrived.                                      |
| 7. I get up every morning at 7:30.   | 7. I get up every morning at 6:30.   |
| 8. Every evening after dinner I study Cantonee.  | 8. You're very industrious!  |
| 9. Did he arrive the day before yesterday?   | 9. No, he arrived yesterday morning.   |
| 10. Have you hung up the clothes?  | 10. Not yet--in just a minute!   |
| 11. Is there any toilet paper in the john?   | 11. There is, I just brought some in.  |
| 12. Can you get it fixed by tomorrow?  | 12. Can't get it fixed by tomorrow--it'll be day after tomorrow.             |
| 13. Do you study in the morning or at night?   | 13. I study in the morning and at night too.                                 |
| 14. Does the gentleman have any further instructions? (said by bellboy to hotel guest) | 14. Would you please bring another towel and a bar of soap.                  |
| 15. We go to bed quite early every night.  | 15. We go to bed comparatively late.   |

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 23

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| 1. chàauh      | adj: wrinkled                           |
| 2. chíh        | adj: late (for an appointment)          |
| 3. chíjì       | n: toilet paper                         |
| 4. chíhnjìu    | TW: day before yesterday in the morning |
| 5. chíhnámáahn | TW: night before last                   |
| 6. chíhnyáht   | TW: day before yesterday                |
| 7. dāan        | n: list                                 |
| 8. fānfu       | n/v: instructions                       |
| 9. fāngáan     | n: soap                                 |
| 10. fan(gaau)  | V(0): go to bed, sleep                  |

11. gàmjiu	TW: this morning
12. gàmáahn	TW: tonight
13. gàmyaht bahjau	TW: this afternoon
14. gàmyaht ngaanjau	TW: this morning; today around noon
15. gauh	m: bar; M. for soap
16. giuséng	v: wake (someone) up [call-wake]
17. gònjehtng	adj: clean
18. gwa	v: hang (something) up
19. *gwahóu	v: hang (something) up
20. hahjau	TW: afternoon
21. hauhmáahn	TW: day after tomorrow night
22. hauhyaht	TW: the day after tomorrow
23. hóu chíh	Ph: it seems, it looks like, probably, very likely...
24. jingfàan	v: fix back to original shape
25. jiujiu	AdvPh: every morning
26. jiujóu	morning
27. jóu	adj: early
28. kàhmáahn	TW: last night
29. kàhmyaht bahjau	TW: yesterday afternoon
30. kàhmyaht jiu	TW: yesterday morning
31. kàhmyaht ngaanjau	TW: yesterday noon
32. laahttaat	adj: dirty
33. máahn	BF: night
34. máahn máahn	adv: every evening
35. móuhgān	n: towel(s)
36. (ng)aan	adj: late (in the day)
37. (ng)aanjau	TW: around noon; morning
38. sǎangá	n: coat hanger
39. sái	v: wash
40. sáidǎkchit	VPh: able to get it washed in time
41. séfāan	v: write and return
42. séng	v: wake up
43. sihjái	n: roomboy (in hotel)
44. tingjiu	TW: tomorrow morning

45. tingmáahn	TW: tomorrow night
46. tìngyaht hahjau	TW: tomorrow afternoon
47. tìngyaht ngaanjau	TW: tomorrow morning around noon
48. tong	v: iron, press
49. yan	n: spot
50. yātján	advP: in a little while, in just a little while
51. yàuhhaak	n: tourist
52. yeh	adj: late (in the evening)
53. yehmáahn	TW: at night

---

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At home one hot summer afternoon Mrs. Brown, realizing she is thirsty, says:)

Bàau Táai

Yám bùi chàh jī dāk.

I'll have a cup of tea--that'll do it. (i.e., the tea will take care of the thirst)

chùng chàh

make tea, steep tea

wùh

pot, container, Measure

chùng wùh chàh

make a pot of tea

A Sei, m̀ngòì nēih chùng wùh chàh

A Sei, would you please make me

béi ngóh lā.

a pot of tea?

(A Sei brings the tea into the living room:)

A Sei

Taaítáai

here: 'ma'am,' 'Missy,' 'Madam.' (term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house)

Hái bīndouh yám a?, Taaítáai?

Where would you like to drink it ma'am?

Bàau Táai

kèhláu

veranda, terrace

Kèhláu lèuhngdí, chēutheui

It's cooler on the veranda--

kèhláu lā.

I'll go out to the veranda.

A Sei

wúih

like to, going to (strong possibility)

lohkyúh

to rain [fall-rain]

Hóu ch́h wúih lohkyúh bo.

It looks like it's going to rain.

Bàau Táai

haaktēng

living room

Gám, jauh hái haaktēng nīdoh  
lā.

Well, here in the living room  
then.

A Sei

jái  
Jái hái nī jēung tóí, hóu  
m̀hóu a?

put, place  
I'll put it on this table, is  
that all right?

Bàau Táai

Hóu lā.  
A! Jànhaìh lohkyúh tím bo!

Fine.  
Oh-oh, it is raining!

chēung  
sàan  
sàan chēung  
Sàanjó dī chēung lā.

window  
close, shut  
close windows  
Please close the windows.

Àngòì néih tùhng ngóh heui  
sàanjó dī chēung sìn lā.  
faaidī

Please go close the windows  
for me first.  
right away, hurry and ...

Àngòì néih faaidī tùhng ngóh  
heui sàanjó dī chēung sìn lā.

Please hurry and close the  
windows for me.

(The servant and housewife both go  
around closing windows, then return  
to the living room. A Sei feels the  
teapot and notes that it is cold:)

A Sei

dungjó  
Dí chàh dungjó laak.  
chùng wùh yíht chàh  
chùng wùh yíht ge

has become cold  
The tea's gotten cold.  
make a pot of hot tea  
make a hot one [make pot  
hot one]

chùnggwo  
chùnggwo wùh yíht ge

make another [steep-change]  
make another hot one (i.e.,  
as replacement)

Dáng ngóh tùhng néih chùnggwo  
wùh yíht ge lā.

Let me make you another hot  
one.

Bàau Táai

Àngòì.  
hóusēng a!

Thanks.  
be careful!

dóusé	spill
Hóusēng a, m̀hóu dóusé a!	Be careful! Don't spill it!
<u>A Sei</u>	
Baihlaak! or Baihlok!	exclamation of surprise
Baihlaak! Jànhaih dóusé t̀im!	Blast! I <u>did</u> spill it!
<u>Bàau Táai</u>	
faai	piece, Measure
faai bou	a cloth, a piece of material
maat	wipe, polish; wet-mop
Faaidí ǹng faai bou làih maat	Hurry and get a cloth to wipe
lā.	it up.
dit	drop
laahn	break
ditlaahn	break by dropping
hóuchóí	luckily, 'Thank goodness'
Hóuchóí...jē	It's lucky that ...
Hóuchóí móuh ditlaahn jek b̀i jē.	It's lucky that you didn't
	break the cup.

B. Recapitulation:

(At home one hot summer afternoon Mrs. Brown, realizing she is thirsty, says:)

Bàau Táai

Yám b̀i chàh jí dāk.

I'll have a cup of tea--that'll do it. (i.e., the tea will take care of the thirst)

A Sei, m̀ngòí néih ch̀ung wùh chàh béi ngòh lā.

A Sei, would you make me a pot of tea please?

(A Sei brings the tea into the living room:)

A Sei

Hái b̀indouh yám a?, Taaitáai?

Where would you like to drink it, ma'am?

Bàau Táai

Kèhláu lèuhngd̀í, ch̀ēutheui kèhláu lā.

It's cooler on the veranda-- I'll go out to the veranda.



A Sei

Hóu chhí wúh lohkyúh bo.

It looks like it's going to rain.

Bàau Táai

Gám, jauh hái haaktēng nīdouh lā.

Well, here in the living room then.

A Sei

Jài hái nī jèung tóí, hóu mhhóu a?

I'll put it on this table, is that all right?

Bàau Táai

Hóu lā.

Fine.

A! Jánhah lohkyúh tím bo!

Oh-oh, it is raining!

Mhngòí néih faaidí tùhng ngóh

Please hurry and go close the windows for me.

heui sàanjó dí chēung sīn lā.

(The servant and housewife both go around closing windows, then return to the living room. A Sei feels the teapot and notes that it is cold:)

A Sei

Dí chàh dungjó laak.

The tea's gotten cold.

Dáng ngóh tùhng néih chùnggwo

Let me make you another hot one.

wùh yíht ge lā.

Bàau Táai

Mhngòí.

Thanks.

Hóusēng a, mhhóu dóusé a!

Be careful! Don't spill it!

A Sei

Baihlaak! Jánhah dóusé tím!

Blast! I did spill it!

Bàau Táai

Faaidí níng faai bou làih maat lā.

Hurry and get a cloth to wipe it up.

Hóuchóí móuh ditlaahn jek búi jē.

At least it's lucky you didn't break the cup.

## II. NOTES

1. wúih, 'likely to,' '(probably) will'

wúih is an auxiliary verb, in a full sentence having a verb as its object. It is used in prediction sentences, indicating strong probability: 'likely to,' 'probably will,' 'could be that \_\_\_.'

Ex: wúih lohkyúh = likely to rain

1. Gámuyaht wúih lohkyúh ga. It's going to rain today.  
or: It's likely to rain today.
2. Gámuyaht mhwúih lohkyúh ge. It's not going to rain today.
3. Gámuyaht wúih mhwúih lohkyúh Is it going to rain today?  
a?

(See BC and Drill 6)

The underlying meaning of wúih is 'able to,' 'capable of,' in the sense of 'in one's power to V,' 'possible for one to V.' This connotation emerges when wúih is used to detail past or present capability:

- Ex: 1. A: Ní dī cháang hái Weihòhng máaihjó sei houhjí go. These oranges (I) bought at Wellcome Company for 40 apiece.  
B: Hái Jungwáahn Gáaisih máaih, waahkjé wúih pèhngdí. Buying at Central Market, probably would be cheaper.
2. A: Ní dī cháang yingā sei houhjí go. These oranges are now 40 apiece.  
B: Séuhnggo láihbaai wúih pèhngdí. Last week (one was) able to (get them) cheaper.

(Students who have previously studied Mandarin will recognize the Cantonese wúih as cognate to Mandarin hwei, 'can;' 'know how to.' Note that Mandarin would use hwei in the sentence patterns detailed above, but that the Mandarin meaning of hwei as 'know how to' is represented in Cantonese by sik, 'know how to.')

2. jai, 'put,' 'place,' is a verb which requires a following place phrase object or verb suffix:

Ex: 1. jai + place phrase:

- a. Jai hái nídouh. Put it here.
- b. Jai hái tóidouh. Put it on the table.
- c. Jai hái kehlaú. Put it on the verandah.

2. jài + suffix

- a. Jàidài lā. Put it down.  
 b. Jàimaih dī sāam lā. Put the clothes away.

(See BC and Drills 1.7, 1.8, 9)

3. faaidī in pre-verb and post-verb position.

In pre-verb position faaidī means either, 1) 'hurry up and Verb,'  
 or 2) 'Verb faster'

Ex: Faaidī sihk a. 1. Hurry up and eat. (We have to catch  
 a train, hurry up and start eating.)

or:

2. Eat faster. (Stop dawdling.)

(See BC)

When faaidī follows the verb, there is only one interpretation,  
 'Verb faster.'

Ex: Sihk faaidī! = Eat faster!

4. Sentence suffix la for friendly advice.

la is suffixed to imperative sentences, giving the connotation of  
 low-keyed friendly advice. (Remember we use imperative to mean a  
 sentence which directs an addressee to act, and is not limited to  
 sentences giving commands.) Imperative suffix la in mid-pitch intonation  
 is similar to imperative suffix lā with high-pitched intonation.  
 Mid-pitched la suggests low-keyed advice, in contrast to high-pitched  
lā, which suggests polite urging.

(See Drill 15)

## 5. Hóuchoi . . . jē. 'At least it's lucky that.....'

The jē of Hóuchoi...jē indicates: 'it's not much (to be thankful  
 for), but it's something.'

(See BC and Drill 14)

6. Adjective-jó, 'has gotten Adjective,' 'got Adjective.'

Compare:

1. Dǐ tòng m̀hóuyám ge, dung gé.    The soup doesn't taste good--  
it's cold.
2. Dǐ tòng dungjó, m̀hóuyám ge.    The soup has gotten cold-- it  
doesn't taste good.

Adjective-jó views the condition described by the adjective as the end result of a process. The adjective without -jó is descriptive of a static state.

- Ex: dungjó = has gotten cold, got cold  
 sǎpjo = got wet  
 gauhjó = has gotten old (things, not people)  
 cháauhjó = got wrinkled

(See BC and Drill 11)

English too has ways of expressing the condition described by an adjective in terms of a static state, or the end result of a process.

- Compare: 1. It is cold.  
It has turned cold.
2. It is damp.  
It has gotten damp.

7. -gwo-, 'another (as replacement for the original, in exchange for the original)'

gwo, attached to a verb preceding and a Measure following, has the meaning 'another,' 'other,' in the sense of a replacement (or replacements) for the original Measure.

gwo, 'another, others' in the sense of a replacement, contrasts with dò, 'another,' 'others' in the sense of an additional one (or ones).

- Ex: V gwo M = V a replacement M  
V dò M = V an additional M

Compare:

1. Dǐ chàh dungjó-- ch̀ng gwo    The tea's gotten cold-- please make  
wùh lǎih lǎ.                            a replacement potful and bring it.
2. Dǐ chàh yámsai laak-- ch̀ng    The tea's all drunk up. Please  
dò wùh lǎih lǎ.                            make an additional potful and  
bring it.

(See BC and Drill 15)

8. laih, 'for the purpose of,' 'in order to,' 'to'

laih connects two verb phrases:  $V(O)_1$  laih  $V(O)_2$ , with the meaning:

$$'V(O)_1 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in order to} \\ \text{for the purpose of} \\ \text{to} \\ \text{so that one can} \end{array} \right\} V(O)_2'$$

- Ex: 1. Nìng faai bou laih maat. Bring a cloth to wipe (it up).  
 2. Néih máaih bēng laih      What did you buy cookies for?  
    jauh méyeh a?  
 3. Ngoh máaih dī bēng laih    I bought cookies to eat.  
    sihk.  
 4. Kéuih máaih hóudò choi    She bought a lot of food to  
    laih chéng haak.            have a dinner party.

(See Drill 10)

9. Performance-achievement verb compounds

- Ex: 1. ditlaahn      drop-break                    = break  
 2. chohlaahn      sit-break                      = break  
    (jeung yí)      (the chair)  
 3. chohlaahn      sit-break                      = tear, rip  
    (tiuh fu)      (the trousers)  
 4. dálaahn        hit-break                      = break  
 5. dóusé          come to the brim-overflow = spill

- a. The first verb of a performance-achievement verb compound tells what action is performed, the second one tells what the result is:

Ex: dálaahn      hit and break  
       chohlaahn    sit and break  
       ditlaahn     drop and break

- b. In sentences of past reference, the performance-achievement compound verbs pattern like single verbs.

Forms: affirmative: VV-jó  
           negative    : móuh VV  
           choice ques: yauh móuh VV?

Ex: dálaahn = hit and break

a	Kéuih dálaahnjó jek búi.	She broke the cup.
n	Kéuih móuh dálaahn jek búi.	She didn't break the cup.
q	Yáuh móuh dálaahn jek búi a?	Did she break the cup?

c. The dāk, 'can,' pattern with performance-achievement compounds.

This patterns like, indeed it is the same as, the V-dāk-Adj =

'can V with Adj results' construction studied in Lesson 23.

Ex: dádāklaahn = [hit-can-break], i.e., able to break by hitting;  
can be broken by hitting; breakable

a	V-dāk-Adj	Nī jek b̄i dádāklaahn.	This glass is breakable. [hit-can-break]
n	m̄hV-dāk-Adj or V m̄h-Adj	Nī jek b̄i m̄hdádāklaahn. Nī jek b̄i dām̄laahn.	This glass is unbreakable.
q	Vm̄hV-dāk-Adj	Nī jek b̄i da m̄hdádāklaahn a?	Is this glass breakable?

d. In sentences of customary action, not referring to a specific event.

For customary action the performance-achievement compound tends to be phrased in the affirmative, with frequency expressions such as hóu síu, 'very seldom' suggesting the negative, and with the question formed by haih m̄hhaih preceding the affirmative.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih síhsìh dōu dálaahn She always breaks things.  
yéh ga.
2. Kéuih hóu síu dálaahn She very seldom breaks things.  
yéh ga.
3. Kéuih haihm̄hhaih síhsìh Does she break things all the  
dōu dálaahn yéh ga? time?

e. jíng, 'fix,' 'do,' 'make,' may be the first verb of a performance-achievement verb compound, substituting for a verb of specific means.

Ex: 1. chóhlaahn = [sit-break], i.e., 'tear (cloth by sitting it out),' 'break (a chair by sitting in it),' etc.

jínglaahn = [make-break], i.e., 'break' (without saying how)

2. chóhchàauh = [sit-wrinkled], i.e. 'get (something) wrinkled by sitting in it'

jíngchàauh = [make-wrinkled], i.e., 'get something wrinkled' (without saying how)

## III. DRILLS

## 1. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| + 1. a. <u>faahntēng</u>  | <u>dining room</u>   |
| b. hái faahntēng  | in the dining room   |
| c. hái faahntēng sihk faahn   | is eating in the dining room   |
| d. m̀hái faahntēng sihk faahn   | isn't eating in the dining room  |
| e. hái m̀hái faahntēng sihk faahn a?                                    | is (he) eating in the dining room?   |
| + 2. a. <u>chyùhfóng</u>  | <u>kitchen</u>   |
| b. hái chyùhfóng  | in the kitchen   |
| c. hái chyùhfóng gódouh   | there in the kitchen   |
| d. hái chyùhfóng gódouh jyú faahn                                       | is in the kitchen there cooking dinner.                                    |
| + 3. a. <u>seuihfóng</u>  | <u>bedroom</u>   |
| b. go seuihfóng   | a bedroom  |
| c. géi(dō) go seuihfóng a?  | how many bedrooms?   |
| d. yáuh géi(dō) go seuihfóng a?   | has how many bedrooms?   |
| e. Néih ngūkkéi yáuh géi(dō) go seuihfóng a?                            | How many bedrooms does your house have?                                    |
| + 4. a. <u>syùfóng</u>  | [book-room] <u>study</u>   |
| b. hái syùfóng  | in the study   |
| c. hái syùfóng tái boují  | in the study reading the newspaper   |
| d. Kéuih hái syùfóng tái boují  | He is in the study reading the paper.                                      |
| e. Kéuih hái syùfóng táiháh boují a, dukháh syù a, séhah jih a, gám lá. | In his study he reads the newspaper, studies, writes, that sort of things. |
| + 5. a. <u>lauhdài</u>  | <u>leave (something) behind</u>  |
| b. lauhdài hái bási   | left on the bus  |
| c. lauhdài hái bási tím   | left it on the bus   |
| d. Bá jē lauhdài hái bási tím.  | The umbrella (I) left on the bus!  |
| e. Aiyah! Bá jē lauhdài hái bási tím!                                   | Aiyah! The umbrella (I) left on the bus!                                   |
| 6. a. lohkyúh   | to rain [fall-rain]  |

- b. hóu síu lohk yúh  
seldom rains
- c. Səhp yuht hóu síu lohk yúh  
seldom rains in October
- d. Hái Hèunggóng Səhp yuht hóu síu lohk yúh.  
It seldom rains in October in Hong Kong.
- e. Tèngginwah hái Hèunggóng Səhp yuht hóusíu lohkyuh haih mhhaih a?  
I hear that in Hong Kong it seldom rains in October--is that right?
- + 7. a. tokpún  
tray
- b. go tokpún  
a/the tray
- c. go tokpún hái bīndouh a?  
Where is the tray?
- d. go tokpún jài hái bīndouh a?  
Where (should I) put the tray? or  
Where has the tray been put?
- e. go tokpún jàijó hái bīndouh a?  
Where has the tray been put?
- f. Go tokpún jàijó hái bīndouh- ngóh tái mhdóu ge.  
Where has the tray been put- I don't see it. (or  
Where did you put the tray?)
- + 8. a. syútóí  
desk
- b. hái syútóí  
on the desk
- c. hái syútóí gódouh  
on the desk there
- d. jàijó hái syútóí gódouh  
has been put there on the desk
- e. Tokpún jàijó hái syútóí gódouh.  
The tray (I) put on the desk there. (or--in another context--this could be a command: Put the tray on the desk there.)
9. a. chùng chàh chēutlaih  
make tea and bring it out
- b. chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih  
make a pot of tea and bring it out
- c. gùngyàhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih.  
the servant made a pot of tea and brought it out.
- d. giu gùngyàhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih.  
tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.
- e. yahphei giu gùngyàhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih.  
go in to tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.
- f. ngóh yahphei giu gùngyàhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih.  
I went in to tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.



g. Dǎng ngóh yáhpheui giu gùng-yáhn chùng wùh chàh chéut-láih.

I'll go in and tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.

## 2. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kèhláu hái bīndouh a?<br>Where is the veranda?                       | 1. Kèhláu hái bīndouh a?                                 |
| 2. /haaktēng/   | 2. Haaktēng hái bīndouh a?                               |
| 3. /chisó/  | 3. Chisó hái bīndouh a?                                  |
| 4. /faahntēng/  | 4. Faahntēng hái bīndouh a?<br>Where is the dining room? |
| 5. /seuihfóng/  | 5. Seuihfóng hái bīndouh a?<br>Where is the bedroom?     |
| 6. /haaktēng/   | 6. Haaktēng hái bīndouh a?                               |
| 7. /syùfóng/  | 7. Syùfóng hái bīndouh a?<br>Where is the study?         |
| 8. /chyùhfóng/  | 8. Chyùhfóng hái bīndouh a?<br>Where is the kitchen?     |
| + 9. / <u>chùnglèuhngfóng</u> /<br>(bathroom; i.e. room for<br>bathing) | 9. Chùnglèuhngfóng hái bīndouh<br>a?                     |
| + 10. / <u>Néih gáan fóng</u> /<br>(your <u>room</u> )                  | 10. Néih gáan fóng hái bīndouh<br>a?                     |

## 3. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Bún syù hái syùfóng. T: The book is in the study.

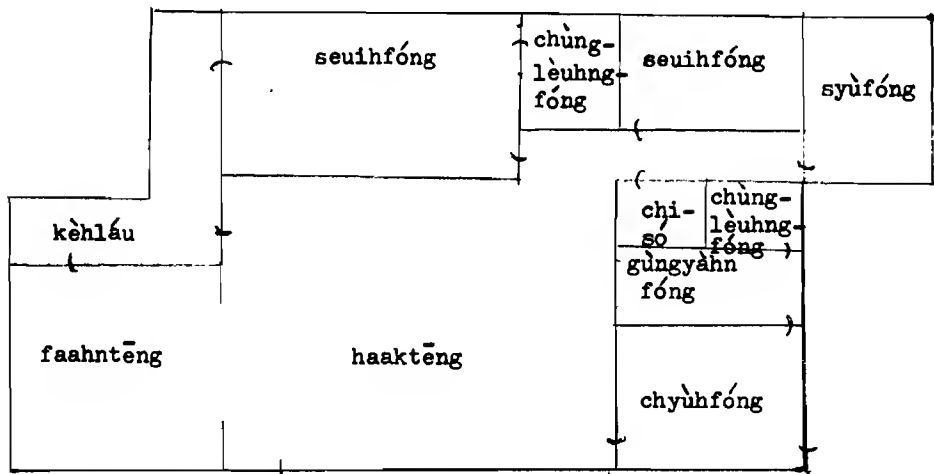
S: Jài bún syù hái  
syùfóng lā.

S: Please put the book in the  
study.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Jek chàhbūi hái ngóh nīdouh.   | 1. Jài jek chàhbūi hái ngóh<br>nīdouh lā.   |
| 2. Wùh chàh hái haaktēng yáhp-<br>bihn.   | 2. Jài wuh chàh hái haaktēng<br>yáhpbihn lā.  |
| 3. Jèung tóih hái kèhláu chéutbihn.   | 3. Jài jèung tóih hái kèhláu<br>chéutbihn lā.   |
| 4. Deui hàaih hái jèung yí hauh-<br>bihn.<br>The shoes are behind the<br>chair. | 4. Jài deui hàaih hái jèung<br>yí hauhbihn lā.<br>Please put the shoes<br>behind the chair. |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. Jèung boujǐ hái chisó yahpbihn.              | 5. Jài jèung boujǐ hái chisó yahpbihn lā.  |
| 6. Go tokpún hái tói douh.                      | 6. Jài go tokpún hái tói douh lā.  |
| + 7. Dǐ sàam hái <u>chòhng</u> gódouh.<br>(bed) | 7. Jài dǐ sàam hái chòhng gódouh lā.<br>Put the clothes there on the bed, would you. |

4. Expansion Drill



Ex: T: Nǐng chēutheui kèhláu lā. /dǐ chàh/ T: Take (it) out on the veranda.

S: Nǐng dǐ chàh chēutheui kèhláu lā. S: Take the tea out on the veranda.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Nǐng chēutheui haaktēng lā.<br>/dǐ bǐi-díp/   | 1. Nǐng dǐ bǐi-díp chēutheui haaktēng lā.   |
| 2. Nǐng chēutheui kèhláu lā.<br>/jèung yǐ/       | 2. Nǐng jèung yǐ chēutheui kèhláu lā.       |
| 3. Nǐng chēutheui chyùhfóng lā.<br>/go tokpún/   | 3. Nǐng go tokpún chēutheui chyùhfóng lā.   |
| 4. Nǐng chēutlaih kèhláu lā.<br>/jèung boujǐ/    | 4. Nǐng jèung boujǐ chēutlaih kèhláu lā.    |
| 5. Nǐng séuhngheui làuhseuhng lā.<br>/go sàamgá/ | 5. Nǐng go sàamgá séuhngheui làuhseuhng lā. |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. Níng lohkhéui làuhhah lā.<br>/dī chíjǐ/ | 6. Níng dī chíjǐ lohkhéui làuh-<br>hah lā. |
| 7. Níng lohklāih mūnhháu lā.<br>/dī syù/   | 7. Níng dī syù lohklāih mūnhháu<br>lā.     |

5. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Mhòì néih túhng ngóh ló gauh<br>fāangāan heui chyùhfóng<br>gódouh lā. | 1. Mhòì néih túhng ngóh ló<br>gauh fāangāan heui chyùh-<br>fóng gódouh lā. |
| 2. /dī wúndihp/faahntēng/  | 2. Mhòì néih túhng ngóh ló<br>dī wúndihp heui faahntēng<br>gódouh lā.      |
| 3. /wùh chàh/haaktēng/   | 3. Mhòì néih túhng ngóh ló<br>wùh chàh heui haaktēng<br>gódouh lā.         |
| 4. /tou bīi-díp/chyùhfóng/   | 4. Mhòì néih túhng ngóh ló<br>tou bīi-díp heui chyùh-<br>fóng gódouh lā.   |
| 5. /jèung boujǐ/kèhláu/  | 5. Mhòì néih túhng ngóh ló<br>jèung boujǐ heui kèhláu<br>gódouh lā.        |
| 6. /nǐdǐ sāangá/seuihfóng/   | 6. Mhòì néih túhng ngóh ló<br>nǐdǐ sāangá heui seuihfóng<br>gódouh lā.     |

6. Response Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: 1. T: Néih wah tǐng-<br>yaht wúih m̄h-<br>wúih yǐht a?<br>/nod/ | T: Do you think it's likely to be<br>hot tomorrow?                     |
| S: Ngóh wah tǐngyaht<br>yātdihng wúih<br>yǐht ge.                   | S: I think it certainly will.  |
| 2. T: Néih tǐngjiu wúih<br>m̄hwúih heui<br>ngānhòhng a?<br>/shake/  | T: Are you likely to go to the<br>bank tomorrow morning?               |
| S: Ngóh tǐngjiu m̄h-<br>wúih heui ngānhòhng.                        | S: It's very unlikely that I'll<br>go to the bank tomorrow<br>morning. |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Néih wah nīpáai wúih mhwúih dung a? /shake/<br>Do you think it will be cold these few days? | 1. Ngóh wah nīpáai mhwúih dung.<br>I don't think it will be cold these few days. |
| 2. Néih hahjau wúih mhwúih heui taam keuih a? /nod/  | 2. Ngóh hahjau yātdihng wúih heui ge.  |
| 3. Néih nīgo láihbaai wúih mhwúih chéng sík faahn a? /wah mhdihng/                             | 3. Wah mhdihng bo. Ngóh nī go láihbaai waahkjé wúih chéng, waahkjé m̄h chéng.    |
| 4. Kéuih tīngyaht hahjau wúih mhwúih dá m̄h jéuk a? /wah mhdihng/                              | 4. Wah mhdihng bo. Kéuih tīngyaht hahjau waahkjé wúih dá, waahkjé m̄hdá .        |
| 5. Néih gāmyaht hahjau wúih mhwúih sái sām a? /shake/  | 5. Ngóh gāmyaht hahjau mhwúih sái sām.   |
| 6. Néih gāmmáahn wúih mhwúih tái dihnsih a? /nod/  | 6. Ngóh gāmmáahn yātdihng wúih tái dihnsih ge.                                   |

## 7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: tong kwáhn

T: press a skirt

S: M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh tongjò tīuh kwáhn lā.

S: Please press this skirt for me.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. sái deui maht   | 1. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh sáijó deui maht lā.   |
| 2. hòì go chēung   | 2. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh hòì jò go chēung lā.  |
| + 3. <u>hòì douh m̄uhn</u><br><u>hòì = open</u><br><br><u>douh = M. for doors</u><br><br><u>m̄uhn = door</u> | 3. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh hòìjò douh m̄uhn lā.<br><u>Please open</u> the door for me. |
| 4. sái jek b̄ui  | 4. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh sáijó jek b̄ui lā.  |
| 5. maat jèung tóì  | 5. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh maat-jò jèung tóì lā.                                       |
| 6. chùng wùh chàh  | 6. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh chùng-jò wùh chàh lā.                                       |
| 7. gwa tīuh fu   | 7. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh gwa jò tīuh fu lā.  |

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 8. sàan go chēung                  | 8. M̀h̀gòì nēih t̀h̀ng ngòh sàan-jó go chēung lā. |
| + 9. <u>sàan</u> douh <u>m̀h̀n</u> | 9. M̀h̀gòì nēih t̀h̀ng ngòh sàanjó douh m̀h̀n lā. |
- 

## 8. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: Ǹidouh yáuh j̀eung<br>yát baak man jí.<br>/cheung/                                      | T: Here is a \$100 bill.                             |
| S: Ǹidouh yáuh j̀eung<br>yát baak man jí,<br>m̀h̀gòì nēih t̀h̀ng<br>ngòh cheungjó<br>kéuih lā. | S: Here is a \$100 bill, please<br>change it for me. |
- 
- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Ǹidouh yáuh t̀iuh kwáhn. /tong/ | 1. Ǹidouh yáuh t̀iuh kwáhn,<br>m̀h̀gòì nēih t̀h̀ng ngòh<br>tongjó kéuih lā. |
| 2. Ǹidouh yáuh gihh sām. /sái/     | 2. Ǹidouh yáuh gihh sām, m̀h̀gòì<br>nēih t̀h̀ng ngòh sáijó<br>kéuih lā.     |
| 3. Ǹidouh dóusé séui. /maat/       | 3. Ǹidouh dóusé séui, m̀h̀gòì<br>nēih t̀h̀ng ngòh maatjó<br>kéuih lā.       |
| 4. Ǹidouh yáuh dī yú. /jyú/        | 4. Ǹidouh yáuh dī yú, m̀h̀gòì<br>nēih t̀h̀ng ngòh jyújó<br>kéuih lā.        |
- 

9. Alteration Drill: Change ǹing...heui to j̀ai...háì

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Ex: T: Néih ǹingjó dī chín<br>heui b̀indouh a? | T: Where did you take the money? |
| S: Néih j̀aijó dī chín<br>háì b̀indouh a?       | S: Where did you put the money?  |
- 
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Néih ǹingjó t̀iuh m̀ouhgān<br>heui b̀indouh a? | 1. Néih j̀aijó t̀iuh m̀ouhgān<br>háì b̀indouh a? |
| 2. Néih ǹingjó gauh f̀aangāan heui<br>b̀indouh a? | 2. Néih j̀aijó gauh f̀aangāan<br>háì b̀indouh a? |
| 3. Néih ǹingjó dī gāng heui b̀in-<br>douh a?      | 3. Néih j̀aijó dī gāng háì<br>b̀indouh a?        |

+ 4. Néih nǐngjǒ jèung jǒu bou  
heui bǐndouh a?  
(morning paper)

5. Néih nǐngjǒ wùh chàh heui  
bǐndouh a?

4. Néih jǎijǒ jèung jǒu bou  
háih bǐndouh a?

5. Néih jǎijǒ wùh chàh háih  
bǐndouh a?

### 10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Heui chāansāt máaih  
dǐ bēng làih sihk.

T: I'm going to the restaurant  
to buy some cookies to eat.

S: Dǎng ngóh heui chāan-  
sat máaih dǐ bēng  
lǎih sihk ji dāk.

S: I'll go to the restaurant  
to buy some cookies to eat,  
that'll do it. (dissatisfied,  
but thinking of a solution  
to the problem.)

+ (lǎih = for the purpose  
of, in order to, to)

1. Heui syùfóng ló bún syù làih  
tái.

1. Dǎng ngóh heui syùfóng ló  
bún syù làih tái ji dāk.

2. Heui kèhláu ló jèung yí làih  
chóh.

2. Dǎng ngóh heui kèhláu ló  
jèung yí làih chóh ji dāk.

3. Heui chyùhfóng ló bùi dung  
séui làih yám.

3. Dǎng ngóh heui chyùhfóng ló  
búi dung séui làih yám  
ji dāk.

4. Heui chisó ló faai bou làih  
maat.

4. Dǎng ngóh heui chisó ló  
faai bou làih maat ji dāk.

5. Heui seuihfóng ló tǐuh kwáhn  
lǎih tong.

5. Dǎng ngóh heui seuihfóng ló  
tǐuh kwáhn làih tong ji  
dāk.

6. Heui seuihfóng ló go sàamgá  
lǎih gwa.

6. Dǎng ngóh heui seuihfóng  
ló go sàamgá làih gwa  
ji dāk.

Comment: lǎih as used above joins two VP, to form the con-  
struction: VP<sub>1</sub> in order to VP<sub>2</sub>. That this is not a  
heuilǎih use of lǎih is demonstrated in the following  
sentence:

Béi jèung bouji  
lǎih táiháh.

Give (me) the paper to read.

## 11. Response Drill

+ Ex: T: Jouhmāt néih m̀hyám  
gó bui gāfē a?  
/dung/

T: How come you're not drinking  
that cup of coffee?

S: Bui gāfē dungjó laak. S: (Because) it has gotten cold  
already.

1. Jouhmāt néih m̀hdaai gó go  
biu a? /laahn/  
daai biu = wear a watch

1. Go biu laahnjó la.  
(Because) it's broken.

+

Why don't you wear that  
watch?

2. Jouhmāt néih m̀hjeuk gó deui  
háaih a? /sāp/

2. Gó deui sāpjó la.

3. Jouhmāt néih m̀hmaaih gó bá  
jē a? /lahttaat/

3. Bá jē lahttaatjó la.

4. Jouhmāt néih m̀hjeuk gó gihn  
sēutsāam a? /chāuh/

4. Gihn sēutsāam chāuhjó la.

5. Jouhmāt néih m̀hyuhng gó tiuh  
m̀uhgān a? /lahttaat/

5. Tiuh m̀uhgān lahttaatjó la.

## 12. Response Drill

+ Ex: T: Dīngāai gam m̀hsūsām  
ga, gāmchi dóuséjò  
m̀yéh a? /chāh/  
(this time)

T: Why are you so careless,  
what did you spill this time?

S: Deuihm̀hyuh, ngóh  
dóuséjò dĩ chàh.

S: I am sorry, I spilled some  
tea.

1. Dīngāai gam m̀hsūsām ga, gām-  
chi dálaahnjó m̀yéh a?  
/jek bui/

1. Deuihm̀hyuh, ngóh dálaahnjó  
jek bui.

2. Dīngāai gam m̀hsūsām ga, gām-  
chi dálaahnjó m̀yéh a?  
/jek wun/  
What did you break this time?

2. Deuihm̀hyuh, ngóh dálaahnjó  
jek wun.

3. Dīngāai gam m̀hsūsām ga, gām-  
chi lauhdàijò m̀yéh a?  
/jì bāt/  
What did you leave behind  
this time?

3. Deuihm̀hyuh, ngóh lauhdàijò  
jì bāt.

4. Dīngāai gam m̀hsūsām ga, gām-  
chi dóuséjò m̀yéh a? /dĩ tòng/

4. Deuihm̀hyuh, ngóh dóuséjò  
dĩ tòng.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. Dīngáai gam m̄hsíusām ga, gām-chí jīnglaahttaatjō méyeh a?<br>/tíuh kwáhn/<br>What did you get dirty this time? | 5. Deuihm̄h̄jyuh, ngóh jīng-laahttaatjō tíuh kwáhn. |
| 6. Dīngáai gam m̄hsíusām ga, gām-chí jīngcháauhjō méyeh a?<br>/tíuh fu/<br>What did you get wrinkled this time?    | 6. Deuihm̄h̄jyuh, ngóh jīngcháauh-jō tíuh fu.       |
| 7. Dīngáai gam m̄hsíusām ga, gām-chí jīnglaahnjō méyeh a?<br>/jèung chòhng/  | 7. Deuihm̄h̄jyuh, ngóh jīnglaahn-jō jèung chòhng.   |

13. Transformation Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then transform according to the English instructions.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih níngjō tíuh kwáhn chēutheui tong.<br>He has taken ( <u>or</u> he took) the skirt to be ironed.<br>( <u>or</u> to iron) | 1. Kéuih níngjō tíuh kwáhn chēutheui tong.         |
| 2. /he didn't/  | 2. Kéuih móuh níng tíuh kwáhn chēutheui tong.      |
| 3. /has he...yet?/  | 3. Kéuih níngjō tíuh kwáhn chēutheui tong meih a?  |
| 4. /not yet/  | 4. Kéuih meih níng tíuh kwáhn chēutheui tong.      |
| 5. /is he going to?/  | 5. Kéuih níng m̄hning tíuh kwáhn chēutheui tong a? |
| 6. /he has, hasn't he?/   | 6. Kéuih níngjō tíuh kwáhn chēutheui tong àh.      |

14. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Aiyá! Lohkyúh tím bo! /yúhlāu/                            | T: Oh-oh, it's raining!                       |
| S: Hóuchóí ngóh daaijō yúhlāu jē.                                | S: At least it's lucky I brought my raincoat. |
| 1. Aiyá! Dungjō tím bo! /lāang-sāam/<br>Oh-oh, it's gotten cold. | 1. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijō lāang-sāam jē.         |



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. Aiya! Mhfaandāk ūkkéi síhk<br>ngaan tím bo! /ngaan jau/ | 2. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó ngaan<br>(jau) jē. |
| 3. Aiya! Ngáhnhòhng sàanjó mùhn<br>tím bo! /chín/          | 3. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó chín jē.           |
| 4. Aiya! Yiu béi yih baak mán tím<br>bo. /chín/            | 4. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó jē.                |
| 5. Aiya! Lohkyúh tím bo! /jē/                              | 5. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó jē jē.             |
| 6. Aiya! Kéuih móuh chín jáau<br>tím bo! /sàanjí/          | 6. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó sàanjí<br>jē.      |
| 7. Aiya! Nídouh móuh syù tái tím<br>bo! /boují/            | 7. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó boují<br>jē.       |

Comment: jē, 'merely,' 'not much,' here forms a set with hóuchóí 'fortunately,' 'luckily' to suggest: though something else would have been still better, from this minor aspect it's a good thing.

### 15. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ní tìuh kwàhn taai  
dyún laak.  
/wuhn/chèuhngdí/

T: This skirt is too short.  
/exchange/longer/

S: Ní tìuh kwàhn taai  
dyún laak--  
wuhngwo tìuh  
chèuhngdí ge lā.

S: This skirt is too short--  
please change it for another  
longer one.

1. Ní wùh chàh taai dung laak.  
/chúng/yiht/  
This pot of tea is too cold.

1. Ní wùh chàh taai dung laak--  
chúnggwo wùh yihdí ge lā.  
This pot of tea is too cold--  
make another hot one.

2. Ní gihn sēutsāam taai lahttaat  
laak. /jeuk/gònjehng/

2. Ní gihn sēutsāam taai laht-  
taat laak--jeukgwo gihn  
gònjehngdí ge lā.

3. Ní bún syù taai nàahn laak.  
/ló/yihdí/

3. Ní bún syù taai nàahn laak--  
lógwo bún yihdí ge lā.

4. Ní go tokpún taai sai laak.  
/níng daaihdí/

4. Ní go tokpún taai sai laak--  
nínggwo jèung daaihdí  
ge lā.

5. Ní tou gāsi taai yáih laak.  
/máaih/leng/

5. Ní tou gāsi taai yáih laak--  
máaihgwo tou lengdí ge  
lā.

Comment: The sentence suffix lā, raised intonation for polite suggestion may also be rendered la with mid intonation, giving a connotation of friendly advice.

## 16. Response Drill

Ex: T: Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu  
dóusé dī chàh a!

T: Be careful, don't spill the  
tea.

S: Ngóh hóu síusām ge  
la, m̀h̀wúih dóusé  
gé.

S: I'm being very careful, I  
won't spill it.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu dálaahn dī<br>būi a!   | 1. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,<br>m̀h̀wúih dálaahn gé.       |
| 2. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu jinglaahn<br>dī dīp a!<br>Be careful not to break the<br>dishes.           | 2. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,<br>m̀h̀wúih jinglaahn gé.     |
| 3. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu sélaahn jí<br>bat a!   | 3. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,<br>m̀h̀wúih sélaahn gé.       |
| 4. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu jinglaahттаат<br>gihn láangsāam a!   | 4. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,<br>m̀h̀wúih jinglaahттаат gé. |
| 5. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu dóusé dī tòng<br>a!  | 5. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,<br>m̀h̀wúih dóusé gé.         |
| 6. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu dálaahn go<br>bīu a!   | 6. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,<br>m̀h̀wúih dálaahn gé.       |
| 7. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu chóhcháuh<br>tíuh kwáhn a!<br>Be careful, don't get the<br>skirt wrinkled. | 7. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,<br>m̀h̀wúih chóhcháuh gé.     |

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) gwoláih nībihn = come over here
- 2) fòngbihn = convenient
- 3) māt + sentence = How come ...?
- 4) A Yèh = Grandfather (on father's side)
- 5) hái douh = here: and have it here
- 6) ngóh gāan fóng = my room
- 7) m̀h̀hah = if not, otherwise
- 8) sínji = only
- 9) góndākchit = there's enough time or You can make it or  
If you hurry you'll make it.

- 10) deihhá = floor  
 11) geidāk = remember

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. Do you think it'll rain today?
2. Do you suppose it's going to be cold today?
3. My cigarettes have vanished!
4. Please put the teapot on the tray.
5. I left my book on the bus!
6. Take care! Don't spill the beer!
7. It looks like rain.
8. I left the newspaper on the veranda.
9. Where shall I put the clothes? (says the laundress)
10. Could you please tell me what time it is now?
11. There aren't any towels in the bathroom.
12. Your shirt is dirty.
13. How come you're not drinking your tea?
14. This skirt is too long.
15. Aiyai! The weather has gotten cold!
16. Where's Younger Brother?
17. What did you break this time?

B. And he replies:

1. It's not likely to rain.
2. It's likely to be colder today than yesterday.
3. They're there on the table.
4. Where'd you put the tray?
5. Call the bus company and ask if they found it.
6. Wah! (or Aiyai!) I spilled it! Quick, bring a cloth to wipe it up!
7. I'll go close the windows.
8. I'll go get it for you.
9. Put them on the bed.
10. I'm sorry, I didn't wear a watch today.
11. A Sei, would you please take some towels into the bathroom.
12. I'll change into a clean one.
13. Because it's already cold.
14. Well then, wear a shorter one.
15. Fortunately I brought a sweater.
16. He's in the living room reading the paper.
17. Just a water glass, that's all.

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 24

1. Baihlaak!	ex: exclamation of annoyance
2. Baihlok!	ex: var. of Baihlaak!
3. chūng	n: window
4. chòhng	n: bed
5. chùng	v: infuse
6. chùng chàh	vo: make tea
7. chùnglèuhngfóng	n: bathroom; i.e. room for bathing
8. chyùhfóng	n: kitchen
9. daai bíu	vo: wear a watch
10. dīt	v: drop
11. ditlaahn	v: break by dropping [drop-break]
12. dòuh	m: M. for doors
13. dóusé	v: spill
14. faahntēng	n: dining room
15. faai	n/m: piece, M. for dishcloth
16. faaidí	adv: hurry and...; ...right away
17. fóng	n: room
18. gānchi	Tw: this time
19. <u>V</u> gwo <u>M</u>	Ph: <u>V</u> another <u>M</u> , another as replacement for original one
20. haaktēng	n: living room
21. hòi mùhn	vo: open the door(s)
22. hóuchóí	Ph: luckily, 'Thank goodness'
23. Hóuchoi...jē	Ph: Fortunately..., at least
24. Hóusēng!	Ph: 'Be careful'
25. jài	v: put, place
26. ...jì dēk.	Ph: ...that'll do it. only then will the requirements be satisfied.
27. jóu bou	n: morning paper
28. kèhláu	n: veranda, terrace
29. laahn	v/adj: break, broken
30. làih	v: to, in order to, for the purpose of
31. lauhdái	v: leave/left (something) behind
32. lohkyúh	vo: to rain

---

33. maat	v: wipe, polish; also, to wet-mop
34. mùhn	n: door
35. sàan	v: close, shut
36. sàan mùhn	vo: close the door(s)
37. seuihfóng	n: bedroom
38. syùfóng	n: study
39. syùtói	n: desk
40. Taaitáai	te: here: 'ma'am,' 'Missy.' term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house.
41. tokpún	n: tray
42. wùh	n/m: pot; container Measure
43. wúih	auxV: likely to, going to (indicates strong possibility)

---

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mrs. Wong is reading late, when her son comes into the living room:)

Màhmā

yíhwàih

think, have the impression  
(sometimes this proves to  
be 'mistakenly had the  
impression')

Ngóh júhng yíhwàih néih fanjó  
tím.

And I thought you had already  
gone to bed.

Māt + sentence

How come?+ sentence

Māt juhng m̄hfan a?

How come you still haven't gone  
to bed?

Jái

ngáahnfan

sleepy

sèuiyíhn

although

sèuiyíhn..., daahnhaih...

although ..., still ...

fanjeuhk

get to sleep, fall asleep

fanm̄hjeuhk

can't get to sleep

Sèuiyínn ngáahnfan, daahnhaih  
fanm̄hjeuhk.

Although I was sleepy, I still  
couldn't get to sleep.

Màhmā

tóuhngoh

hungry

Tóuh m̄htóuhngoh a?

Are you hungry?

Séung m̄hséung síhk dī yéh nē?

Would you like something to  
eat?

Jái

ngohngódei

a bit hungry

Ngóh gokdāk ngohngódei.

I do feel a bit hungry.

Màhmā

Néih júngyi síhk mēyéh a?

What would you like to eat?

Jái

mēyéh

anything, everything;  
whatever

Mēyéh dōu dāk. syutgwaih	Anything is OK. refrigerator
Táiháh syutgwaih yáuh mātýéh sín.	I'll see what's in the refrigerator first.
	(He looks in the refrigerator, and takes out an orange:)
laahnjó	spoiled, rotten (of perishables)
Yí!--ní go cháang laahnjó laak.	Whew!--this orange is rotten.
	<u>Máhmā</u>
dám	throw out, discard
Gám, dámjó kéuih lā.	Well then, throw it out.
hùhng	red
hùhng pihnggwó	red apples
sóng	crisp
tíh	sweet
Dí hùhng pihnggwó yauh sòng yauh tíh--síhk go lā!	The red apples are crisp and sweet--eat one!
	<u>Jái</u>
Hóu aak.	OK.
guih	tired
Ngòh hóu gúih a--ngòh heui fan la.	I'm tired--I'm going to bed.
	<u>Máhmā</u>
Haih lòh.	That's right.
hóu + verb phrase + la	'It would be a good idea to ...' a form used in making a suggestion
hóu heui fan la	It's a good idea to go to bed.
yùhgwó mhhaih <u>or</u> mhhaih	if not, otherwise
jíngsàhn	energy, health
Hóu heui fan la--yùhgwó mhhaih, tíngyaht néih jauh mhgau jíngsàhn ge la.	You'd better go to bed-- otherwise you won't have enough energy tomorrow.

Jái

Tíngjiu m̀hsái gam jóu giu ngóh.

You don't have to call me so early tomorrow.

Màhmā

Gám, géidím giu néih a?

Well, what time shall I call you?

Jái

géidím

anytime, whenever

Néih géidím héisàn, jauh géidím giu ngóh lā.

Call me when you get up.

[Whenever you get up, call me at that time.]

chih

unpunctual, late (for an appointment)

chih dou

arrive late

Daahnhaih m̀hhou taai ngaan-- ngóh m̀hséung chih dou.

But not too late--I don't want to get to work late.

**B. Recapitulation:**

(Mrs. Wong is reading late, when her son comes into the living room:)

Màhmā

Ngóh juhng yíhwaih néih fanjó tim.

I thought you had already gone to bed.

Māt juhng m̀hfan a?

How come you still haven't gone to bed?

Jái

Sèuiyihn ngáanfan, daahnhaih fanm̀hjeuhk.

I was sleepy, but I couldn't get to sleep.

Màhmā

Tóuh m̀htóuhngoh a?

Are you hungry?

Séung m̀hséung sihk dī yéh nē?

Would you like something to eat?

Jái

Ngóh gokdāk ngohngódei.

I do feel a bit hungry.

Màhmā

Néih jùngyi sihk mēyéh a?

What would you like to eat?



Jái

Mēyéh dōu dāk.  
Táiháh syutgwaih yáuh mēyéh sin.  
Yí!--ní go cháang laahnjó laak.

Anything is OK.  
I'll see what's in the  
refrigerator first.  
Whew--this orange is rotten.

Màhmā

Gám, dāmjó kéuih lā.  
Dí hùhng pihnggwó yauh sóng  
yauh tihm--sìhk go lā.

Well then, throw it out.  
The red apples are crisp and  
sweet--have one!

Jái

Hóu aak.  
Ngóh hóu guih a--ngóh heui  
fan la.

OK.  
I'm tired--I'm going to bed.

Màhmā

Haih lòh.  
Hóu heui fan la--yùhgwó mhhaih,  
tingyaht néih jauh mhgau  
jìngsàhn ge la.

That's right.  
It's a good idea to go to bed--  
otherwise you won't have  
enough energy tomorrow.

Jái

Tingjiu mhsái gam jóu giu ngóh.

You don't have to call me so  
early tomorrow.

Màhmā

Gám, géidím giu néih a?

What time shall I call you?

Jái

Néih géidím héisàn, jauh géidím  
giu ngóh lā.  
Daahnhaiah mhhóu taai ngaan--  
ngóh mhséung chíh dou.

Call me whenever you get up.  
But not too late--I don't want  
to get to work late.

## II. NOTES

1. yíhwàih 1) '(mistakenly) thought'  
 2) 'to be under the impression that...', i.e.,  
 think (without being entirely certain)

Ex: 1) 'mistakenly thought'

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A: Mhóu nǐng tíuh kwáhn<br>chéutheui-- ngóh yiu<br>jeuk ga. | Don't take that skirt away--<br>I want to wear it.  |
| B: Deuimhjyuh-- ngóh yíhwàih<br>tíuh kwáhn yiu sai ge.      | Excuse me-- I thought the skirt<br>was to be washed. [mistakenly<br>thought the skirt was<br>wished-to-be-washed thing] |

(See BC and Drill 10)

Ex: 2) 'think (without being entirely certain)'  
 'to be under the impression that...'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ngóh yíhwàih kéuih làihbaailuhk<br>mhfaan gung. | I think he<br>doesn't work on Saturdays. |
|---|--|

2. Sèuiyíhn...., daahnhaih... 'Although..., still...;' 'though..., still...;' 'Although..... nevertheless....'

This is another set of paired conjunctions joining two clauses in a two-clause sentence. The order is irreversible. Use of both sèuiyíhn and daahnhaih in the sentence is preferred.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: Sèuiyíhn ngáanfan, daahn-<br>haih fanmhjeuhk. | Though I was sleepy, I still<br>couldn't get to sleep. |
|---|--|

(See BC and Drill 12)

3. Duplication of adjectives

- a. A duplicated adjective with the suffix -déi, is an adjective pattern meaning 'a little bit Adjective,' 'fairly Adjective.'

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Ex: 1. chéuhng<br>chéuhngchéungdéi | long<br>fairly long  |
| 2. hùhng<br>hùhnghúngdéi           | red<br>having some red color (i.e., having red<br>in it, but not red all over) |
| 3. laaht<br>laahtlátatéi           | peppery<br>a bit peppery   |

- b. With the exception of adjectives in high level and high falling tones, the second syllable in the duplicated adjective pattern is in the high rising tone. The second syllable of an adjective of high level or high falling tone retains its ordinary tone shape in the duplicated pattern.

Ex: hl: s̄aps̄apd̄éi	a bit damp
hf: sȳunsȳund̄éi	a bit sour
hr: f̄uf̄ud̄éi	a bit bitter
ml: dungd̄ungd̄éi	a bit cold
lf: h̄uhnḡuhnḡud̄éi	having some red color
lr: ch̄uhnḡch̄unḡd̄éi	somewhat heavy
ll: ngohnḡod̄éi	a little hungry

(See BC and Drill 2)

4. Sentence suffix lòh = making a bid for sympathy

Frankly this is just a guess, but it seems that the speaker uses sentence suffix lòh to make a bid for the addressee's sympathy.

Ex: 1. A: B̄ingo d̄álaahn ga?	Who broke it?
B: K̄éuih lòh.	He did. (Don't look at <u>me</u> that way.)
2. A: N̄éih séung fan làh?	You're going to bed, are you?
B: Haih lòh. Ngóh hóu ngáahnfan laak.	That's right-- I'm very sleep. (poor me)

(See BC)

5. Hóu V la. = 'it would be a good idea to V,' 'perhaps you ought to V,' 'hadn't you better V?'

- a. Hóu V is an imperative form: 'you'd better V.' The sentence suffix la connoting friendly advice makes the tone of the imperative helpful rather than threatening.

Ex: Hóu heui fan la--	You'd better go to bed--
yuhgwó m̄h̄h̄aih, t̄ingyaht	otherwise you won't have
neih jauh m̄hgau j̄ingsahn	enough energy tomorrow.
ge laak.	

(See BC and Drill 4)

- b. The sentence suffix of the imperative Hóu V can be the raised intonation lā, polite but more urgent than la.

(See Drill 3)

- c. Hóu V 'you ought to V' is the opposite of Mhóu V, 'don't V.'

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Ex: 1. Hóu yám dī gāfē la--<br/>yùhgwó mhhaih, já chē<br/>gójān jauh wúih<br/>fanjeuhk ge la.</p> | <p>You ought to drink some coffee,<br/>otherwise you might fall<br/>asleep driving.</p>            |
| <p>2. Mhóu yám gāfē-- yùhgwó<br/>mhhaih, jauh fanmhjeuhk<br/>ge la.</p>                              | <p>You'd better not drink any<br/>coffee, otherwise you might<br/>not be able to get to sleep.</p> |

6. jingsàhn, 1) (N) 'energy'  
2) (Adj) 'feel well'

jingsàhn is both a noun and an adjective, and patterns differently in the two forms.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Ex: 1. Kéuih yāt dī jingsàhn<br/>dōu mouh.</p> | <p>He doesn't have one little bit<br/>of energy.</p> |
| <p>2. Kéuih mhhjingsàhn.</p>                      | <p>He isn't feeling well.</p>                        |

7. yùhgwó mhhaih 'otherwise,' 'if not'

yùhgwó mhhaih reduces also to simply mhhaih, with no change in meaning. The two are used interchangeably.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Ex: Hóu heui fan la-- (yùhgwó)<br/>mhhaih, tingyaht neih jauh<br/>mhgau jingsahn ge la.</p> | <p>You'd better get on to bed--<br/>if not, you won't have enough<br/>energy tomorrow.</p> |
|--|--|

(See BC and Drill 4)

8. Question-words used as Non-questions.

- a. Question-words in Cantonese also serve as non-question substantives whose meanings derive from their basic question-word meanings:

Examples	As QW:	As Non-Question:
1. mēyéh	what?	anything, whatever, what, that thing
2. bīngō	who?	anyone, whoever, who, that person
3. bīndouh	where?	anywhere, wherever, where, at that place
4. géisìh	when?	anytime, whenever, when, at that time
5. bīn-M	which?	any one, whichever, which, that one
6. dīm	how?	any way, however
7. géi(dō)**	how many? how much?	any amount, however much/many, whatever amount
8. géi-	which number	any one, whichever

\*\*géidō as question word has high level tone on -dō;  
as a non-question, it has high falling tone.

Ex: Yiu géidō chin a?    How much money do you want?  
  Géidō dōu dāk.         Any amount will do.  
  Séung bēi géidò,      Give whatever amount you wish.  
  juah géido lā.

b. What we are calling 'non-question QWs,' some other writers identify as  
'Question-words used as Indefinites.'

c. There are three patterns in which the QWs are used as non-question QWs:  
1. QW Subject + dōu Predicate = anyone, anything, anytime, etc.

This pattern has a non-question QW as subject in a single-clause  
sentence, followed by dōu introducing the predicate.

Ex. 1. Mēyéh dōu hóu.         Anything is fine.  
  or:  
  Everything is fine.  
  2. Géisìh dōu dāk.         Any time is fine.  
  3. Bīngō dōu jùngyi.        [Whosoever all like.], i.e.,  
  (He) likes everybody.  
  4. Bīngō dōu m̀h̀j̀ungyi.    [Whosoever all not like.], i.e.,  
  (He) doesn't like anyone.

(See BC and Drill 5)

In regard to the QW subjects in the sentences just above, remember  
that in Cantonese the grammatical subject is what is being talked  
about, not necessarily the doer of the verb. Note that in sentences  
#3 and #4 above the English translation requires a different arrange-  
ment of subject and predicate.

A QW Subject + dōu Predicate sentence can be in Topic:Comment form.

Ex:	Topic	Comment		
		Subject	Predicate	
	Kéuih	bīngō	dōu jūngyi.	[(In regard to) him, whoever, always likes.] i.e., He likes everybody.

2. QW, jauh QW = whoever, whenever, however much, etc.

In this pattern the QW is in both clauses of a double-clause sentence.

Ex:	1. Néih jūngyi <u>mēyéh</u> , jauh <u>máaih mēyéh</u> la.	[You like what, then buy what.] i.e., Buy whatever you like.
	2. Néih géidím héisàn, jauh géidím giu ngóh lā.	[You what time get up, then what call me.] i.e., Call me whenever you get up.

(See BC and Drills 6, 7, 8, 9)

The jauh in the second clause follows the QW of that clause if the QW is the subject of the second clause.

Ex:	QW, QW jauh...	
	Ngóh jídou bīngō, bīngō jauh góng.	[I point to who, who then speaks.] i.e., Whoever I point to should respond.

(See Classroom Phrases, Lesson 3)

3. Negative Verb + non-question QW = not anything, anyone, anywhere, etc.

This pattern has the non-question QW as part of the predicate, following a negative verb.

Ex:	1. Ngóh móuh heui bīndouh.	I didn't go anywhere. <u>or</u> : I didn't go anywhere in particular--no place special.
	2. A: Jauh mēyéh a? B: Móuh mēyeh.	Wha'cha doing? Nothing special. [Not (doing) anything.]
	3. A: Máaih bīn gihn a? B: Mmáaih bīn gihn.	Which one are you going to buy? (said to friend you are shopping with) I'm not going to buy any.

## III. DRILLS

## 1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Dī tòng taai yíht  
laak.

T: The soup is too hot.

+ S: Dī tòng yíht  
gwotàuh laak.  
Adj + gwotàuh =  
excessively Adj

S: The soup is much too hot.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Dī cháang taai gwai laak.  | 1. Dī cháang gwai gwotàuh laak.         |
| 2. Dī bou taai yáih laak.   | 2. Dī bou yáih gwotàuh laak.            |
| 3. Dī tói taai gòu laak.  | 3. Dī tói gòu gwotàuh laak.             |
| + 4. Dī pihnggwó taai <u>syùn</u> laak.<br>The apples are too <u>sour</u> .   | 4. Dī pihnggwó syùn gwotàuh<br>laak.    |
| + 5. Dī ngàuhyuhk taai <u>sàang</u> laak.<br>The beef is too <u>raw</u> .<br><u>sàang</u> = <u>underdone (of cooked<br/>things); green (of fruits)</u>  | 5. Dī ngàuhyuhk sàang gwotàuh<br>laak.  |
| + 6. Dī yú taai <u>hàahm</u> laak.<br>The fish is too <u>salty</u> .  | 6. Dī yú hàahm gwotàuh laak.            |
| + 7. Dī hā taai <u>suhk</u> laak.<br>The prawns are overcooked.<br>[done, cooked]<br><u>suhk</u> = <u>done (of cooked things);<br/>ripe (of fruits)</u> | 7. Dī hā suhk gwotàuh laak.             |
| + 8. Dī gafē taai <u>fú</u> laak.<br>The coffee is too strong<br>[bitter].  | 8. Dī gafē fú gwotàuh laak.             |
| 9. Gihn sēutsāam taai hùhng laak.   | 9. Gihn sēutsāam hùhng gwotàuh<br>laak. |
| + 10. Tíuh kwáhn taai <u>làahm</u> laak.<br>The skirt is too <u>blue</u> .  | 10. Tíuh kwáhn làahm gwotàuh<br>laak.   |
| + 11. Dī chēunglím taai <u>luhk</u> laak.<br>The curtains are too <u>green</u> .  | 11. Dī chēunglím luhk gwotàuh<br>laak.  |
| + 12. Dī jí taai <u>wòhng</u> laak.<br>The papers are too <u>yellow</u> .   | 12. Dī jí wòhng gwotàuh laak.           |
| + 13. Dī choi taai <u>laaht</u> laak.<br>The food is too <u>peppery</u> .   | 13. Dī choi laaht gwotàuh laak.         |
| + 14. Dī pihnggwó taai <u>suhk</u> laak.<br>[ripe]<br>The apples are over-ripe.   | 14. Dī pihnggwó suhk gwotàuh<br>laak.   |

Comment: gwotàuh has a variant pronunciation, gwótàuh.

## 2. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh séung máaih  
gàan daaih ngūk.

T: I want to buy a big house.

S: Ngóh séung máaih  
gàan daaih-  
dáaidéi ge ngūk.

S: I want to buy a fairly big  
house.

1. Ngóh séung máaih tìuh hùng  
kwáhn.  
I want to buy a red skirt.

1. Ngóh séung máaih tìuh hùng-  
hùngdéi ge kwáhn.  
I want to buy a skirt  
that has some red in it.

2. Ngóh séung síhk faai hàahm béng.  
I want to eat a salty cake.

2. Ngóh séung síhk faai hàahm-  
háamdéi ge béng.  
I want to eat a cake that  
is a bit salty.

3. Ngóh séung yám bùi yíht chàh.

3. Ngóh séung yám bùi yíhtyít-  
déi ge chàh.  
I want to drink a cup of  
tea that is hot (but not  
too hot).

4. Ngóh séung máaih go sai syut-  
gwaih.

4. Ngóh séung máaih go saisái-  
déi ge syutgwaih.

5. Ngóh jùngyi síhk dī syùn yéh.

5. Ngóh jùngyi síhk dī syùn-  
syúndéi ge yéh.

6. Ngóh jùngyi yám dī dung yéh.

6. Ngóh jùngyi yám dī dung-  
dúngdéi ge yéh.

7. Ngóh séung máaih dī pèhng bou.

7. Ngóh séung máaih dī pèhng-  
péngdéi ge bou.

8. Ngóh jùngyi síhk dī laaht yéh.

8. Ngóh jùngyi síhk dī laaht-  
láatdéi ge yéh.

## 3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Néih hóu fan lā.

1. Néih hóu fan lā.

2. /heui/

2. Néih hóu heui lā.

3. /héi sán/

3. Néih hóu héi sán lā.

4. /síhk jóuchāan/

4. Néih hóu síhk jóuchāan lā.



5. /fàan gùng/  
6. /tái yīsāng/  
7. /wuhn sām/

5. Néih hóu fàan gùng lā.  
6. Néih hóu tái yīsāng lā.  
7. Néih hóu wuhn sām lā.

## 4. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Néih hóu faaidí heui T: You'd better hurry and go to  
ngàhnhòhng ló chín the bank to get money. If  
la, (yùhgwó) mhhaih, not, you won't have enough  
néih jauh mhgau chín money to use.  
yuhng ge la.

S: Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí S: If you don't hurry and go to  
heui ngàhnhòhng ló the bank to get money, you  
chín, néih jauh won't have enough money to  
mhgau chín yuhng use.  
ge la.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Néih hóu faaidí heui fan la,<br>mhhaih, tīngyaht néih jauh<br>mhgau jīngsāhn ge la.  | 1. Yùhgwó néih mheui fan,<br>néih tīngyaht jauh mhgau<br>jīngsāhn ge la.         |
| 2. Néih hóu faaidí dá dihnwá bēi<br>kéuih la, mhhaih, kéuih<br>jauh chēutjō gaai ge la. | 2. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí dá<br>dihnwá bēi kéuih, kéuih<br>jauh chēutjō gaai ge la. |
| 3. Néih hóu faaidí heui máaih la,<br>mhhaih, jauh maaihsai ge la.                       | 3. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí heui<br>maaih, jauh maaihsai ge<br>la.                    |
| 4. Néih hóu faaidí jough la, mhhaih<br>jauh gónmhchit ge la.                            | 4. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí jough,<br>néih jauh gónmhchit ge la.                      |
| 5. Néih hóu faaidí yám lá, mhhaih<br>jauh dung ge la.                                   | 5. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí yám,<br>jauh dung ge la.                                  |
| 6. Néih hóu faaidí níngheui sái<br>la, mhhaih jauh mhgóndākchit<br>ge la.               | 6. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí níng-<br>heui sái, néih jauh<br>mhgóndākchit ge la.       |
| 7. Néih hóu fàan ngūkkéi la,<br>mhhaih néih taaitāai jauh<br>wán néih ge la.            | 7. Yùhgwó néih mhfàan ngūkkéi,<br>néih taaitāai jauh wán<br>néih ge la.          |

## 5. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih jùngyi sihk  
mēyéh a?

T: What do you want to eat?

S: Mēyéh dōu dāk.

S: Anything is OK.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| + 1. Néih wán bīngō tēng dihnwá a?<br>Who do you want to speak to<br>(on the telephone.) | 1. <u>Bīngō</u> dōu dāk.<br><u>Anyone</u> will do.                    |
| + 2. Néih séung heui bīndouh a?<br>Where do you want to go?                              | 2. <u>Bīndouh</u> dōu dāk.<br><u>Anywhere</u> will do.                |
| + 3. Ngóh géisih heui néihdouh a?<br>When shall I come to see<br>you?                    | 3. <u>Géisih</u> dōu dāk.<br><u>Any time</u> is fine.                 |
| + 4. Néih oi bīn gihn a?<br>Which one do you want?                                       | 4. <u>Bīn</u> gihn dōu dāk.<br><u>Any one</u> will do.                |
| + 5. Néih séung máaih géidō a?<br>How many do you want to buy?                           | 5. <u>Géidō</u> dōu dāk.<br><u>Any number</u> --it doesn't<br>matter. |
| 6. Tihng hái bīn bihn a?<br>Which side should I stop on?                                 | 6. <u>Bīn bihn</u> dōu dāk.<br>Either side is OK.                     |
| + 7. Néih yiu dím jōuh a?<br>How do you want to do it?                                   | 7. <u>Dím</u> dōu dāk.<br><u>Any way</u> is fine.                     |

## 6. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yáuh chin gó-  
ján, jauh máaih lā.

T: When I have money, I('ll) buy  
it.

S: Ngóh géisí yáuh  
chin, jauh géisí  
máaih lā.

S: Whenever I have money, I buy.  
or  
When I have the money, I'll  
buy.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh héi sán góján, jauh<br>giuséng néih lā.  | 1. Ngóh géisí héi sán, jauh<br>géisih giuséng néih lā.        |
| 2. Ngóh dākhaahn góján, jauh wán<br>néih choh lā.  | 2. Ngóh géisí dākhaahn, jauh<br>géisí wán néih choh lā.       |
| 3. Ngóh tóuhngoh góján, jauh sihk<br>lā.   | 3. Ngóh géisí tóuh ngoh, jauh<br>géisí sihk lā.               |
| 4. Ngóh héisàn góján, jauh dá<br>dihnwá bei néih lā.   | 4. Ngóh géisí héisàn, jauh<br>géisí dá dihnwá bei néih<br>lā. |
| + 5. Ngóh <u>génghot</u> góján, jauh yám<br>lā.<br>When I am <u>thirsty</u> , I('ll)<br>drink. | 5. Ngóh géisí <u>génghot</u> , jauh<br>géisí yám lā.          |

Comment: Here the final lā represents la for change, plus raised intonation for liveliness.

---

7. Stimulus-Response Drill

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Ex: T: Ngóh pa joughm̄hsaai bo.  | T: I'm afraid I won't get them all done. |
| S: Jouhdāk géidò, jauh géidò lā. | S: Do as many as you can, then.          |
| 1. Ngóh pa maaih̄m̄hsaai bo.     | 1. Maaih̄dāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.       |
| 2. Ngóh pa sihk̄m̄hsaai bo.      | 2. Sihkdāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.         |
| 3. Ngóh pa sé̄m̄hsaai bo.        | 3. Sédāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.           |
| 4. Ngóh pa ninḡm̄hsaai bo.      | 4. Ningdāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.         |
| 5. Ngóh pa b̄n̄m̄hsaai bo.       | 5. B̄ndāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.          |

---

8. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Néih j̄ngyi sihk m̄yéh a?          | T: What would you like to eat?  |
| S: Néih j̄ngyi sihk m̄yéh, jauh m̄yéh lā. | S: Eat what(ever) you like.   |
| 1. Néih j̄ngyi heui b̄ndouh a?            | 1. Néih j̄ngyi heui b̄ndouh, jauh b̄ndouh lā.<br>Go where you want to go. |
| 2. Néih j̄ngyi tái b̄n b̄n a?             | 2. Néih j̄ngyi tái b̄n b̄n, jauh b̄n b̄n lā.                              |
| 3. Néih j̄ngyi yám m̄yéh a?               | 3. Néih j̄ngyi yám m̄yéh, jauh m̄yéh lā.                                  |
| 4. Néih j̄ngyi taam b̄ngo a?              | 4. Néih j̄ngyi taam b̄ngo, jauh b̄ngo lā.                                 |
| 5. Néih j̄ngyi paak b̄ndouh a?            | 5. Néih j̄ngyi paak b̄ndouh, jauh b̄ndouh lā.                             |
| 6. Néih j̄ngyi jeuk b̄n ḡhn a?           | 6. Néih j̄ngyi jeuk b̄n ḡhn, jauh b̄n ḡhn lā.                           |

## 9. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih géidím síhk  
faahn a? /jǐnghóu/

T: When do you eat dinner?

S: Géidím jǐnghóu, jauh  
géidím síhk lā.

S: When its ready, then I eat. or  
I'll eat whenever it's ready.

1. Néih oi bǐn gihn a? /hóu/

1. Bǐn gihn hóu, jauh oi bǐn  
gihn lā.

2. Néih máaih bǐn jek a?  
/daaih/

2. Bǐn jek daaih, jauh máaih  
bǐn jek lā.

3. Néih láihbaaigéi heui ngànhòhng  
a? /dākhaahn/

3. Láihbaaigéi dākhaahn, jauh  
láihbaaigéi heui lā.

4. Néih daap mēyéh chē jáu a?  
/lāih sǐn/

4. Mēyéh chē lāih sǐn, jauh  
daap mēyéh lā.

5. Néih heui bǐndoun síhk aan a?  
/pēhng/

5. Bǐndouh pēhng, jauh heui  
bǐndouh lā.

6. Néih séung tái bǐn bún syü  
a? /yih/

6. Bǐn bún yih, jauh tái bǐn  
bún lā.

## 10. Stimulus-Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih meih héi sǎn  
bo.

T: She hasn't gotten up yet.  
(very definite)

S: Ngóh juhng yíhwàih  
kéuih héijó sǎn  
tím.

S: And I thought she had already  
gotten up!

1. Ngóh meih giuséng kéuih bo.

1. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih giu-  
séngjó kéuih tím.

2. Kéuih meih fan bo.

2. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih kéuih  
fanjó tím.

+ 3. Nǐdouh gáu dím meih hòi mùhn  
bo.  
The store isn't open at  
9 o'clock.  
(time + hòi mùhn =  
opening time at a store)

3. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih nǐdouh  
gáu dím hòi jó mùhn tím.

+ 4. Gūngsǐ sahp dím meih sàan mùhn  
ga.  
The store won't have closed  
by ten o'clock.  
(time + sàan mùhn =  
closing time at a store)  
[at 10 o'clock not yet closed]

4. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih gūngsǐ  
sahp dím sàanjó mùhn tím.  
And I thought they would  
be closed by ten!

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 5. Néih ga chē meih jǐnghóu bo.      | 5. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih ga chē jǐnghoujǒ tǐm.      |
| 6. Ngóh meih maat gònjehng chisó bo. | 6. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih maat gònjehngjǒ chisó tǐm. |

Comment: tǐm adds to the sentences above the connotation that the situation expressed in the sentence is different from what the speaker expected. It may be a disappointment, as in the example sentence, or it may be a pleasant surprise, as in sentence #4, but in any event it is contrary to the speaker's preconception of the matter.

11. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Faaidǐ yámjǒ kéuih lā!<br>Hurry up and drink it! | 1. Faaidǐ yámjǒ kéuih lā!   |
| 2. /dám/  | 2. Faaidǐ dāmjǒ kéuih lā!   |
| 3. /níng/   | 3. Faaidǐ níngjǒ kéuih lā!  |
| 4. /máaih/  | 4. Faaidǐ máaihjǒ kéuih lā! |
| 5. /wuhn/   | 5. Faaidǐ wuhnjǒ kéuih lā!  |
| 6. /maat/   | 6. Faaidǐ maatjǒ kéuih lā!  |

12. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh haih Méihgwok-yáhn. Ngóh jǔngyi síhk Jǔngchoi.      T: I am an American.  
I like to eat Chinese food.

S: Sèuiyǐhn ngóh haih Méihgwokyáhn, daahnhaih ngóh jǔngyi síhk Jǔngchoi.      S: Although I am an American, still I like to eat Chinese food.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Hèunggóng tǐnhei hóu yíht.<br>Ngóh mǎhjǔngyi yàuhséui.    | 1. Sèuiyǐhn Hèunggóng tǐnhei hóu yíht, daahnhaih ngóh mǎhjǔngyi yàuhséui. |
| 2. Dǐ yéh hóu gwai.<br>Kéuih máaihjǒ hóudò.                  | 2. Sèuiyǐhn dǐ yéh hóu gwai, daahnhaih kéuih máaihjǒ hóudò.               |
| 3. Kéuih mǎhjǔngyi tái hei.<br>Kéuih hóu jǔngyi tái dihnsih. | 3. Sèuiyǐhn kéuih mǎhjǔngyi tái hei, daahnhaih kéuih hóu                  |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. Kéuih sĭk góng Gwóngdùngwá.<br>Kéuih hóu pa góng.                       | júngyi tái dihnsih.  |
| 5. Kéuih hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù.<br>Kéuih m̀hbatdāk yihp.                   | 4. Sèuiyihñ kéuih sĭk góng<br>Gwóngdùngwá, daahnhaih<br>kéuih hóu pa góng.                       |
| 6. Kéuih yĭngĭng gitjó fàn.<br>Kéuih juhng yáuh hóudò néuih-<br>pàhngyauh. | 5. Sèuiyihñ kéuih hóu kàhnlihk<br>duhk syù, daahnhaih kéuih<br>m̀hbatdāk yihp.                   |
|  | 6. Sèuiyihñ kéuih yĭngĭng<br>gitjó fàn, daahnhaih kéuih<br>juhng yáuh hóudò néuih-<br>pàhngyauh. |

## 13. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: 1. T: Dĭ pĭhnggwó<br>jánhaih hóu-<br>sĭk laak.<br>/sóng/tĭhm/ | T: The apples are really good.<br>/crisp/sweet/                |
| S: Dĭ pĭhnggwó yauh<br>sóng yauh tĭhm,<br>jánhaih hóusĭk<br>laak. | S: The apples are crisp and sweet<br>--really good.            |
| 2. T: Dĭ tòng m̀hhóuyám<br>ge. /fú/háahm/                         | T: The soup tastes awful.<br>/bitter/salty/                    |
| S: Dĭ tòng yauh fú<br>yauh háahm<br>m̀hhóuyám ge.                 | S: The soup is bitter and salty<br>--it tastes awful.          |
| 1. Dĭ chòi m̀hhóusĭk ge.<br>/syùn/laaht/                          | 1. Dĭ chòi yauh syùn yauh<br>laaht, m̀hhóusĭk ge.              |
| 2. Dĭ ngáuhyuhk m̀hhóusĭk ge.<br>/sáang/háahm/                    | 2. Dĭ ngáuhyuhk yauh sáang<br>yauh háahm, m̀hhóusĭk ge.        |
| 3. Dĭ pĭhnggwó jánhaih hóusĭk<br>laak. /suhk/tĭhm/                | 3. Dĭ pĭhnggwó yauh suhk yauh<br>tĭhm, jánhaih hóusĭk<br>laak. |
| 4. Dĭ yĭ m̀hhóuchóh ge. /gòu/daaih/                               | 4. Dĭ yĭ yauh gòu yauh daaih,<br>m̀hhóuchóh ge.                |
| 5. Dĭ heisèui jánhaih hóuyám laak.<br>/dung/tĭhm/                 | 5. Dĭ heisèui yauh dung yauh<br>tĭhm, jánhaih hóuyám laak.     |
| 6. Dĭ gafē m̀hhóuyám ge.<br>/dung/fú/                             | 6. Dĭ gafē yauh dung yauh fú,<br>m̀hhóuyám ge.                 |

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) Seichyùn = Szechwan, -ese
- 2) Jouh māt a? = here: Why do you ask?
- 3) Móuh = Nothing special
- 4) chichi = every time
- 5) syùnlaah tòng = pungent pepper soup
- 6) tòhngchou yú = sweet and sour fish

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>A. You say to the person sitting next to you:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. It's hotter than blazes today! (i.e., excessively hot.)</li> <li>2. This orange is rotten!</li> <li>3. His younger brother hasn't gotten married yet.</li> <li>4. (to a clerk in a store) What time do you close?</li> <li>5. This soup is bitter and salty both--not at all tasty.</li> <li>6. You'd better get to the bank and get some money, otherwise you won't have any money to pay the servants.</li> <li>7. How come you're up so early?</li> <li>8. Which do you like better, Cantonese food or Shanghai food?</li> <li>9. Are you thirsty?</li> <li>10. Would you wake me up tomorrow whatever time you get up?</li> <li>11. What time would you like to have dinner?</li> </ol> | <p>B. And he replies:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. That's what I say too.</li> <li>2. Well then, throw it out!</li> <li>3. And I thought he had already gotten married!</li> <li>4. We close at 5:30.</li> <li>5. Well don't eat it then.</li> <li>6. You're right. Tomorrow's the 1st.</li> <li>7. I have to go to work a little early today.</li> <li>8. Although I'm from Shanghai, I like Cantonese food better.</li> <li>9. I <u>do</u> feel a bit thirsty, I think I'll what there is in the refrigerator to drink.</li> <li>10. Sure--is 7:00 OK?</li> <li>11. Whatever time you get it done will be OK.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 12. Which tie should I wear?                           | 12. Any one is fine.                                   |
| 13. Is there a place to park cars around here?         | 13. Yes, park anywhere you can find a place.           |
| 14. Hurry and change clothes, otherwise we'll be late. | 14. I don't have time to change clothes, let's go now! |
| 15. Do you like the yellow dress or the blue one?      | 15. They're both nice--buy the one you like.           |

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 25

- |                            |        |  |
|----------------------------|--------|--|
| 1. bīn-                    | nonQW: | any (one place, etc.) whatever (one place, etc.)                                 |
| 2. bīndouh                 | nonQW: | anywhere, wherever   |
| 3. bīngō                   | nonQW: | anyone; whoever  |
| 4. dām                     | v:     | throw out, discard   |
| 5. dīm                     | nonQW: | any manner, whatever manner, however   |
| 6. fanjeuhk                | v:     | get to sleep, fall asleep  |
| 7. fanhjeuhk               | v:     | can't get to sleep   |
| 8. fú                      | adj:   | strong [bitter]  |
| 9. géi-                    | nonQW: | any (number)   |
| 10. géidám                 | nonQW: | whatever hour, any hour, any time  |
| 11. géidò                  | nonQW: | any moment; however many   |
| 12. géisí                  | nonQW: | any time, whenever   |
| 13. géng-hot               | adj:   | thirsty  |
| 14. guih                   | adj:   | tired  |
| 15. ...-gwotàuh            | bf:    | too..., excessively...   |
| 16. hàahm                  | adj:   | salty  |
| 17. <u>Tw</u> hòì mǔhn     | Ph:    | open the doors (of a store) at <u>X</u> time. expresses opening time of a store. |
| 18. hóu + Verb phrase + la | Ph:    | It would be a good idea to...' a form used in making a suggestion                |
| 19. hūng                   | adj:   | red  |
| 20. jīngsàhn               | n/adj: | energy   |
| 21. làahm                  | adj:   | blue   |
| 22. laahmjó                | adj:   | spoiled, rotten (of perishables)   |
| 23. laaht                  | adj:   | peppery  |
| 24. lòh                    | ss:    | sen. suf. signifying a bid for sympathy  |



25. luhk	adj: green
26. Māt + sentence	sen: How come + sentence?
27. mēyéh	nonQW: anything; everything; whatever
28. m̀hahh	cj: otherwise, if not
29. ngáahnfan	adj: sleepy
30. ngohngódéi	adjP: a bit hungry
31. sàang	adj: raw, underdone (of cooked tip); green (of fruit)
32. s̀euiyihh	Cj: although
33. s̀euiyihh...daahnhahh	PCj: although,..still...
34. s̀óng	adj: crisp
35. suhk	adj: ripe (of fruits); done (of cooked)
36. syùn	adj: sour
37. syutgwaih	n: refrigerator
38. tihh	adj: sweet
39. tóuhngoh	adj: hungry
40. wòhng	adj: yellow
41. yihwàih	v: think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be 'mistakenly had the impression')
42. ỳhgwó m̀hahh	Cj: otherwise; if not
43. <u>TW</u> sàan mùhn	Ph: close the doors (of a store) at <u>X</u> time. expresses closing time of a store.

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At the Wong's house. The Wong daughter answers the doorbell:)

Wòhng siujé

Māyéh sih a?

Yes? [What business?]

Jyúfáanjyúfáan or jyúfaahn

cook, person who works as  
cook in a private home  
(usually a woman)

chéng jyúfáan

hire a cook

boují wah nǐdoh chéng

the newspaper said they

jyúfáan

were hiring a cook here

Ngóh táidóu boují wah nǐdoh

I read in the paper that they

chéng jyúfáan--haih mǎhah a?

were hiring a cook here--is  
that right?

Wòhng Siujé

Haih a--Yahpláih lā.

Yes. Please come in.

-gán

verb suffix, indicating  
action in progress

dágán dihnwá

talking on the telephone

Ngóh mǎhmā dágán dihnwá.

My mother is talking on the  
phone.

Néih chóhah sǐn lā.

First have a seat.

-yùhn

verb suffix, 'finish'

góngyùhn

finish talking

dáng kéuih góngyùhn

when she finishes talking...

Dáng kéuih góngyùhn ngóh wah

When she gets through, I'll

kéuih jí néih làihjó lā.

tell her you've come.

Jyúfáan

Hóu, mǎgòì.

Fine, thank you.

(Mrs. Wong finishes her call and  
comes to interview the cook:)

Wòhng Táai

seun

letter

gaaishiuh seun

letter of introduction,

sànfánjīng	letter of recommendation
Néih yáuh móuh daai gaaisiuhseun	ID card
túhng sànfánjīng làih a?	Did you bring your letters of recommendation and your ID card?
<u>Jyúfáan</u>	
Yáuh. Nàh, m̀ngòì néih táiháh là.	Yes. Here--please take a look.
<u>Wòhng Táai</u>	
gūngfù	work
nīdoh dī gūngfù	the work here
fàn	divide, divide up
gám or gámyéung	in such a way; this way, that way
gám fàn	divide in this way
Ngòhdeih nīdoh ge gūngfù haih	Our work here is divided up
gám fàn ge:	this way:
dá léih	take care of, do
gyúsihk	cooking
Jyúfáan jīnghaih dá léih gyúsihk.	The cook just takes care of the cooking.
ngoih	outside
ji	'of,' grammatical word
	joining modifying
	structure on its left to
	head structure on its
	right.
chyùhfóng jī ngoih	outside of the kitchen
chyùhfóng jī ngoih ge sih	the work outside the kitchen
fuhjaak	take responsibility (for), is responsible (for)
gúngyáhn fuhjaak	the servant is responsible
Chyùhfóng jīngoih ge sih yáuh	There's another servant respon-
daihdī gúngyáhn fuhjaak.	sible for the work outside of
	the kitchen.
daaihyáhn	adults

hahmbahlaahng	altogether
hahmbahlaahng léuhng go	altogether two adults and
daaihyàhn, léuhng go	two children
sailóugō.	
Ngóhdeih nídouh hahmbahlaahng	Altogether there are two adults
léuhng go daaihyàhn, léuhng	and two children here.
go sailóugō.	
tùngsèuhng	ordinarily, usually
yāt go yān	by myself, himself, etc.
	alone
ji	to, until
láihsaaiyāt ji láihsaaiṅgh	Monday to Friday
Tùngsèuhng láihsaaiyāt ji	Ordinarily from Monday to
láihsaaiṅgh jihngaih dāk	Friday there's only myself
ngóh yāt go yān hái ūkkéi	alone who eats lunch at home.
sikh ngaan ge jē.	
sèhng	entire
sèhng go láihsaai	all week, the whole week
sèhng go láihsaai dōu	aren't able to come back
m̄hfaandāklàih sikh	to eat all week.
tùhngmàaih	and, together with
Ngóh sīnsaang tùhngmàaih dī	My husband and the children
sailóugō chàhdō sèhng go	aren't able to come home for
láihsaai dōu m̄hfaandāklàih	lunch for practically the
sikh ge.	whole week.
gūng	work
gám ge gūng	that/this kind of work,
	such work
Gám ge gūng ngāam m̄hngāam néih	Does such work suit you?
nē?	
	<u>Jyúfaan</u>
Móuh sówaih	'Whatever you say.' 'Any
	way is OK with me.' 'No
	complaints.'
Dāk--móuh sówaih gé.	It's all right--no complaints.

Wòhng Táai

Gám, néih yiu géidō chín yàhngùng  
nē? How much do you want for wages?

Jyúfáan

Sei baak lā. Four hundred.

Wòhng Táai

Hóu lā. Agreed.  
séuhng gūng start work (usually means  
for day, but here means  
for the first time.)

Néih géisi hóyih làih séuhng  
gūng nē? When can you come start work?

Jyúfáan

Hah go yuht yāt houh, hóu ma? The first of next month, all  
right?

Wòhng Táai

Hóu lā. Ngóh dáng néih lā. Fine. I'll expect you.

B. Recapitulation:

(At the Wong's house. The Wong  
daughter answers the doorbell:)

Wòhng Siujé

Mēyéh sih a? Yes? [What business?]

Jyúfáan

Ngóh táidóu boují wah nīdouh I read in the paper that they  
chéng jyúfáan--hah m̀hah a? were hiring a cook here--is  
that right?

Wòhng Siujé

Hah a--Yahplàih lā. Yes--please come in.  
Ngóh màhmā dágán dihnwá. My mother is on the phone.  
Néih chóhháh sìn lā. Have a seat first.  
Dáng kéuih góngyùhn ngóh wah When she gets through, I'll  
kéuih jí néih làihjó lā. tell her you've come.

Jyúfáan

Hóu, m̀hgoi. Fine, thank you.

(Mrs. Wong finishes her call and  
comes to interview the cook:)

Wòhng Táai

Néih yáuh móuh daai gaaisiuhseun  
tùhng sánfánjing làih a?

Did you bring your letters  
recommendation and your ID  
card?

Jyúfáan

Yáuh. Nàh, m̀hgoi néih táiháh là.

Yes. Here--please take a look.

Wòhng Táai

Ngóhdeih nídouh ge gùngfù haih  
gám fàn ge:

Our work here is divided up  
this way:

Chyùhfóng jí ngoih ge sih yáuh  
daihdí gùngyahn fuhjaak.

There's another servant respon-  
sible for the work outside  
of the kitchen.

Ngóhdeih nídouh hahmbahlaahng  
léuhng go daaihyàn, léuhng  
go sailógō.

Altogether there are two  
adults and two children here.

Tùngsèuhng láihbaaiyāt jí  
láihbaaińgh jihng haih dāk  
ngóh yāt go yān hái ũkkéi  
sihk ngaan ge jē.

Ordinarily from Monday to  
Friday there's only myself  
alone who eats lunch at home.

Ngóh sīnsāang tùhngmàaih dī  
sailógō chàmhdō sèhng go  
láihbaai dōu m̀hfàandāklāih  
sihk ge.

My husband and the children  
aren't able to come back  
for practically the whole  
week.

Gám ge gùng ngāam m̀hngāam  
néih nē?

Does such work suit you?

Jyúfáan

Dāk--móuh sówaih gé.

It's all right--whatever you  
say.

Wòhng Táai

Gám, néih yiu géidō chin  
yàhngùng nē?

How much wages do you want?

Jyúfáan

Sei baak là.

Four hundred.

Wòhng Táai

Hóu là.

Agreed.

Néih géisi hóyih làih séuhng  
gùng nē?

When can you come start work?

Jyúfaan

Hah go yuht yāt houh, hóu ma?

The first of next month, all  
right?

Wòhng Táai

Hóu lā. Ngóh dáng néih lā.

Fine. I'll expect you.

---

## II. NOTES

1. -gán Verb suffix calling attention to action in progress.

- a. When one wishes to call attention to the fact that an action spoken about is going on at the time of speaking (or at the time spoken about), -gán is suffixed to the verb.

Ex: 1. Child (on phone):                                 How come Mother still hasn't  
Máhmá dīngáai, juhng                                 come to get me?  
mhláih jip ngoh a?  
Amah: Fong sām lā!                                     Don't worry! She's on the  
Keuih lai ngán ge laak.                                 way now.  
2. A: Néih yám gán méyéh a?                             What are you drinking?  
B: Ngóh a? Ngóh yám gán                                 Me? I'm drinking coffee.  
gáfe.  
A: Keuih dōu haih yám gāfē àh.                         That's what he's drinking  
too, I suppose.  
B: Mh haih. Keuih yám chàh.                             No. Tea is what he's drinking.

(See BC and Drills 9,10,14)

b. Note the position of -gán in directional verb compounds:

Compare:

heui	heuigán
laih	laihngán
lohklaih	lohkgánlaih
fàanheui	fàangánheui
ningfàanlaih	ninggánfàanlaih
hàahng séuhng heui	hàahngán séuhng heui

2. -yuhn Verb suffix indicating finishing an action.

Ex: A. Ngóhdeih káhmyaht duk                             We read lesson 25 yesterday.  
daaih yihsahpng fo.  
B. Duhkyuhn meih a?                                     Did you finish it?

(See BC and Drill 10)

3. gám 'such' (var: gámyéung)

- a. gám, with the basic meaning 'such,' 'that kind,' has several uses. It may be an independent unit, or a modifier. As a modifier, it can modify both verbs and nouns.



- 1) As an independent unit: gám = such things, this (or that) kind of thing; in such a way.

Ex: 1. Ngóh máaihjó dī bŭi      I bought some glasses, and some plates,  
a, dīp a, cheunglím      and some curtain material-- that kind  
bou a, gam jē.      of stuff, that's all.

(See Lesson 19 BC)

2. Kéuih Yíngmán góngdāk      He speaks English just like an  
tuhng Yíngwok yahn      Englishman. [(Regarding) him,  
yatyeuhng gam.      English speaks with Englishman  
same thus.]
3. Gám dōu wah tihm àh!      (Done in such a way, and you still say  
it's sweet! (i.e., I put such a  
small amount of sugar in-- you still  
say it's too sweet?) gám = do/done  
in such a way

(See Drill 2)

- 2) As a verb modifier: gám Verb = Verb in such a way, Verb this (or that) way, Verb like this (or that)

Ex: Gám sé mhdāk ga.      It won't do to write that way.  
Mhóu gam jōuh.      Don't do it that way.  
Ngóhdeih hahmbahlahng      Everybody says it that way.  
dōu haih gam gong.

(See BC and Drill 1)

- 3) As modifier of a noun: gám ge Noun = this (or that) kind of Noun, such a Noun, a thus-done Noun

Ex: Gám ge tòng, néih jùng      Do you like soup done this way? [Thus-  
mhjungyi yam a?      done soup, you like to drink?]

Gám ge gùng ngāam      Does such work suit you?  
mhngaam neih a?

(See BC)

(Gám N, 'such an N' also occurs. See, for example,

Lesson 27, Drill 4:

Hóu chíh haih bējáu      It seems to be beer--  
gám meih.      such a smell. i.e.,  
It smells like beer.)

b. gám, 'such' and gam, 'so' compared:

gám joins with Nouns and Verbs, and gam joins with adjectives.

Ex: 1. gám

Gám jouh.

Do it that way.

Gám ge yéh.

That kind of stuff.

2. gam

Wáh! Gam leng!

Wow-- so pretty!

Aiya, gam laahttaat.

Oh my-- so dirty!

4. ...ji ngoih, 'outside' in the sense 'aside from,' 'with the exception of.'

Chyühfóng ji ngoih douhdouh  
dou yiu maat.

[Kitchen's outside place-place  
all want mop] i.e., Except for the  
kitchen, every place needs mopping  
(giving instructions).

yih ngoih is interchangeable with ji ngoih.

(See BC)

5. Some Verb-Object phrases serve as basis of a compound noun formula:

VO-ge, 'one who does VO as an occupation.'

Ex: têng dihnwá ge = telephone operator [one who listens to  
the telephone]

maaih syù ge = bookseller [one who sells books]

jà chē ge = chauffeur [one who drives a car]

(See Drill 6)

English has a similar pattern for occupations, except in English the word order in the compound noun is: Object-Verb-er.

Ex: bookseller  
math teacher  
ball player  
taxi driver

The only English expression on the Chinese VO-ge pattern that comes to mind is 'do-gooder.' Can you think of any others?

6. Móuh sówaih ge. 'Whatever you say,' 'No complaints,' 'It doesn't make any difference,' 'I don't have any preferences.'

There is some overlap in the use of Móuh sówaih ge and Sihdaahn lā.

With Sihdaahn lā you are asked to make a selection between two or more choices: Which do you want, A or B? Answering Sihdaahn lā you indicate that either/any of the choices suggested is OK by you.

Ex: Q: Néih jūngyi sihk hā      Would you like to have shrimp  
yikwaahk sihk yú a?      or fish?  
A: Sihdaahn lā.      Either one is fine.

With Móuh sówaih ge there are three possibilities:

1) One specific thing has been suggested, and in saying Móuh sówaih ge you agree to it: Is X OK? Ans: No complaints-- whatever you say.

Ex: Q: Gám ge gūng ngāam      Does such work suit you?  
mhngaam neih a?  
A: Dāk-- móuh sówaih gé. Agreed-- no complaints.

(See BC)

2) You are given a choice between two or more suggestions, and in saying Móuh sówaih ge you indicate that any of the suggestions is OK by you. In this use, Móuh sówaih ge is interchangeable with Sihdaahn lā.

Ex: Q: Néih jūngyi sihk hā      Do you want to eat shrimp,  
yikwaahk sihk yú a?      or fish?  
A: Móuh sówaih ge.      I don't have any preference--  
either is OK.

3) No specific suggestion has been made, but you are asked what you would like. In answering Móuh sówaih ge you indicate that you have no special preferences, that anything/any way/any place, etc., is OK by you.

Ex: A: Néih wah dím, jauh dím lā.      However you want it done,  
we'll do it that way.  
B: Ngóh móuh sówaih ga.      I don't have any preferences  
-- any way is fine.

## III. DRILLS

## 1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gám jough, dāk m̀hdāk a? T: Is it OK to do it that (or this) way? [Do in such a way, OK or not?]

S: Gám jough, hóu ma? S: Is it OK to do it that (or this) way?

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1. Gám góng dāk m̀hdāk a?<br>Is it OK to say it that way?   | 1. Gám góng, hóu ma?  |
| 2. Gám sé, dāk m̀hdāk a?<br>Is it OK to write it like this?   | 2. Gám sé, hóu ma?    |
| + 3. Gám dá, dāk m̀hdāk a?<br>Is it OK to hit this way?<br>(in ref. to typing: Is it OK to type this way?) dá jih = to type | 3. Gám dá, hóu ma?    |
| + 4. Gám jǐng, dāk m̀hdāk a?  | 4. Gám jǐng, hóu ma?  |
| 5. Gám yuhng, dāk m̀hdāk a?   | 5. Gám yuhng, hóu ma? |
| 6. Gám sái, dāk m̀hdāk a?   | 6. Gám sái, hóu ma?   |
| 7. Gám tong, dāk m̀hdāk a?  | 7. Gám tong, hóu ma?  |
| 8. Gám maat, dāk m̀hdāk a?  | 8. Gám maat, hóu ma?  |

## 2. Substitution Drill:

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Gám dōu wah tihm àh!<br>Do it that way and you <u>still</u> say it's sweet! (for example: I put such a tiny bit of sugar in it, and you <u>still</u> say it's sweet!) | 1. Gám dōu wah tihm àh!      |
| 2. /syùn/  | 2. Gám dōu wah syùn àh!      |
| 3. /laaht/   | 3. Gám dōu wah laaht àh!     |
| 4. /laahttaat/   | 4. Gám dōu wah laahttaat àh! |
| 5. /chàauh/  | 5. Gám dōu wah chàauh àh!    |
| 6. /chúhng/  | 6. Gám dōu wah chúhng àh!    |
| 7. /gònjehng/  | 7. Gám dōu wah gònjehng àh!  |
| 8. /leng/  | 8. Gám dōu wah leng àh!      |
| 9. /sàng/  | 9. Gám dōu wah sàng àh!      |

Comment: In the above sentences gám substitutes for a VP: gám jòuh 'do it thus', 'did it thus,' and is the subject of the sentence. It is separated from the predicate by a slight pause. As a verb gám is used in the affirmative only.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Bīngō fuhjaak jyú chāan a?<br>Who is responsible for<br>cooking? | 1. Bīngō fuhjaak jyú chāan a?                                   |
| 2. /máaih yéh/  | 2. Bīngō fuhjaak máaih yéh a?                                   |
| 3. /jyúsihk/  | 3. Bīngō fuhjaak jyúsihk a?                                     |
| 4. /sái sām/  | 4. Bīngō fuhjaak sái sām a?                                     |
| 5. /jà chē/   | 5. Bīngō fuhjaak jà chē a?                                      |
| 6. /dá jih/   | 6. Bīngō fuhjaak dá jih a?<br>Who is responsible for<br>typing? |
| 7. /chyùhfóng jǐngōih ge sih/                                       | 7. Bīngō fuhjaak chyùhfóng<br>jǐngōih ge sih a?                 |

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: ㄊ: laahnjó  
become broken

S1: Yùngwó laahnjó, ngóh yāt-  
dihng fuhjaak.  
If it breaks, I will de-  
finitely take the respon-  
sibility.

S2: Yùngwó laahnjó, ngóh m̄hfuh-  
jaak ga!  
If it breaks, I won't be  
(refuse to be) responsible.  
(or I won't take the re-  
sponsibility.)

S3: Yùngwó laahnjó, néih fuh  
m̄hfuhjaak ga?  
If it breaks, will you take  
the responsibility?

1. chàauhjó

1. S1: Yùngwó chàauhjó, ngóh  
yāt-dihng fuhjaak.

S2: Yùngwó chàauhjó, ngóh  
m̄hfuhjaak ga!

2. laahnjó
3. laahttaatjó
- + 4. waaihjó  
(waaihjó = out of order, broken down, doesn't work)
5. jinglaahnjó
- S3: Yùngwó chàuhjó, néih fuh m̃h fuhjaak ga?
2. S1: Yùngwó laahnjó, ngóh yatdihng fuhjaak.  
S2: Yùngwó laahnjó, ngóh m̃h fuhjaak ga!  
S3: Yùngwó laahnjó, néih fuh m̃h fuhjaak ga?
3. S1: Yùngwó laahttaatjó, ngóh yatdihng fuhjaak.  
S2: Yùngwó laahttaatjó, ngóh m̃h fuhjaak ga!  
S3: Yùngwó laahttaatjó, néih fuh m̃h fuhjaak ga?
4. S1: Yùngwó waaihjó, ngóh yatdihng fuhjaak. If it gets out of order, I will take the responsibility.  
S2: Yùngwó waaihjó, ngóh m̃h fuhjaak ga!  
S3: Yùngwó waaihjó, néih fuh m̃h fuhjaak ga?
5. S1: Yùngwó jinglaahnjó, ngóh yatdihng fuhjaak.  
S2: Yùngwó jinglaahnjó, ngóh m̃h fuhjaak ga!  
S3: Yùngwó jinglaahnjó, néih fuh m̃h fuhjaak ga?

## 5. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Aiya! Ga chē waaihjó tīm! /go dihnwá/

S: Aiya! Go dihnwá waaihjó tīm!

T: Oh-oh, the oar has broken down. (or is out of order, or doesn't work.) /phone/

S: Oh-oh, the phone is out of order.

+ 1. Aiya! Go dihnwá waaihjó tīm! /ga dihnsih(gēi)/ (TV Set)

1. Aiya! Ga dihnsih(gēi) waaihjó tīm!

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. Aiya! Ga dihnsih(gēi) waaihjó<br>tím! /go bīu/  | 2. Aiya! Go bīu waaihjó tím!   |
| 3. Aiya! Go bīu waaihjó tím!<br>/go syutgwaih/   | 3. Aiya! Go syutgwaih waaihjó<br>tím!  |
| 4. Aiya! Go syutgwaih waaihjó<br>tím! /ga chē/   | 4. Aiya! Ga chē waaihjó tím!   |
| 5. Aiya! Ga chē waaihjó tím!<br>+ /ga <u>lāahnghei(gēi)</u> /<br>( <u>air conditioner</u> )      | 5. Aiya! Go <u>lāahnghei(gēi)</u><br>waaihjó tím!<br>The air conditioner is out<br>of order. |
| 6. Aiya! Go <u>lāahnghei(gēi)</u> waaih-<br>+ jó tím! /go <u>sāuyāngèi</u> /<br>( <u>radio</u> ) | 6. Aiya! Go <u>sāuyāngèi</u> waaihjó<br>tím!<br>The radio is out of order.                   |
| 7. Aiya! Go <u>sāuyāngèi</u> waaihjó<br>+ tím! /go <u>dājihgēi</u> /<br>( <u>typewriter</u> )    | 7. Aiya! Go <u>dājihgēi</u> waaihjó<br>tím!<br>The typewriter is out of<br>order.            |
| 8. Aiya! Go <u>dājihgēi</u> waaihjó tím!<br>/go dihnwá/  | 8. Aiya! Go dihnwá waaihjó tím!  |

Comment: For lāahngheigēi, 'air conditioner,' and dihnsihgēi, 'TV set,' some speakers omit -gēi, others don't.  
[gēi = machine]

Both ga and go are used as Measures for sāuyāngèi, dihnsihgēi, and lāahngheigēi.

### 6. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih jough mēyéh ga? T: What does he do? (he is a do-  
/gaau Gwóngdùngwá/ what one?) /teach Cantonese/

S: Kéuih gaau Gwóng- S: He's a Cantonese teacher.  
dùngwá ge. [teach-Cantonese one]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih jough mēyéh ga?<br>/gaau syù/    | 1. Kéuih gaau syù ge.<br>He's a teacher.             |
| 2. Kéuih jough mēyéh ga? /maaih<br>boujì/ | 2. Kéuih maaih boujì ge.<br>He's a newspaper hawker. |
| 3. Kéuih jough mēyéh ga?<br>/jǐng chē/    | 3. Kéuih jǐng chē ge.<br>He's a car mechanic.        |
| 4. Kéuih jough mēyéh ga? /jà chē/         | 4. Kéuih jà chē ge.<br>He's a chauffeur.             |
| 5. Kéuih jough mēyéh ga? /dá jih/         | 5. Kéuih dá jih ge.<br>She's a typist.               |

7. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Néih sèhng' yaht heuijó bīndouh làih a?<br>Where were you all day? | 2. Néih sèhng yaht heuijó bīndouh làih a?       |
| 2. /hahjau/   | 2. Néih sèhng go hahjau heuijó bīndouh làih a?  |
| 3. /máahn/  | 3. Néih sèhng máahn heuijó bīndouh làih a?      |
| 4. /jiu/  | 4. Néih sèhng jiu heuijó bīndouh làih a?        |
| 5. /nihn/   | 5. Néih sèhng nihn heuijó bīndouh làih a?       |
| 6. /láihaai/  | 6. Néih sèhng go láihaai heuijó bīndouh làih a? |

Comment: Heui...laih = the laih part indicates that the person has returned from having been away. Compare:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih sèhng nihn heuijó bīndouh a?      | Where has he gone off to all year? (still away) |
| 2. Kéuih sèhng nihn heuijó bīndouh làih a? | Where did he go off to all year? (has returned) |

8. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Dīngáai sèhng gihn sām dōu laahttaatsaai ga?<br>How come the [entire] dress is dirty all over? | 1. Dīngáai sèhng gihn sām dōu laahttaatsaai ga?  |
| 2. /faai bou/   | 2. Dīngáai sèhng faai bou dōu laahttaatsaai ga?  |
| 3. /tiuh kwáhn/   | 3. Dīngáai sèhng tiuh kwáhn dōu laahttaatsaai ga?  |
| + 4. /fùng seun/<br>(M for letter)  | 4. Dīngáai sèhng fùng seun dōu laahttaatsaai ga?<br>How come the whole letter is dirty all over? |
| + 5. /jèung jóbou/<br>(M. for newspapers)   | 5. Dīngáai sèhng jèung jóbou dōu laahttaatsaai ga?   |



6. /tíuh mòuhgān/

6. Dǐngáai sèhng tíuh mòuhgān  
dòu laahттаatsaai ga?

## 9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Chàhn Táai yíhgā  
tái syù.

T: Mrs. Chan is reading now.

S: Dángján sǐn lā,  
Chàhn yíhgā tái-  
gán syù.S: Please wait a bit, Mrs. Chan  
is reading now.

1. Dǐ sailóugō yíhgā yám chàh.

1. Dángján sǐn lā, dǐ sailóugō  
yíhgā yángán chàh.2. Kéuih go néui yíhgā síhk  
faahn.2. Dángján sǐn lā, kéuih go  
néui yíhgā síhkgán faahn.3. Chàhn Siujé yíhgā wán sán-  
fánjing.3. Dángján sǐn lā, Chàhn Siujé  
yíhgā wángán sánfánjing.

4. Hòh Sàang yíhgā tái dihnsih.

4. Dángján sǐn lā, Hòh Sàang  
yíhgā táigán dihnsih.

5. Kéuih bàhbā yíhgā dá dihnwá.

5. Dángján sǐn lā, kéuih bàhbā  
yíhgā dágán dihnwá.6. Kéuih màhmā yíhgā jǐng jóu-  
chaan.6. Dángján sǐn lā, kéuih màhmā  
yíhgā jǐnggán jóuchaan.

## 10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih màhmā dáyùhn  
dihnwá meih a?  
/shake/T: Has your mother finished  
telephoning yet?

S: Meih, juhng dágán.

S: No, she's still on the phone.

T: Néih màhmā dáyùhn  
dihnwá meih a?  
/nod/T: Has your mother finished  
telephoning yet?

S: Dáyùhn laak.

S: Yes, she's finished.

1. Néih bàhbā síhkyùhn ngaanjau  
meih a? /shake/

1. Meih, juhng síhkgán.

2. Néih màhmā tèngyùhn sàuyām-  
gèi meih a? /nod/

2. Tèngyùhn laak.

3. Néih go néui duhkyùhn daaih-  
hobk meih a? /shake/

3. Meih, juhng duhkgán.

- |  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| 4. Néih tühng kéuih kingyùhn gáí meih a? /nod/ | 4. Kingyùhn laak.      |
| 5. Néih gājē táiyùhn dihnsih meih a? /shake/   | 5. Méih, juhng táigán. |

## 11. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Kéuih têng sāuyām-gèi. /da páai/         | T: He is listening to the radio. /play mahjong/                               |
| S: Kéuih tênggán sāuyāngèi, mhdākhàahn dá páai. | S: He's listening to the radio, and doesn't have (free) time to play mahjong. |
| 1. Kéuih sé jih. /tái dihnsih/                  | 1. Kéuih ségán jih, mhdākhàahn tái dihnsih.                                   |
| 2. Kéuih jough gūngfù. /kinggái/                | 2. Kéuih joughgán gūngfù, mhdākhàahn kinggái.                                 |
| 3. Kéuih dukh syù. /dá bō/                      | 3. Kéuih dukhgán syù, mhdākhàahn dá bō.                                       |
| 4. Kéuih jyú faahn. /heui ló chin/              | 4. Kéuih jyúgán faahn, mhdākhàahn heui ló chin.                               |
| 5. Kéuih tong sāam. /tái hei/                   | 5. Kéuih tonggán sāam, mhdākhàahn tái hei.                                    |

## 12. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Ngóhdeih dōu sihkáh Sàichāan gé. /yáuhshí/                        | T: We eat Western food too. [i.e., at times, instead of Chinese food.]               |
| S: Ngóhdeih yáuhshí dōu sihkáh Sàichāan gé.                              | S: We sometimes eat Western food too.  |
| 1. Ngóhdeih dōu sihkáh Jùng choi gé. /gáuhngéu/ <u>from time to time</u> | 1. Ngóhdeih gáuhngéu dōu sihkáh Jùng choi gé. From time to time we eat Chinese food. |
| 2. Ngóhdeih dōu heuiháh léuihàhng gé. /yáuhshí/ We go on outings too.    | 2. Ngóhdeih yáuhshí dōu heuiháh léuihàhng gé.  |
| 3. Ngóhdeih dōu dáháh páai gé. /hóudòshí/                                | 3. Ngóhdeih hóudòshí dōu dáháh páai gé.  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. Ngóhdeih dōu yámháh bējáu gé.<br>/tùngsèuhng/  | 4. Ngóhdeih tùngsèuhng dōu<br>yámháh bējáu gé.  |
| 5. Ngóhdeih dōu chénggháh haak gé.<br>/gáumhngáu/ | 5. Ngóhdeih gáumhngáu dōu<br>chénggháh haak gé. |

13. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh agō hóu pa yāt go yān<br>sìhk faahn.<br>My elder brother doesn't like<br>to eat alone. | 1. Ngóh agō hóu pa yāt go yān<br>sìhk faahn.      |
| 2. /gājē/heui Sàandéng/  | 2. Ngóh gājē hóu pa yāt go yān<br>heui Sàandéng.  |
| 3. /sailóu/gwo hóí/  | 3. Ngóh sailóu hóu pa yāt go<br>yān gwo hóí.      |
| 4. /gùngyàhn/chēut gāai/   | 4. Ngóh gùngyàhn hóu pa yāt go<br>yān chēut gāai. |
| 5. /màhmā/hàahng gūngsī/   | 5. Ngóh màhmā hóu pa yāt go<br>yān hàahng gūngsī. |
| 6. /ngóh chānchīk/tái hei/   | 6. Ngóh chānchīk hóu pa yāt go<br>yān tái hei.    |

14. Conversation Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: A: Néih tùhng bīngō<br>kīnggán gái a? | A: Who are you talking to? [with]                |
| B: Tùhng ngóh gùngyàhn.                   | B: To [with] the servant.                        |
| A: Néihdeih kīnggán<br>mātyéh a?          | A: What are you talking about?                   |
| B: Ngóhdeih kīnggán<br>chéng haak.        | B: We're talking about having a<br>dinner party. |
| 1. A. ....?                               | 1. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán<br>gái a?         |
| B. ....chyùhjí.                           | B. Tùhng ngóh chyùhjí.                           |
| A. ....?                                  | A. Néihdeih kīnggán mātyéh<br>a?                 |
| B. ....kīnggán jyú chāan.                 | B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán jyú<br>chāan.                |

2. A. ....?  
 B. ....dǎjǎap.  
 A. ....?  
 B. ....máaih yéh.
3. A. ....?  
 B. ....bàhbā.  
 A. ....?  
 B. ....tái hei.
4. A. ....?  
 B. ....agō.  
 A. ....?  
 B. ....wán néuihpàhngyáuh.
5. A. ....?  
 B. ....gājē.  
 A. ....?  
 B. ....jauh sām.
6. A. ....?  
 B. ....sailóu.  
 A. ....?  
 B. ....dá bō.
7. A. ....?  
 B. ....màhmā.  
 A. ....?  
 B. ....dá páai.
8. A. ....?  
 B. ....saimúí.  
 A. ....?  
 B. ....léuihhàhng.
2. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?  
 B. Tùhng ngóh dǎjǎap.  
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mǎtyéh a?  
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán máaih yéh.
3. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?  
 B. Tùhng ngóh bàhbā.  
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?  
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán tái hei.
4. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?  
 B. Tùhng ngóh agō.  
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?  
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán wán néuihpàhngyáuh.
5. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?  
 B. Tùhng ngóh gājē.  
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?  
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán jauh sām.
6. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?  
 B. Tùhng ngóh sailóu.  
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?  
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán dá bō.
7. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?  
 B. Tùhng ngóh màhmā.  
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?  
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán dá páai.
8. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?  
 B. Tùhng ngóh saimúí.  
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?  
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán léuihhàhng.

## 15. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih láihbaaiyāt ji T: He works from Monday to Friday.  
láihbaaiŋgh yiu /1 to 5/  
fāangùng. /yāt dīm  
ji ŋgh dīm/

S: Kéuih yāt dīm ji ŋgh S: He works from one o'clock to  
dīm yiu fāangùng. five o'clock.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Ngóh gàm̄yaht ji tīngyaht dōu m̄hdākhaahn.<br>/láihbaaisāam ji láihbaailuhk/    | 1. Ngóh láihbaaisāam ji láihbaailuhk dōu m̄hdākhaahn.      |
| 2. Jèung Sāang gauhn̄n ji gām̄n̄n dōu meih fāangwo láih.<br>/kām̄yaht ji gām̄yaht/ | 2. Jèung Sāang kām̄yaht ji gām̄yaht dōu meih fāangwo láih. |
| 3. Kéuih gām̄jiu ji yīngā juhng meih sihk̄gwo faahn.<br>/chīhnyah̄t ji yīngā/      | 3. Kéuih chīhnyah̄t ji yīngā juhng meih sihk̄ faahn.       |
| 4. Làuh Siujé yihyuh̄t ji sām̄yuh̄t yiu heui Yīngwok.<br>/yātyuh̄t ji ŋghyuh̄t/    | 4. Làuh Siujé yātyuh̄t ji ŋghyuh̄t yiu heui Yīngwok.       |
| 5. Ngóh léuhng dīm̄ ji sei dīm̄ yiu duk̄ syū.<br>/sām̄ dīm̄ ji ŋgh dīm̄/           | 5. Ngóh sām̄ dīm̄ ji ŋgh dīm̄ yiu duk̄ syū.                |
| 6. Ngóh chīhnyah̄t ji gām̄yaht m̄hsai fāangùng.<br>/gām̄yaht ji hauhyah̄t/         | 6. Ngóh gām̄yaht ji hauhyah̄t m̄hsai fāangùng.             |

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) chau = to take care (of children)  
chaujái = baby amah
- 2) wai = Hi! Hey! Say!
- 3) wóh = sentence suffix, 'That's what she said'
- 4) néuihjái = young girl
- 5) jough gùngfo = do homework, lessons

- 6) jihgēi = ourselves, myself, himself, etc.  
 here: ourselves alone
- 

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>A. You say to the person sitting next to you:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. How come Mr. Chan hasn't come yet?</li> <li>2. I've come to see Mr. Wong.</li> <li>3. (on the phone:) Mother, I'm at school, can you come get me?</li> <li>4. (at the head of the stairs looking down:) Who is that person coming up?</li> <li>5. This book is really interesting!</li> <li>6. We'd better go, otherwise we'll be late.</li> <li>7. Did we finish lesson 25 yesterday?</li> <li>8. When you finish fixing the radio, would you have a look at the TV set?</li> <li>9. Is it OK to do it this way?</li> <li>10. Everybody says it that way.</li> <li>11. Who is responsible for fixing the typewriter?</li> <li>12. If you break it, will you be responsible?</li> <li>13. Where were you all day? I phoned you 3 or 4 times.</li> <li>14. Did you get it (the ID card)?</li> </ol> | <p>B. And he replies:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. He's on his way now.</li> <li>2. He's on the phone right now, would you have a seat first please?</li> <li>3. I'm fixing dinner--you take the bus home.</li> <li>4. It's the radio repairman.</li> <li>5. When you're through, would you lend it to me?</li> <li>6. Let me just finish writing this letter of recommendation, then I'll go.</li> <li>7. Yes, we finished lesson 25 and started lesson 26.</li> <li>8. I've already fixed the radio, where's the TV?</li> <li>9. That way's not right--don't use chopsticks.</li> <li>10. Is it OK to say it this way?</li> <li>11. There's a company (gūngsī) responsible.</li> <li>12. Yes.</li> <li>13. I went to fetch my ID card.</li> <li>14. No, I didn't--they said to come back next Tuesday.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

15. How many people altogether are there in your school? 15. More than 1500.
16. What are you chatting about? 16. We're talking about taking a trip.

---

 Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 26

- |                            |       |  |
|----------------------------|-------|--|
| 1. daaihyàhn               | n:    | adult  |
| 2. dá                      | v:    | hit  |
| 3. dá jih                  | vo:   | type on the typewriter [hit-words]   |
| 4. dájihgēi                | n:    | typewriter   |
| 5. dá                      | v:    | take care of   |
| 6. dihnshgēi               | n:    | TV set   |
| 7. dōu                     | adv:  | still  |
| 8. fàn                     | v:    | divide, divide up  |
| 9. fuhjaak                 | v:    | take responsibility for, is responsible for  |
| 10. fùng                   | m:    | M. for letter  |
| 11. gaaisihseun            | n:    | letter of recommendation, letter of introduction   |
| 12. gám                    | n/v:  | in such a way; this/that way; as <u>V</u> , a reduced form of <u>gam_jouh</u> ; 'do it this/that way'      |
| 13. -gán                   | vs:   | verb suf. highlighting action in progress  |
| 14. gùng                   | n:    | work   |
| 15. gùngfù                 | n:    | work   |
| 16. gáumhgáu               | adv:  | from time to time  |
| 17. hahmbahlaahng          | Ph:   | altogether   |
| 18. jèung                  | m:    | M. for newspaper   |
| 19. <u>TW</u> ji <u>TW</u> | prep: | <u>TW</u> to <u>TW</u> ; <u>TW</u> until <u>TW</u>   |
| 20. jì                     | bf:   | 'of' grammatical word joining modifying structure preceding it to head structure following it              |
| 21. ....jìngoih            | Ph:   | aside from...., outside (of) ....  |
| 22. jyúfaan                | n:    | a person who works as cook in private home (usually a woman)   |
| 23. jyúfaahn               | n:    | same as jyúfaan (QV)   |
| 24. jyúsihk                | v:    | cooking (VV compound which occupies noun position in sentence; cannot be preceded directly by <u>mh.</u> ) |

25. láahnghei (gēi)	n: air conditioner
26. Móuh sówaih ge.	Ph: 'Whatever you say.' 'Any way is OK with me.' 'No complaints.'
27. ngoih	bf: outside
28. sànfánjing	n: ID card
29. sāuyāngēi	n: radio
30. sèhng	sp: entire, whole
31. seun	n: letter
32. séuhng gùng	vo: start work
33. tùhngmàaih	Cj: and, with
34. tùngsèuhng	adv: ordinarily, usually
35. waaihjó	adjP: out of order, broken down
36. yāt go yān	np: alone; by one's self
37. -yùhn	vs: verb suf. = finish



## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(An American who works at the American Consulate in Hong Kong talks to a Cantonese friend at a party:)

Búndehyáhn

ngoingwokyaahn	foreigners
dòsou	mostly, for the most part
ngoingwokyaahn dòsou dōu	foreigners mostly all study
hohk Gwokýúh	Mandarin
hohk Júngmán ge ngoingwok- yáhn	foreigners who study Chinese

Tèngginwah hohk Júngmán ge ngoingwokyaahn dòsou dōu hohk Gwokýúh-- jàn	I hear that foreigners who study Chinese mostly all study Mandarin-- true
Haih àhhaiah jàn ga?	Is that true?

Méingwokyaahn

Haih jàn ga.	Yes, that's right.
Daahnhaiah hái Hèunggóng jauh yáuh hóudò Méingwokyaahn hohk Gwóngdùngwá la.	But in Hong Kong a lot of Americans study Cantonese.

Búndehyáhn

líhngsihwún	consulate
hái líhngsihwún jouh sih	work at the consulate
hái líhngsihwún jouh sih	the Americans who work at
gó dī Méingwokyaahn	the consulate
Gám, hái líhngsihwún jouh sih	Do the Americans who work at
gó dī Méingwokyaahn haih àhhaiah	the consulate all study
gogo dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá ge nē?	Cantonese?

Méingwokyaahn

yáuhdī	some, some of them
yáuhdī..., yáuhdī	some..., others ...
Mhhaiah ge--	No--
Yáuhdī hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhdī	Some study Cantonese, some
hohk Gwokýúh, yáuhdī léuhng	study Mandarin, others don't
yeuhng dōu àhhoik.	study either one.

Búndeihyàhn

deui...laih góng  
deui ngoihgwokyàhn laih góng

ní léuhng yeuhng wá, bīn  
yeuhng nàahndí a?

Deui ngoihgwokyàhn laih góng, ní  
léuhng yeuhng wá, bīn yeuhng  
nàahndí a?

speaking for....: speaking  
speaking for foreigners; <sup>about</sup> for  
foreigners; to foreigners  
These two languages--which  
one is harder?

For foreigners which of the two  
languages is more difficult?

Méihgwokyàhn

Ngóh m̀hjí bo.  
Yànwaih ngóh jìhngghaih hohkgwo  
Gwóngdùngwá ja.  
m̀htùhng

Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh yáuh  
m̀yéh m̀htùhng a?

Gee, I don't know.  
Because I've only studied  
Cantonese.  
not alike, different,  
difference  
Cantonese and Mandarin--how do  
they differ?

Búndeihyàhn

k̀eihsaht  
chíh  
K̀eihsaht Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokyúh  
yáuh hóudò hóu chíh ge.

actually  
similar, resemble  
Actually Cantonese and Mandarin  
have many similarities.

Méihgwokyàhn

f̀ànbiht  
m̀óuh f̀ànbiht  
Néih jíkghaih wah Gwóngdùngwá tùhng  
Gwokyúh m̀óuh m̀yéh daaih f̀ànbiht  
lo bo?

difference  
there's no difference  
You're saying that there are no  
big differences between  
Cantonese and Mandarin? (He  
doesn't believe it)

Búndeihyàhn

Gám yauh àhghaih.  
  
geui

No, I'm not saying that either.  
[that way--also-not]  
sentence

sàamléuhng geui	two or three sentences, (i.e., a few sentences)
Bātgo sàamléuhng geui hóu nàahn góngdākýuhn gé.	However it is difficult to explain [tell and be able to finish] in just a few sentences.

B. Recapitulation:

(An American who works at the American Consulate in Hong Kong talks to a Cantonese friend at a party:)

Búndeihyàhn

Tèngginwah hohk Jùngmán ge ngoingwokýahn dòsou dōu hohk Gwokýuh--	I hear that foreigners who study Chinese for the most part study Mandarin--
Haih m̀hahh jàn ga?	Is that true?

Méihgwokýahn

Haih jàn ga.	Yes, that's right.
Daahnhaih hái Hèunggóng jauh yáuh hóudò Méihgwokýahn dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá la.	But in Hong Kong a lot of Americans study Cantonese.

Búndeihyàhn

Gám, hái líhngsihwún jowh sih gó dī Méihgwokýahn haih m̀hahh gogo dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá ge nē?	Do the Americans who work at the consulate all study Cantonese?
--	---

Méihgwokýahn

M̀hahh gé--	No--
Yáuhdī hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhdī hohk Gwokýuh, yáuhdī léuhng yeuhng dōu m̀hhohk.	Some study Cantonese, some study Mandarin, others don't study either one.

Búndeihyàhn

Deui ngoingwokýahn làih góng, ní léuhng yeuhng wá, bīn yeuhng nàahndī a?	Which of the two languages is more difficult for foreigners?
--	--

Méihgwokyáhn

Ngóh m̄hji bo, yánwaih ngóh jihnghaih hohkgwo Gwóngdùngwá ja. Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokýuh yáuh mēyéh m̄htùhng a?	Gee, I don't know, because I've only studied Cantonese. Cantonese and Mandarin--how do they differ?
--	---

Búndeihyáhn

Kèihsaht Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokýuh yáuh hóudò hóu chíh gē.	Actually Cantonese and Mandarin have many similarities.
--	--

Méihgwokyáhn

Néih jíkhaih wah, Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokýuh móuh mēyéh daaih fànbiht lo bo?!	You're saying that Cantonese and Mandarin don't have any big differences? (He doesn't believe it.)
--	---

Búndeihyáhn

Gám yauh m̄hhaih. Bātgo sáamléuhng geui hóu nàahn góngdākýuhn gé.	No, I'm not saying that either. [that way--also not] However it is difficult to explain in just a few sentences.
---	--

## II. NOTES

1. chíh 'similar to,' 'resembles'

In the spoken language chíh, 'is similar to,' 'resembles' does not stand alone in the affirmative, but is preceded by hóu: hóu chíh, [very similar], i.e., 'similar.' The negative and question forms pattern regularly.

- |                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Ex: 1. Kéuih hóu chíh Mähma.   | She resembles her mother.        |
| 2. Kéuih m̄hchíh Mähmā.        | She doesn't resemble her mother. |
| 3. Kéuih chíh m̄hchíh Mähmā a? | Does she resemble her mother?    |

(See Drill 1)

2. yáuhdí, 'some'

a. yáuhdí may be either modifier or head.

Ex: 1. Yáuhdí noi<sup>h</sup>gwok<sup>y</sup>áhn Some foreigners can speak  
sík gong Gwóngdúngwá. Cantonese.

2. Yáuhdí sík góng, daahn- Some can speak, but can't  
haih mhsík se. write.

b. yáuhdí..., yáuhdí... = some..., some...; some..., others...

In paired clauses yáuhdí..., yáuhdí... form a set meaning: 'some (do this), some (do that);' 'some (do this), others (do that)'

Ex: Yáuhdí yám<sup>g</sup>án heis<sup>é</sup>ui, Some are drinking soft drinks and  
yáuhdí yám<sup>g</sup>án be<sup>j</sup>áui. others are drinking beer.

(See BC and Drill 5)

c. yáuhdí is used only in subject position, not in object position.

In object position where English would have 'some' as modifier to a noun object, Cantonese uses dí + N to represent 'some N.' But where English has 'some' as the pronoun object of the verb, Cantonese, in keeping with its characteristic absence of pronoun object (See Lesson 3, p. 67), does not have an object to the verb.

Ex: 1. Yáuhdí béng hóu hóusihk, Some cookies are quite good,  
yáuhdí mhhaih géi some aren't so good.  
hóusihk.

2. Siháh dí béng lā! Try some cookies!

3. Siháh lā! Try some!

d. Comparison with yáuhsíh, 'sometimes'

yáuhdí is a nominal expression, and yáuhsíh a verbal one.

Ex: 1. Gó dí yáhn yáuhdí heui (Of) those people, some went  
yám chah, yáuhdí hai out to tea, and others  
ukkei. stayed at home.

2. Gó dí yáhn yáuhsíh Those people sometimes go  
heui yám chah, yáuhsíh out to tea and sometimes  
hai ukkei. stay home.

(See Drill 5)

## 3. Duplicated Measures for individual nouns = 'every N,' 'all Ns,' 'Ns all V'

In Lessons 20 and 23 you learned duplicated Measures in relation to Timewords-- for example, nihnnih, 'every year,' jiujiu, 'every morning,' gogo laihbaai, 'every week.'

In this lesson you encounter the duplicated individual Measure used to mean 'every,' 'all' in relation to its individual noun. In duplicated form the Measure occurs in a set with a following dou: M-M dou V = 'every M Vs,' 'all Ms V'

Ex: gogo dou V = 'every M Vs,' 'all Ms V'

Méihgwokyahn gogo dou V = Americans, all V

Gogo Méihgwokyahn dou ... = Every American Vs

<u>Hái lihngsihwun</u> jouh sih	Those Americans who work at
<u>godí Méihgwokyahn</u> haih	the Consulate-- do they
<u>mhhaih gogo dou</u> hohk	all study Cantonese?
<u>Gwongdungwa</u> ge né?	

(See BC and Drill 10)

The duplicated Measure can either precede or follow the noun it is measure to, and in a follow sentence can occur without its noun referent. When it precedes its noun referent, it modifies the noun, which is subject of the sentence; when it follows its noun referent, the sentence is in Topic;Comment form, with the noun as Topic and the duplicated Measure serving as subject of the Comment sentence. (See examples above)

The noun yahn, 'person,' is used as a Measure in duplicated form to mean 'everybody.'

Ex: yahn yahn = everybody

Yahn yahn dou júngyi sihk faahn. Everybody likes to eat.

4. dòsou, 'most,' 'the majority;' 'mostly,' 'for the most part,' 'the majority of the time'

a. dòsou may modify an otherwise unmodified noun, in which case its sentence position is before the noun:

Ex: Dòsou sailougō dou júngyi Most children like to drink  
yam heiseui. soft drinks.

b. Elsewhere, dòsou follows the subject and comes just before the verb.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih dòsou góng      He speaks Cantonese most  
Gwóngdungwá.              of the time.
2. Ngòhdeih dòsou haih      We for the most part  
gam gong.                    express it that way.
3. Gó dī yahn dòsou      Those people speak Cantonese  
gong Gwóngdungwá.      most of the time  
or:  
Those people-- most of them  
speak Cantonese.

(See BC and Drill 10)

5. kèihsaht, 'in actuality,' 'really,' 'but really...'

Kèihsaht leads off a response sentence, indicating disagreement with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence.

- Ex: Kéuih wah kéuih sīk sé jih.      He said he could write Chinese,  
Kèihsaht yat go jih dōu              but actually he couldn't  
mhsik sé.                              write a word.

(See BC)

6. lo bo, sen. suf.

The sentence suffix lo bo gives to the sentence to which it attaches the connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying.

- Ex: A: Gwóngdungwá tūhng Gwok-      Cantonese and Mandarin have many  
yuh yauh hóudò hóu                  similarities.  
chih ge.
- B: Néih jīkhaih wah, Gwóng-      You're saying that Cantonese and  
dungwá tūhng Gwokyuh              Mandarin don't have any big dif-  
mòuh meyh daaih fan-              ferences?! (The English here  
biht lo bo?!                            would be more apt to be: 'You're  
not saying...' to indicate protest-  
ing disbelief.)

( See BC )

7. m̀h̀t̀uh̀ng, 'not alike,' not used in the affirmative.

The verb t̀uh̀ng, 'to be alike, similar to' is used in the negative and question forms, but not in the affirmative.

Ex: q	Ni gih̄n t̀uh̀ng gó gih̄n t̀uh̀ng m̀h̀t̀uh̀ng a?	Are this one and that one alike?
n	Nī gih̄n t̀uh̀ng gó gih̄n m̀h̀t̀uh̀ng.	This one and that one are not alike.
a	Nī gih̄n t̀uh̀ng gó gih̄n yá̄t̄yeh̀ng.	This one and that one are alike.

(See BE and Drills 6,7,8 )



## III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh m̀h̄mā a?<br>(chíh X =<br>resemble X)<br>Do you think he looks like<br>Mother? | 1. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh m̀h̄mā a?  |
| + 2. /S̀aiyàhn/<br>( <u>Westerner</u> , <u>European</u> ,<br><u>Caucasian</u> )                               | 2. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh S̀aiyàhn a?<br>Do you think he looks<br>like a European? |
| + 3. /D̀akgwokyàhn/<br>( <u>a German</u> , <u>Germans</u> )   | 3. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh D̀akgwokyàhn a?  |
| + 4. /Faatgwokyàhn/<br>( <u>Frenchman</u> )   | 4. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh Faatgwokyàhn a?  |
| 5. /néih s̀insàang/   | 5. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hohíh néih s̀insàang a?  |
| 6. /kéuih bàhbā/  | 6. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh kéuih bàhbā a?   |

Comment: S̀aiyàhn [West-person], refers to Caucasians, and is translated as 'European' in Hong Kong, though it includes non-European Caucasians as well.

- a. Repeat, with responses, according to teacher's nod or shake, thus:

T: Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh kéuih m̀h̄mā a? /nod/

S: Hóu chíh kéuih m̀h̄mā.

T: Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh kéuih m̀h̄mā a? /shake/

S: Dōu m̀hchíh kéuih m̀h̄mā.

## 2. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih haih dá bō ge. T: He's a ball player.

S: Kéuih dō. m̀hchíh haih dá bō gé. S: He doesn't look like a ball player.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih haih maaih ngūk ge.<br>He's a real estate agent. | 1. Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih maaih ngūk gé. |
| 2. Kéuih haih duhk syù ge.<br>He's a student.             | 2. Kéuih dōu m̀hohíh haih duhk syù gé.   |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. Kéuih haih jōuh yī sāng ge.<br>He's a doctor. [work as a<br>doctor, be a doctor] | 3. Kéuih dōu m̄hchīh haih jōuh<br>yī sāng gé. |
| 4. Kéuih haih jyú faahn ge.<br>She's a cook.  | 4. Kéuih dōu m̄hchīh haih jyú<br>faahn gé.    |

Comment: The sentence suffix gé said with light stress and rising intonation indicates doubt.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih ge Yīngmàhn góngdāk<br>tùhng Méihgwokyàhn yāt-<br>yeuhng gám.<br>He speaks English just like<br>an American. | 1. Kéuih ge Yīngmàhn góngdāk<br>tùhng Méihgwokyàhn yāt-<br>yeuhng gám.  |
| 2. /Yīngmán/Yīnggwokyàhn/   | 2. Kéuih ge Yīngmán góngdāk<br>tùhng Yīnggwokyàhn yāt-<br>yeuhng gám.   |
| + 3. /Faاتمán/Faatgwokyàhn/<br>(French language) (Frenchman)<br>(also: Faاتمàhn)                                      | 3. Kéuih ge Faاتمán góngdāk<br>tùhng Faatgwokyàhn yāt-<br>yeuhng gám.   |
| 4. /Yahtmán/Yahtbúnyàhn/  | 4. Kéuih ge Yahtmàhn góngdāk<br>tùhng Yahtbúnyàhn yāt-<br>yeuhng gám.   |
| + 5. /Dākmán/Dākgwokyàhn/<br>(German language) (German person)<br>(also: Dākמàhn)                                     | 5. Kéuih ge Dākמàhn góngdāk<br>tùhng Dākgwokyàhn yāt-<br>yeuhng gám.<br>He speaks German just<br>like a German. |
| + 6. /búndeihwá/búndeihyàhn/<br>(the local language)  | 6. Kéuih ge búndeihwá góngdāk<br>tùhng búndeihyàhn yāt-<br>yeuhng gám.  |

4. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Hmm...néih tēngdóu<br>+ mēyéh sèng a?<br>/dihnwá/ | T: What <u>sound</u> (or what <u>noise</u> ) do<br>you hear?                          |
| S: Hóu chíh haih dih-<br>wá gám sèng bo.                 | S: It sounds like a telephone.<br>[It seems to be a telephone<br>that kind of sound.] |
| 1. Hmm...néih tēngdóu mēyéh                              | 1. Hóu chíh haih dá páai gám  |

- sèng a? /dá páai/  
 2. Hmm...néih têngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /kinggái/  
 3. Hmm...néih têngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /fóché/  
 4. Hmm...néih têngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /laahmchē/  
 5. Hmm...néih têngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /sāuyāngèi/  
 ++ 6. Hmm...néih màhdóu mēyéh meih a? /bējáu/  
 What smell do you smell?  
màhn = to smell  
meih = a smell
- sèng bo.  
 2. Hóu chíh haih kinggái gám sèng bo.  
 3. Hóu chíh haih fóché gám sèng bo.  
 4. Hóu chíh haih laahmchē gám sèng bo.  
 5. Hóu chíh haih sāuyāngèi gám sèng bo.  
 6. Hóu chíh haih bējáu gám meih bo.  
 It smells like beer.
7. Hmm...néih màhdóu mēyéh meih a? /jǐng bēng/  
 What's that smell?  
 7. Hóu chíh jǐng bēng gám meih bo.  
 Smells like a cake being baked.

## 5. Alteration Drill

- Ex: T: Yáuhdí yàhn jǔngyi dá páai, yáuhdí jǔngyi yáuhseui.  
 S: Ngóh yáuhsih jǔngyi dá páai, yáuhsih jǔngyi yáuhseui.
- T: Some people like to play mahjong, others like to swim.  
 S: I sometimes like to play mahjong and sometimes like to go swimming.
1. Yáuhdí yàhn tái hei, yáuhdí tái dihnsih.  
 1. Ngóh yáuhsih tái hei, yáuhsih tái dihnsih.
2. Yáuhdí yàhn hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhdí hohk Gwokýuh.  
 2. Ngóh yáuhsih hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhsih hohk Gwokýuh.
3. Yáuhdí yàhn sihk Jǔngchoi, yáuhdí sihk Sāichāan.  
 3. Ngóh yáuhsih sihk Jǔngchoi, yáuhsih sihk Sāichāan.
4. Yáuhdí yàhn daap syùhn, yáuhdí chók fēigēi.  
 4. Ngóh yáuhsih daap syùhn, yáuhsih chók fēigēi.
5. Yáuhdí yàhn daap bāsí, yáuhdí chók díksi.  
 5. Ngóh yáuhsih daap bāsí, yáuhsih chók díksi.
6. Yáuhdí yàhn góng Faatmán, yáuhdí góng Dakmán.  
 6. Ngóh yáuhsih góng Faatmán, yáuhsih góng Dakmán.

6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: NĪ jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng ge jē. T: This one and that one are just alike.

S: NĪ jèung m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó jèung ga. S: This one is not like that one.

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. NĪ faai tùhng gó faai yātyeuhng ge jē.   | 1. NĪ faai m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó faai ga.   |
| 2. NĪ bùi tùhng gó bùi yātyeuhng ge jē.     | 2. NĪ bùi m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó bùi ga.     |
| 3. NĪ tou tùhng gó tou yātyeuhng ge jē.     | 3. NĪ tou m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó tou ga.     |
| 4. NĪ jĭ tùhng gó jĭ yātyeuhng ge jē.       | 4. NĪ jĭ m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó jĭ ga.       |
| 5. NĪ jek tùhng gó jek yātyeuhng ge jē.     | 5. NĪ jek m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó jek ga.     |
| 6. NĪ jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng ge jē. | 6. NĪ jèung m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó jèung ga. |

Comment: tùhng can be the verb of the predicate in the negative and question forms, but not in the affirmative.

	Subject	Predicate	
n	NĪgo	m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó go.	This one is not like that one.
q	NĪgo	tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó go a?	Is this one like that one?
a	NĪgo tùhng gógo	yātyeuhng.	This one is like that one.

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: NĪ bún tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó bún a? T: Is this book like that one?

S: NĪ bún tùhng gó bún yáuh móuh fànbiht a? S: Is there any difference between this book and that one?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. NĪ deui tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó deui a? | 1. NĪ deui tùhng gó deui yáuh móuh fànbiht a? |
| 2. NĪ tĭuh tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó tĭuh a? | 2. NĪ tĭuh tùhng gó tĭuh yáuh móuh fànbiht a? |
| 3. NĪ bá tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó bá a?     | 3. NĪ bá tùhng gó bá yáuh móuh fànbiht a?     |

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 4. Ní bāau tùhng m̀htùhng gó bāau a?  | 4. Ní bāau tùhng gó bāau yáuh móuh fànbiht a?   |
| 5. Ní gāan tùhng m̀htùhng gó gāan a?  | 5. Ní gāan tùhng gó gāan yáuh mouh fànbiht a?   |
| 6. Ní j̀ung tùhng m̀htùhng gó jung a? | 6. Ní j̀ung tùhng gó j̀ung yáuh mouh fànbiht a? |

## 8. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Chàhlàuh tùhng chāan- T: What's the difference [what things are not alike] between a Cantonese teahouse and a restaurant serving Western food?

S: Chàhlàuh tùhng chāan- S: What's the difference (or what are the differences) between a Cantonese teahouse and a restaurant serving Western food?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Gwóngdúng choi tùhng Seuhng-hói choi yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a? | 1. Gwóngdúng choi tùhng Seuhng-hói choi yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a? |
| 2. J̀ungchoi tùhng Sāichāan yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?             | 2. J̀ungchoi tùhng Sāichāan yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?             |
| 3. Jáugā tùhng jáudim yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?                   | 3. Jáugā tùhng jáudim yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?                   |
| 4. Chàhlàuh tùhng jáugā yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?                 | 4. Chàhlàuh tùhng jáugā yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?                 |
| 5. Ngūk tùhng ngūkkéi yáuh mēyéh m̀htùhng a?                   | 5. Ngūk tùhng ngūkkéi yáuh mēyéh fànbiht a?                   |

## 9. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ní dī sāam dòsou haih làahm ge. /jeuk/

T: Most of these dresses are blue. [blue ones].

S: Ngóh dòsou jeuk làahm sāam.

S: I wear blue dresses most of the time. or I mostly wear blue dresses.

1. Ní dī pihnggwó dòsou haih h̀uhng ge. /sihk/

1. Ngóh dòsou sihk h̀uhng pihnggwó.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 2. Nǐ dī bēng dōsou haih tǐhm ge.<br>/sǐhk/      | 2. Ngóh dōsou sǐhk tǐhm bēng.      |
| 3. Nǐ dī mōuhgān dōsou haih daaih ge.<br>/yuhng/ | 3. Ngóh dōsou yuhng daaih mōuhgān. |
| 4. Nǐ dī bējáu dōsou haih dung ge.<br>/yám/      | 4. Ngóh dōsou yám dung bējáu.      |
| 5. Nǐ dī hàaih dōsou haih lòihlòu ge.<br>/jeuk/  | 5. Ngóh dōsou jeuk lòihlòu hàaih.  |
| 6. Nǐ dī fu dōsou haih gauh ge.<br>/jeuk/        | 6. Ngóh dōsou jeuk gauh fu.        |

## 10. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gogo sailóugō dōu jùngyi yám hei-séui.

T: All children like to drink soft drinks.

S: Sailóugō dōsou dōu jùngyi yám hei-séui.

S: Most children like to drink soft drinks.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Gogo sailóugō dōu jùngyi sǐhk bēng.   | 1. Sailóugō dōsou dōu jùngyi sǐhk bēng.  |
| 2. Gàangāan jáugā dōu yáuh Gwóng-dùng choi sǐhk.   | 2. Jáugā dōsou dōu yáuh Gwóng-dùng choi sǐhk.  |
| 3. Gogo ngoihgwokyáhn dōu jùngyi yám jáu.  | 3. Ngoihgwokyáhn dōsou dōu jùngyi yám jáu.   |
| + 4. Gogo <u>néuihyán</u> dōu jùngyi jeuk leng sām.<br>([female-person] <u>woman</u> , <u>women</u> )<br>Every woman likes to wear pretty clothes. | 4. Néuihyán dōsou dōu jùngyi jeuk leng sām.<br>Most women like to wear pretty clothes. |
| + 5. Gogo <u>nàahmyán</u> dōu jòuh sǐh.<br>([male-person] <u>man</u> , <u>men</u> )<br>Every man works.  | 5. Nàahmyán dōsou dōu jòuh sǐh.<br>Most men work.                                      |

Comment: Note the use of reduplicated Noun Measures gogo, gàangāan to mean 'every,' 'each' Noun. This corresponds to the reduplicated time expression measures nihnnih, gogo láihbaai, etc, previously studied, meaning 'every, each time expression.' Note also the tendency to form a set with dōu.

## 11. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Deui ngóh làih góng, yat chǐn mǎn taai dò laak. T: Speaking for myself, one thousand dollars is too much. or For me, one thousand dollars is too much.

S: Deui ngóh làih góng, yat chǐn mǎn dò gwotàuh laak. S: For me, one thousand dollars is much too much.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Deui ngóh làih góng, nǐ bún syù taai nàahn laak.  | 1. Deui ngóh làih góng, nǐ bún syù nàahn gwotàuh laak.                |
| 2. Deui ngóh làih góng, nǐ dǐ faaijǐ taai dyún laak.   | 2. Deui ngóh làih góng, nǐ dǐ faaijǐ dyún gwotàuh laak.               |
| 3. Deui ngóh làih góng, gó gǎan ngük taai sai laak.  | 3. Deui ngóh làih góng, gó gǎan ngük sai gwotàuh laak.                |
| 4. Deui ngóh làih góng, go sǎu-yāngèi hòidāk taai daaih sèng laak.<br>+ <u>hòu sǎuyāngèi =</u><br><u>turn on the radio</u><br>For me, the radio is turned on too loud. | 4. Deui ngóh làih góng, go sǎu-yāngèi hòidāk daaih sèng gwotàuh laak. |
| 5. Deui ngóh làih góng, go láahng-hei hòidāk taai dung laak.<br>For me, the air conditioner is turned on too cold.   | 5. Deui ngóh làih góng, go láahng-hei hòidāk dung gwotàuh laak.       |
| 6. Deui ngóh làih góng, sǎam gihn taai <u>sǐu</u> laak.<br>+ For me, three is too few.   | 6. Deui ngóh làih góng, sǎam gihn sǐu gwotàuh laak.                   |

## 12. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh daap fóchē. Fóchē léuhng dím hòi. T: I'm going to take the train. The train leaves at two o'clock.

S: Ngóh daap léuhng dím hòi ge fóchē. S: I'm taking the train that leaves at 2 o'clock.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh mǎhjungyi néuihyán. Néuihyán jungyi góng yéh. | 1. Ngóh mǎhjungyi jungyi góng yéh ge néuihyán.<br>I don't like talkative women. |
| 2. Nàahmyán jungyi néuihyán. Néuihyán sǐk jyúsíhk.    | 2. Nàahmyán jungyi sǐk jyúsíhk ge néuihyán.                                     |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3. Ngóh mhmáaih yéh.<br>Máaih yéh yiu béi hóu dò<br>chín. | 3. Ngóh mhmáaih yiu béi hóu dò<br>chín ge yéh.   |
| 4. Ngóh mhchéng dájaap.<br>Dájaap mhjúngyi jouh yéh.      | 4. Ngóh mhchéng mhjúngyi jouh<br>yéh ge dájaap.<br>I'm not going to hire an<br>amah who doesn't like to<br>work. |
| 5. Kéuih hóusíu máaih láangsāam.<br>Lāangsāam hóu gwai.   | 5. Kéuih hóusíu máaih hóu gwai<br>ge láangsāam.  |

## 13. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Gó go Yínggwokyáhn  
haih ngóh pàhng-  
yáuh. Kéuih jeuk  
làahm sēutsāam.

T: That Englishman is my friend.  
He is wearing a blue shirt.

S: Jeuk làahm sēutsāam  
gó go Yínggwokyáhn  
haih ngóh pàhng-  
yáuh.

S: That Englishman (who is)  
wearing the blue shirt is  
my friend.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Gó go sailóugō haih kéuih ge<br>jai. Kéuih yáuhgán séui.<br>That child is his son.<br>He is swimming.                     | 1. Yàuhgán séui gó go sailóugō<br>haih kéuih ge jai.<br>That child (who is)<br>swimming is his son. |
| 2. Gó go yáhn haih ngóh màhmā.<br>Kéuih dágán dihnwá.  | 2. Dágán dihnwá gó go yáhn<br>haih ngóh màhma.  |
| 3. Gó go ngoihgwokyáhn gaau ngóh<br>Yíngmáhn. Kéuih yámgán<br>chàh.  | 3. Yámgán chàh gó go ngoih-<br>gwokyáhn gaau ngóh<br>Yíngmáhn.                                      |
| 4. Gó go néuihyán haih ngóh dá-<br>jaap. Kéuih saigán sām.   | 4. Saigán sām gó go néuihyán<br>haih ngóh dájaap.   |
| + 5. Gó go <u>sailouhnéui</u> haih ngóh<br>ge néui. Kéuih jeuk hùhng<br>kwáhn.<br>That <u>little girl</u> is my<br>daughter. | 5. Jeuk hùhng kwáhn gó go<br>sailouhnéui haih ngóh ge<br>néui.                                      |
| 6. Gó go Faatgwokyáhn haih kéuih<br>néuihpàhngyáuh. Kéuih hái<br>daaihohk gaau Faatmáhn.                                     | 6. Hái daaihohk gaau Faatmáhn<br>gó go Faatgwokyáhn haih<br>kéuih néuihpàhngyáuh.                   |



## 14. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ní léuhng júng chē,  
bīn júng hóudī a?  
/Dakgwok/Faatgwok/

T: Which of these two kinds of  
cars is better? or  
Of these two kinds of cars  
which is better? /Germany/  
France/

S: Dāk gwok chē tūhng  
Faatgwok chē, bīn  
júng hóudī a?

S: Which is better--German cars  
or French cars? [Between  
German cars and French cars,  
which is better?]

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Ní léuhng ga sāuyāngèi, bīn<br/>ga hóudī a? /daaih gó ga/<br/>sai gó ga/</p> <p>2. Ní léuhng jèung tóí, bīn jèung<br/>lengdī a? /chèuhngdī gó<br/>jèung/dyúndī gó jèung/</p> <p>3. Ní léuhng bún syù, bīn bún<br/>pèhngdī a? /háuh gó bún/<br/>+ <u>bohk gó bún/</u><br/>+ the <u>thick</u> one<br/>the <u>thin</u> one<br/><u>háuh</u> = <u>thick</u><br/><br/><u>bohk</u> = <u>thin</u></p> <p>4. Ní léuhng jí bējáu, bīn jí<br/>hóuyámdī a? /Hèunggóng/<br/>Ngoihgwok/</p> <p>5. Ní léuhng go gùngyàhn, bīn go<br/>kàhnlihkđī a?<br/>/daaihđī gó go/saidī gó go/<br/>/the older one/the younger<br/>one/</p> | <p>1. Daaih gó ga sāuyāngèi tūhng<br/>sai gó ga, bīn ga hóudī a?</p> <p>2. Chèuhngdī gó jèung tóí<br/>tūhng dyúndī gó jèung,<br/>bīn jèung lengdī a?</p> <p>3. Háuh gó bún syù tūhng bohk gó<br/>bún, bīn bún pèhngdī a?<br/>Which is cheaper--the thick<br/>book or the thin one?</p> <p>4. Hèunggóng bējáu tūhng<br/>Ngoihgwok bējáu, bīn jí<br/>hóuyámdī a?</p> <p>5. Daaihđī gó go gùngyàhn<br/>tūhng saidī gó go, bīn<br/>go kàhnlihkđī a?</p> |
|---|---|

## 15. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gwóngdùngwá tūhng  
Gwok yúh dōu gam  
nàahn ge laak.

T: Cantonese and Mandarin are  
both equally difficult.

S: Gwóngdùngwá tūhng  
Gwok yúh, Gwóng-  
dùngwá nàahndī.

S: Between Cantonese and Mandarin,  
Cantonese is a bit more  
difficult. or  
Cantonese is a bit more  
difficult than Mandarin.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Faatmán tùhng Dākmán dōu gam yih ge laak.         | 1. Faatmán tùhng Dākmán, Faatmán yihdī.         |
| 2. Ngóh go tùhng néih go dōu gam leuhnjeuhn ge laak. | 2. Ngóh go tùhng néih go, ngóh go leuhnjeuhndī. |
| 3. Nī tou tùhng gó tou dōu gam gauh ge laak.         | 3. Nī tou tùhng gó tou, nī tou gauhdī.          |
| 4. Nī faai tùhng gó faai dōu gam háuh.               | 4. Nī faai tùhng gó faai, nī faai háuhdī.       |
| 5. Nī gihn tùhng gó gihn dōu gam bohk.               | 5. Nī gihn tùhng gó gihn, nī gihn bohkdī.       |
| 6. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan dōu gam hóusihk.          | 6. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan, Jùngchoi hóusihkdī. |

## 16. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nī jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng gam gòu. /chèuhngdī/

T: This one is as high as that one.

S: Nī jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng gam gòu, bātgow nī jèung chèuhngdī jē.

S: This one is as high as that one, but this one is a little longer.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Nī bún tùhng gó bún yātyeuhng gam daaih. /gwaidī/               | 1. Nī bún tùhng gó bún yātyeuhng gam daaih, bātgow nī bún gwaidī jē.                  |
| 2. Chóh bāsī tùhng chóh fóchē yātyeuhng gam dò chin. /noihdī/      | 2. Chóh bāsī tùhng chóh fóchē yātyeuhng gam dò chin, bātgow chóh bāsī noihdī jē.      |
| 3. Nī gāan tùhng gó gāan yātyeuhng gam dò chin jòu. /dò go chisó/  | 3. Nī gāan tùhng gó gāan yātyeuhng gam dò chin jòu, bātgow nī gāan dò go chisó jē.    |
| 4. Tái dihnsih tùhng tái hei yātyeuhng gam hóu. /guihdī/           | 4. Tái dihnsih tùhng tái hei yātyeuhng gam hóu, bātgow tái dihnsih guihdī jē.         |
| 5. Syutgwaih tùhng láahngheigèi yātyeuhng gam gányiu. /yuhng dōdī/ | 5. Syutgwaih tùhng láahngheigèi yātyeuhng gam gányiu, bātgow syutgwaih yuhng dōdī jē. |
| 6. Daap fēigēi tùhng daap syùhn yātyeuhng gam gwai. /faaidī/       | 6. Daap fēigēi tùhng daap syùhn yātyeuhng gam gwai, bātgow daap fēigēi faaidī jē.     |

7. Néuihyán tühng nàahmyán yāt-  
yeuhng gam hóu. /kinggái  
dōdī/

7. Néuihyán tühng nàahmyán  
yātyeuhng gam hóu, bātgwō  
néuihyán kinggái dōdī jē.

#### IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) chà mhdāk gēi dò = chàmhdò = about the same; just a little bit less good, [lacking not very much]
- 2) Mhgingdāk ā! = Not necessarily!
- 3) Fāanjing = anyway, besides,...
- 4) Néih go yàhn jànhaih ā = You really are something!
- 5) sàangjō = gave birth (to)
- 6) hōisām = happy
- 7) jihgēi ge = one's own, your own, etc.
- 8) Mhsái gam mēyéh ga? = No need to make such a big thing of it?
- 9) séungfaat = idea, concept
- 10) A Jèung = Mrs. Jèung's husband
- 11) hóu chíh = similar to; A similar to B.  
(A Jèung is similar to Wòhng Tāai and the others that way in not liking girls.)

#### V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. Which is more expensive-- Chinese food or Western food?
2. Does your child speak English or Cantonese?
3. Someone told me that some Americans don't speak English--is that true?
4. Miss Chan looks like her younger brother.

B. And he replies:

1. Perhaps Western food is more expensive; however among Chinese food some is cheap and some expensive.
2. He speaks Cantonese mostly, but he can speak a little English too.
3. Yes, it's true. Do all Chinese people know how to speak Chinese?
4. Do you know her mother? She also looks like her mother.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 5. You speak Cantonese just like a Cantonese.                        | 5. You praise me too much--I speak very awkwardly.                     |
| 6. He's a teacher.   | 6. He doesn't look like a teacher.                                     |
| 7. (sniff-sniff:) What's that smell?                                 | 7. Smells like beer.   |
| 8. How many languages can he speak altogether?                       | 8. He speaks four altogether-- French, German, English, and Cantonese. |
| 9. Are there two typewriters alike?                                  | 9. No, this one isn't like that one.                                   |
| 10. This radio is like that one, right?                              | 10. Yes, they're just alike.   |
| 11. This cloth is too thin--do you have any heavier?                 | 11. Yes, go downstairs.  |
| 12. I hear you speak Cantonese very well.                            | 12. Actually I just speak a few sentences.                             |
| 13. How do you like soup?  | 13. It's too peppery for me.   |
| 14. What's the difference between <u>jáugā</u> and <u>chàhlàuh</u> ? | 14. Actually the difference is quite small.                            |

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 27

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. bohk                          | thin (in thickness, as of cloth)   |
| 2. bündehwá                      | local language   |
| 3. chíh                          | v: is similar to; resembles  |
| 4. Dǎkgwokyáhn [go]              | n: German  |
| 5. Dǎkmáhn (also: <u>-mán</u> )  | n: German (language)   |
| 6. deui <u>X</u> làih góng       | Ph: speaking for <u>X</u> , from the point of view of <u>X</u>   |
| 7. dòeou                         | att/adv: mostly, for the most part; the majority   |
| 8. Faatgwokyáhn [go]             | n: Frenchman   |
| 9. Faatmáhn (also: <u>-mán</u> ) | n: French (language)   |
| 10. fànbih                       | n: difference  |
| 11. háuh                         | adj: thick   |
| 12. hòì sǎuyāngēi                | VO: turn on the radio  |
| 13. jàn ge                       | Ph: true; the truth  |
| 14. kèihshat                     | Ph: in actuality, in truth, 'but actually' leads off a response sentence which disagrees with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence |

15. lihngsihgwún	n: consulate
16. lo bo!	ss: with connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying
17. m̀ht̀uhng	v: not alike, used in negative and question forms, but not in affirmative
18. m̀ahn	v: to smell
19. meih	n: smell
20. ǹaahmyán [go]	n: man
21. ǹeuihyán [go]	n: woman
22. sailouhnéui [go]	n: little girl
23. S̀aiyàhn [go]	n: Westerner, European, Caucasian
24. s̀eng	n: sound
25. siu	adj: few
26. yáuhdī	Ph: some, a few
27. yáuhdī..., yáuhdī...	Ph: some..., others...

---

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(The amah answers a ring at the door-bell to find the postman at the door:)

Gúngyàhn

Jouh māt a?

What is it?

Yàuhchàai

yàuhchàai

postman

gwahouh seun

registered letter

sàu

receive, collect, take in

sàu seun

receive letters

Sàu gwahouh seun a.

Registered letter. [Receive a registered letter.]

Gúngyàhn

sihtáu

employer, boss

Dím syun a?

'How can we handle this?'

or 'What's to be done?'

Ngóh sihtáu m̀hái douh bo, dím syun a?

My boss isn't home--what'll

I do?

sáujuhk

procedure(s)

yiú mēyéh sáujuhk?

What procedure(s) is (are) necessary?

Ngóh m̀hji yiú mēyéh sáujuhk ga.

I don't know what the procedure is.

Yàuhchàai

M̀hgányiu gé.

That's all right.

chím méng

sign one's name

chím go méng hái n̄idouh

sign your name here

yiú néih chím go méng hái n̄idouh

require you to sign your name here

jíyiu...,jauh

just have to...; as long as you

jíyiu néih chím go méng,

you just have to sign

jauh...

your name, and ...

Jíyiu néih chím go méng hái n̄idouh, jauh dāk ge laak.

You just have to sign your name here, and you can have it.

Gúngyáhn

m̄hsík jìh  
Ngóh m̄hsík jìh ga, díng chíng a?

to be illiterate  
I can't read or write--how can  
I sign?

Yáuhchàai

juhng yáuh móuh bínggo sík  
jìh ge hái douh a?  
chèuhjǒ...(jǐngoih)

is there anyone else here  
who can read and write?  
aside from, apart from,  
besides

chèuhjǒ néih jǐngoih  
Gám, chèuhjǒ néih jǐngoih, juhng  
yáuh móuh bínggo sík jìh ge hái  
douh a?

apart from you, besides you  
Well, aside from you, is there  
anyone else here who can  
read and write?

Gúngyáhn

Móuh lòh.

No. (childishly feeling sorry  
for herself)

Yáuhchàai

tòuhjēung  
Gám, néih yáuh móuh tòuhjēung a?

chop, seal  
In that case, do you have a  
chop?

Gúngyáhn

só  
sómàaih

to lock  
lock up, lock tight, lock  
away

ngóh go tòuhjēung sómàaihjǒ  
ngóh go tòuhjēung béijǒ  
sihtáuh

my chop has been locked up  
my chop was given to the  
boss

Ngóh go tòuhjēung béijǒ sihtáuh  
tùhng ngóh sómàaih.

My chop I gave to the boss to  
lock up for me.

sósìh

key

Ngóh yauh móuh sósìh gé.

And I don't have the key.

gwaih

cupboard; dresser

gwaihtúng

drawer

jǐnglaahn go gwaihtúng

break the drawer

jèung

take

jèung go gwaihtúng jinglaahn	take the drawer and break
chèuihfèi	it; i.e., break the drawer
	unless; would have to;
	only if
Chèuihfèi jèung go gwaihtúng	Unless I took the drawer and
jinglaahn lā...	broke it... (thinking it over)
	<u>Yàuhchâai</u>
màhfàahn	trouble
Syun laak.	Never mind! <u>or</u> Forget it!
Gám a, gam màhfàahn.	Oh, such trouble!
Syun la, syun laak.	Never mind!
bātyùh...bá la(ak)	it would be preferable to...
yàuhjinggúk	post office
bātyùh heui yàuhjinggúk ló	it would be better to go
bá laak	to the post office to
	get it
jihgéi	oneself, himself, myself,
	etc.
sihtáu jihgéi	the boss himself
giu néih sihtáu jihgéi	tell your boss to go get
heui ló	it himself
giu néih sihtáu jihgéi	tell your boss to go to
heui yàuhjinggúk ló	the post office himself
	to get it
Bātyùh giu néih sihtáu jihgéi	You'd better tell your boss
heui yàuhjinggúk ló bá laak.	to go to the post office
	himself to get it.
	<u>Gúngyâhn</u>
Hóu la.	All right.
yāt Verbl, jauh Verb <sup>2</sup> la.	as soon as..., then ...
yāt fāanlāih, jauh heui la	as soon as he returns,
	he'll go
jíkhāak	immediately
Kéuih yāt fāanlāih, ngóh jauh	As soon as he comes back, I'll
giu kéuih jíkhāak heui lā.	tell him to go right away.



Yàuhchàai

Haih gám wah la.

That's the way! [Be (it) the way (you) say]

Gùngyàhn

Mhngòisaai.

Thanks a lot.

B. Recapitulation:

(The amah answers a ring at the door-bell to find the postman at the door:)

Gùngyàhn

Jouh māt a?

What is it?

Yàuhchàai

Sàu gwahouh seun a.

Registered letter. [Take a registered letter.]

Gùngyàhn

Ngóh sìhtáu mhhái douh bo, dím syun a?

My boss isn't home--what'll I do?

Ngóh mǎjǐ yiu mēyéh sáujukh ga.

I don't know what procedures are required.

Yàuhchàai

Jíyiu néih chím go méng hái nídouh, jauh dāk ge laak.

You just have to sign your name here, and you can have it.

Gùngyàhn

Ngóh mǎsík jih ga, dím chím a?

I can't read and write--how can I sign?

Yàuhchàai

Gám, chéuihjó néih jingoih, juhng yáuh móuh bīngó sīk jih ge hái douh a?

Well, aside from you, is there anyone else here who can read and write?

Gùngyàhn

Móuh lòn.

No.

Yàuhchàai

Gám, néih yáuh móuh tòuhjēung a?

In that case, do you have a chop?

Gùngyáhn

Ngóh go tòuhjēung béijó sihtáu  
 tùhng ngóh sómáaih.  
 Ngóh yauh móuh sósih gé.  
 Chèuihfèi jèung go gwaihtúng  
 jínglaahn lā...

My chop I gave to the boss  
 to lock up for me.  
 And I don't have the key.  
 Unless I broke the drawer...  
 (thinking it over)

Yàuhchàai

Gám a, gam màhfàahn.  
 Syun la, syun laak.  
 Bātyùh giu néih sihtáu jìhgéi  
 heui yàuhjìnggúk ló bá laak.

Oh, such trouble!  
 Never mind!  
 You'd better tell your boss to  
 go to the post office himself  
 to get it.

Gùngyáhn

Hóu la.  
 Kéuih yāt fàanlāih, ngóh jauh giu  
 kéuih jíkhāak heui la.

All right.  
 As soon as he comes back, I'll  
 tell him to go right away.

Yàuhchàai

Haih gám wah la.

That's the way.

Gùngyáhn

Mhngòisaai.

Thank you.

## II. NOTES

## A. Culture Notes

tòuhjēung, 'seal,' 'chop'

A tòuhjēung is a seal (usually referred to as a 'chop') cut from stone or wood, bearing the name of the owner. Documents may be validated by stamping with one's chop rather than by signature.

## B. Structure Notes

1. jíyiu... , jauh... = 'If only..., then...'; 'You just have to..., and';  
'As long as..., then...'

Ex: 1. Jíyiu yáuh sei go yáhn, You have to have 4 people  
jauh hoyih dá mah to play mahjong.  
jeuk laak.

2. Jíyiu haih gònjehng ge, As long as it's clean, it  
jauh géi gauh dōu móuh doesn't matter how old  
sòwaih gé. it is.

(See BC)

2. chèuihjó...(jì ngoih)... = 'aside from...,' 'with the exception of...,'  
'in addition to...'

- a. Chèuihjó...(jì ngoih), juhng... = 'aside from..., also...,'  
'in addition to..., also!..'

Ex: Chèuihjó Méihgwok Aside from America, I have also  
(jì ngoih), ngoh been to Japan. or: In addition  
juhng heuigwo to America, I have also been  
Yahtbun tím. to Japan.

(See Drill 10)

- b. Chèuihjó...(jì ngoih), jauh mēyéh (or bīndouh, etc.) dōu m̄h Verb =  
'Aside from..., no thing/place/one/etc. else,' or 'With the  
exception of..., no thing/place/one/etc. else.'

Ex: Chèuihjó Méihgwok, jauh Aside from America, I  
bīndouh dōu meih haven't gone anywhere.  
heuigwo laak.

(See Drill 11)



## b. In double clause sentences.

In double clause sentences, chèuihfèi pairs with ji, jauh, or yùngwó m̀h̄hah, with chèuihfèi introducing the first clause, and the paired conjunction operating in the second clause. The chèuihfèi clause establishes the necessary condition, and the second states the consequences.

- |                                       |   |                             |
|---------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Chèuihfèi.....,ji.....             | } | Must be...,in order that... |
| 2. Chèuihfèi.....,jauh.....           |   | Only if..., then...         |
|                                       |   | Unless....., then...        |
| 3. Chèuihfèi.....,yùngwó m̀h̄hah..... |   | Must..., otherwise,...      |

- Ex: 1. Chèuihfèi kéuih heui, He'll have to go before I go.  
ngòh ji heui. i.e.,  
Only if he goes will I go.
2. Chèuihfèi kéuih m̀h̄heui, Only if he doesn't go, will I go.  
ngòh jauh heui. or:  
I'll go unless he doesn't.
3. Chèuihfèi kéuih m̀h̄heui, If he doesn't go, I won't go.  
ngòh jauh m̀h̄heui lak.
4. Chèuihfèi kéuih heui; He'll have to go; otherwise,  
yùngwó m̀h̄hah, ngòh I won't go.  
m̀h̄heui.

(See Drills 5-9)

4. bātyùh.X.bá laak (or lā) = 'it would be better to...'

Bātyuh...bá laak suggests alternate plan X as being preferable to the plan already proposed.

- Ex: A: Ngòndeih máaih nīdī Let's buy these, what do  
hòu m̀h̄hóu a? you say?
- B: Nīdī taai gwai, bātyùh These are too expensive-- it  
máaih p̀hngdī ge bá lā. would be better to buy  
cheaper ones instead.

(See BC and Drill 2)

5. yāt..., jauh... = as soon as..., (then)...

These two form a set of paired conjunctions joining two clauses in a sentence.

Ex: Ngóh yāt yáuh chín,      As soon as I have some money,  
       (ngóh) jauh chéng néih      I'll invite you out to  
       sìhk faahn laak.            dinner.

(See BC and Drill 3)

6. jeung, 'take'

jeung N, V. = take N and V it.

This pattern rearranges a basic VO structure into two verbal phrases, with the object of the basic VO structure brought forward in the sentence to become the object of jeung, thus:

VO becomes jeung O, V...

Ex: V      O                              jeung O                              V  
       dalaahn go gwaihtung → jeung go gwaihtung dalaahn  
       break the drawer      → take the drawer and break it

(See BC)

This pattern only occurs if the basic verb is a two-part verb or has a post verbal complement.

(The jeung O, V-complement pattern in Cantonese is the equivalent of the bǎ O, V-complement pattern in Mandarin, but the bǎ construction is more common in Mandarin than is the jeung construction in Cantonese.)

## III. DRILLS

## 1. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>+ 1. a. <u>dihnbou</u><br/>b. fùng dihnbou</p> <p>+ c. <u>dá fùng dihnbou</u><br/>d. dá fùng dihnbou béi mǎhmā<br/>e. heui dá fùng dihnbou béi mǎhmā.</p> <p>+ f. heui <u>dihnboughk dá fùng dihnbou béi mǎhmā</u>++</p> <p>g. séung heui dihnboughk dá fùng dihnbou béi mǎhmā</p> <p>h. Ngóh séung heui dihnboughk dá fùng dihnbou béi mǎhmā.</p> | <p>1. a. telegram(s), cablegram(s)<br/>b. telegram, cablegram</p> <p>c. <u>send a telegram</u><br/>d. send a telegram to Mother<br/>e. go to send a telegram to Mother</p> <p>f. go to the telegraph office to send a telegram to Mother</p> <p>g. plan to go to the telegraph office to send a telegram to Mother</p> <p>h. I want to go to the telegraph office to send a telegram to Mother.</p> |
|---|---|

Comment: A common alternate pronunciation of dihnboughk is dihnboughk.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>2. a. seun</p> <p>+ b. <u>gei seun</u></p> <p>c. heui gei seun<br/>d. heui yàuhjinggúk gei seun</p> <p>e. heui jógán yàuhjinggúk gei seun</p> <p>f. yiu heui jógán yàuhjinggúk gei seun</p> <p>g. Ngóh yiu heui jógán yàuhjinggúk gei seun.</p> | <p>2. a. letter(s)<br/>b. <u>mail letters, send letters</u></p> <p>c. go to mail letters<br/>d. go to the post office to mail letters</p> <p>e. go to the nearby post office to mail a letter</p> <p>f. have to go to the nearby post office to mail some letters</p> <p>g. I have to go to the nearby post office to mail letters.</p> |
| <p>+ 3. a. <u>wùih seun</u></p> <p>b. wùih seun béi kéuih</p> <p>c. meih dākhaahn wùih seun béi kéuih tīm</p>  | <p>3. a. <u>answer a letter, reply by letter</u></p> <p>b. answer his letter, reply to him by letter</p> <p>c. haven't had time to answer his letter</p>  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| d. juhng meih dākhaahn wùih<br>seun béi kéuih tím   | d. still haven't had time<br>to answer his letter   |
| e. ngóh juhng meih dākhaahn wùih<br>seun béi kéuih tím  | e. I still haven't had time<br>to answer his letter.  |
| f. Léuhng go láihbaai laak, ngóh<br>juhng meih dākhaahn wùih<br>seun béi kéuih tím.           | f. It's been 2 weeks, and I<br>still haven't had time<br>to answer his letter.              |
| g. Yíhging léuhng go láihbaai<br>laak, ngóh juhng meih dāk-<br>haahn wùih seun béi kéuih tím. | g. It's already been two<br>weeks, and I still<br>haven't had time to<br>answer his letter. |
| 4. a. chéuhng tòuh  | 4. a. 'long distance'   |
| + b. <u>chéuhng tòuh dihnwá</u>   | b. <u>long distance phone call</u>  |
| c. dá chéuhng tòuh dihnwá   | c. make a long distance<br>phone call   |
| d. dá chéuhng tòuh dihnwá wah<br>kéuih jí   | d. make a long distance call<br>and tell him.   |
| e. dá chéuhng tòuh dihnwá wah<br>kéuih jí jí dāk laak   | e. ought to make a long<br>distance phone call<br>and tell him                              |
| f. yiu dá chéuhng tòuh dihnwá<br>wah kéuih jí jí dāk laak                                     | f. ought to make a long<br>distance phone call and<br>tell him                              |
| g. yiu jíkhāak dá chéuhng tòuh<br>dihnwá wah kéuih jí jí<br>dāk laak.                         | g. ought to make a long<br>distance phone call<br>immediately and tell<br>him.              |
| h. Néih yiu jíkhāak dá chéuhng<br>tòuh dihnwá wah kéuih jí<br>jí dāk laak.                    | h. You ought to make a long<br>distance phone call<br>immediately and tell<br>him.          |

## 2. Response Drill:

Ex: T: Ngóh jingéi heui  
ló. /sihtáuh/

T: I'll go get it myself. /boss/

S: Bātyùh sihtáuh heui  
bá lā.

S: It would be better for the  
boss to go instead.

1. Ngóh séung jòu ga láahngheigēi.  
/máaih/

1. Bātyùh máaih ga bá lā.

2. Ngóh séung máaih gihn sēutsāam.  
/léuhng gihn/

2. Bātyùh máaih léuhng gihn  
bá lā.



- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 3. Ngóh séung sé seun béi kéuih.<br>/dá dihnbou/       | 3. Bātyùh dá dihnbou bá lā.           |
| 4. Ngóh séung wuhn yāt baak mán<br>Mēihgām. /baak ngh/ | 4. Bātyùh wuhn baak ngh mán<br>bá lā. |
| 5. Ngóh séung ngaandī fan gaau.<br>/yihgā/             | 5. Bātyùh yihgā heui fan bá lā.       |
| 6. Ngóh séung tingjiu heui tái<br>yīsāng. /gāmyaht/    | 6. Bātyùh gāmyaht heui bá lā.         |

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih yāt dākhàahn, jauh heui tái hei.<br>The moment he gets some leisure time, he goes to see a movie. <u>or</u><br>As soon as he has some leisure time, he'll go to see a movie. <u>or</u><br>As soon as he had some leisure time, he went to see a movie. | 1. Kéuih yāt dākhàahn, jauh heui tái hei.  |
| 2. /yáuh chin/jài heui ngànhòhng/   | 2. Kéuih yāt yáuh chin, jauh jài heui ngànhòhng.   |
| + 3. /sàudóu seun/wùih/<br>(receive a letter)   | 3. Kéuih yāt sàudóu seun, jauh wùih.   |
| 4. /yáuh síhgaan/tái syù/   | 4. Kéuih yāt yáuh síhgaan, jauh tái syù.   |
| 5. /gau chin/jouh sán sām/  | 5. Kéuih yāt gau chin, jauh jouh sán sām.  |
| + 6. /m̀hjing̀sàhn/tái yīsāng/<br>(not feel well; i.e. feel sick)   | 6. Kéuih yāt m̀hjing̀sàhn, jauh tái yīsāng.<br>The moment he felt sick, he saw a doctor. |
| 7. /tóuhngoh/sihk yéh/  | 7. Kéuih yāt tóuhngoh, jauh sihk yéh.  |
| 8. /génghot/yiu yám bējáu/  | 8. Kéuih yāt génghot, jauh yiu yám bējáu.  |

## 4. Expansion Drill .

Ex: T: M̀ngòì néih tùhng  
ngòh sái gònjehng  
go chyùhfong là.

T: Please clean the kitchen.

S: M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak  
tùhng ngòh sái  
gònjehng go chyùh-  
fóng là.

S: Please clean the kitchen right  
away.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh tongháh<br>tiuh kwàhn là.   | 1. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak tùhng<br>ngòh tongháh tiuh kwàhn<br>là.          |
| + 2. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh <u>sàanjó</u><br>go sàuyāngèi là.<br>( <u>sàan sàuyāngèi</u> =<br><u>turn off the radio</u> )<br>Please turn off the radio. | 2. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak tùhng<br>ngòh sàanjó go sàuyāngèi<br>là.         |
| 3. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh heui<br>máaih dī béng fàanlāih là.<br>Please go out for me and buy<br>some cookies and bring them<br>back.                    | 3. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak tùhng<br>ngòh heui máaih dī béng<br>faanlāih là. |
| 4. M̀ngòì néih heui wánháh kéuih là.  | 4. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak heui<br>wánháh kéuih là.                         |
| 5. M̀ngòì néih yahphei táiháh<br>kéuih jough méyéh là.  | 5. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak yahphei<br>táiháh kéuih jough méyéh<br>là.       |

## 5. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Hóu tihm ji sihk.

T: Only if it's sweet will I eat  
it. or  
I won't eat it unless it's  
sweet.

S: Chèuihfèi hóu tihm,  
ji sihk.

S: Only if it's sweet will I eat  
it. or  
It has to be very sweet be-  
fore I eat it.

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. Hóu ngáahnfan ji fan.    | 1. Chèuihfèi hóu ngáahnfan,<br>ji fan.    |
| 2. Hóu gònjehng ji yiu.     | 2. Chèuihfèi hóu gònjehng,<br>ji yiu.     |
| 3. Hóu génghot ji yám séui. | 3. Chèuihfèi hóu génghot,<br>ji yám séui. |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. Hóu dung ji jeuk lāangsaam.  | 4. Chèuihfèi hóu dung, ji jeuk lāangsaam.  |
| + 5. Hóu yíht ji hòih láahnghei.<br>It has to be very hot before<br>I <u>turn on the air conditioner.</u> | 5. Chèuihfèi hóu yíht, ji hòih láahnghei.  |
| 6. Hóu guih ji fan.   | 6. Chèuihfèi hóu guih, ji fan.             |
| 7. Hóu daaih sèng ji têngdākóu.   | 7. Chèuihfèi hóu daaih sèng, ji têngdākóu. |

## 6. Alteration Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Mhànfu dōu mhjauh.  | T: If you don't tell him, he won't do it.   |
| S: Chèuihfèi fànfu, ji jauh.   | S: Only if you order him will he do it. (i.e. unless you tell him, he won't do it.) |
| 1. Mhahn, dōu mhgóng.  | 1. Chèuihfèi mahn, ji góng.   |
| 2. Mhchéng, dōu mhlàih.  | 2. Chèuihfèi chéng, ji làih.  |
| 3. Mhgiu, dōu mhhéisàn.  | 3. Chèuihfèi giu, ji héisàn.  |
| 4. Mhdá, dōu mhpa.<br>If you don't spank him, he won't take you seriously. | 4. Chèuihfèi dá, ji pa.   |
| 5. Mhgóng, dōu mhjidou.<br>If he hadn't told me, I wouldn't know.          | 5. Chèuihfèi góng, ji jidou.  |
| 6. Mhhohk, dōu mhsík.  | 6. Chèuihfèi hohk, ji sík.  |

## 7. Alteration Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: Yùngwó hóu pèng, ngóh jauh máaih gé.           | T: If it's very cheap, I'll buy it.  |
| S: Chèuihfèi hóu pèng--<br>mhhaih, jauh mh-<br>máaih. | S: It has to be cheap, otherwise I won't buy it. <u>or</u><br>Unless it's cheap, I won't buy it. |
| 1. Yùngwó hóu leng, ngóh jauh júngyi gé.              | 1. Chèuihfèi hóu leng--mhhaih, jauh mhjúngyi.  |
| 2. Yùngwó hóu yih, ngóh jauh hohk gé.                 | 2. Chèuihfèi hóu yih--mhhaih, jauh mhhohk.   |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3. Yùngwó hóu kàhnlihk, ngóh jauh chéng gé. | 3. Chèuihfèi hóu kàhnlihk--mhhaih, jauh mchéng.  |
| 4. Yùngwó hóu chàauh, ngóh jauh tong gé.    | 4. Chèuihfèi hóu chàauh--mhhaih, jauh mhtong.    |
| 5. Yùngwó hóu yeh, ngóh jauh chóh dīksí gé. | 5. Chèuihfèi hóu yeh--mhhaih, jauh mhchóh dīksí. |
| 6. Yùngwó hóu meih, ngóh jauh sihk gé.      | 6. Chèuihfèi hóu meih--mhhaih, jauh mhsihk.      |

## 8. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Mhpèhng, dōu mhmáaih. T: If it's not cheap, I won't buy it.

S: Chèuihfèi hóu pèhng ji máaih. S: Only if it's cheap will I buy it. or It has to be cheap, before I buy it.

- |                            |                                    |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Mhleng, dōu mhjeuk.     | 1. Chèuihfèi hóu leng ji jeuk.     |
| 2. Mhhóu, dōu mhmáaih.     | 2. Chèuihfèi hóu hóu ji máaih.     |
| 3. Mhtóuhngoh, dōu mhsihk. | 3. Chèuihfèi hóu tóuhngoh ji sihk. |
| 4. Mhgònjehng, dōu mhoi.   | 4. Chèuihfèi hóu gònjehng ji oi.   |
| 5. Mhlahttaat, dōu mhwuhn. | 5. Chèuihfèi hóu lahttaat ji wuhn. |
| 6. Mhtihm, dōu mhsihk.     | 6. Chèuihfèi hóu tihm ji sihk.     |

## 9. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Chèuihfèi kéuih jáu sīn lā.<br>He would have to ( <u>or</u> will have to) leave first.<br>(i.e. Unless he leaves, I'm not going to leave. <u>or</u> He'll have to go first, before I move an inch.) | 1. Chèuihfèi kéuih jáu sīn lā.  |
| 2. /sihk/  | 2. Chèuihfèi kéuih sihk sīn lā. |

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 3. /wán/     | 3. Chèuihfèi kéuih wán sìn lā.<br>She'll have to start<br>looking for it first (before I'll help her).                           |
| 4. /mahn/    | 4. Chèuihfèi kéuih mahn sìn lā.  |
| 5. /fànfu/   | 5. Chèuihfèi kéuih fànfu sìn<br>lā.  |
| 6. /héisáu/  | 6. Chèuihfèi kéuih héisáu sìn<br>lā.   |
| 7. /chihdou/ | 7. Chèuihfèi kéuih chihdou sìn<br>lā.<br>He would have to be late<br>for work first (before I<br>have an excuse to fire<br>him.) |

a. Do the above exercise again, the teacher giving the right hand column sentences, and the students in turn expanding the sentences with a related clause, for example:

T: Chèuihfèi kéuih chéng sìn lā.

S: Chèuihfèi kéuih chéng sìn lā, ngóh ji chéng kéuih.  
I'll only invite him if he invites me first.

#### 10. Response Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Chèuihjó Méihgwok,<br>néih juhng heuigwo<br>bīndouh a?<br>/Yahtbún/ | T: In addition to (or aside from)<br>America, where else have you<br>been? /Japan/ |
| S: Chèuihjó Méihgwok,<br>ngóh juhng heuigwo<br>Yahtbún tím.                | S: In addition to (or aside from)<br>America, I've also been to<br>Japan.          |
| 1. Chèuihjó Wòhng Sàang, néih<br>juhng sīk bīngo a?<br>/Wòhng Táai/        | 1. Chèuihjó Wòhng Sàang, ngóh<br>juhng sīk Wòhng Táai tím.                         |
| 2. Chèuihjó jyú faahn, néih juhng<br>sīk jouh méyéh a? /tong sām/          | 2. Chèuihjó jyú faahn, ngóh<br>juhng sīk tong sām tím.                             |
| 3. Chèuihjó Gwóngdùngwá, néih<br>juhng sīk gong méyéh wá a?<br>/Gwokyúh/   | 3. Chèuihjó Gwóngdùngwá, ngóh<br>juhng sīk gong Gwokyúh<br>tím.                    |
| 4. Chèuihjó hùhng sīk, néih juhng<br>jùngyi méyéh sīk a? /luhk/            | 4. Chèuihjó hùhng sīk, ngóh<br>juhng jùngyi luhk sīk<br>tím.                       |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>+ 5. Chèuihjó tihmsyùn yú, néih juhng séung yiu di mēyéh a?<br/>+ /syunlaaht tóng/<br/>(tihmsyùn yú = sweet and sour fish)<br/>(syunlaaht tóng = vinegar-pepper soup)<br/>What else do you want besides sweet and sour fish?</p> | <p>5. Chèuihjó tihmsyùn yú, ngóh juhng séung yiu go syunlaaht tóng tím.</p> |
|---|---|
- 

## 11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Chèuihjó Méingwok, néih juhng heuigwo bīndouh a?

T: In addition to America, where else have you been?

S: Chèuihjó Méingwok, ngóh jauh bīndouh dōu meih heuigwo laak.

S: Except for America, I haven't been anywhere. or I haven't been anywhere except America.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Chèuihjó cháau faahn, néih juhng sihkjó mēyéh a?<br/>2. Chèuihjó chēunglīm, néih juhng máaihjó mēyéh a?<br/>3. Chèuihjó jī bāt, néih juhng wāndou mēyéh a?<br/>4. Chèuihjó tái syù, néih juhng joughjó mēyéh a?<br/>5. Chèuihjó heui kéuih douh, néih juhng yiu heui <u>bīnsyu</u> a?<br/>(<u>bīnsyu</u> = <u>where?</u>)<br/>6. Chèuihjó jyú chāan jīngoih, néih juhng sīk jough mēyéh a?</p> | <p>1. Chèuihjó cháau faahn, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu móuh sihk.<br/>2. Chèuihjó chēunglīm, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu móuh máaih laak.<br/>3. Chèuihjó jī bāt, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu wán mhdou laak.<br/>4. Chèuihjó tái syù, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu móuh jough laak.<br/>5. Chèuihjó heui kéuih douh, ngóh jauh bīnsyu dōu mhheui laak.<br/>6. Chèuihjó jyú chāan jīngoih, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu mhsīk jough ge laak.</p> |
|--|---|

Comment: bīnsyu and bīndouh are used interchangeably. In Hong Kong bīndouh is heard more frequently than bīnsyu.

---

## 12. Substitution Drill:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Chèuihjó yàuhséui jingoih,<br>+ ngòh <u>yeuhngyeuhng dōu</u> jūngyi.<br>Aside from swimming, I like<br><u>everything</u> . <u>or</u><br>With the exception of swim-<br>ming, I like everything. | 1. Chèuihjó yàuhséui jingoih,<br>ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dōu<br>jūngyi.       |
| 2. /laht yéh/  | 2. Chèuihjó laht yéh jingoih,<br>ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dōu<br>jūngyi.       |
| 3. /tái syù/   | 3. Chèuihjó tái syù jingoih,<br>ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dōu<br>jūngyi.        |
| 4. /dá jih/  | 4. Chèuihjó dá jih jingoih,<br>ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dōu<br>jūngyi.         |
| 5. /jyú faahn/   | 5. Chèuihjó jyú faahn jingoih,<br>ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dōu<br>jūngyi.      |
| 6. /Yahtbún choi/  | 6. Chèuihjó Yahtbún choi jin-<br>goih, ngòh yeuhngyeuhng<br>dōu jūngyi. |
| 7. /léuihhàhng/  | 7. Chèuihjó léuihhàhng jingoih,<br>ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dōu<br>jūngyi.     |

## 13. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a. wùih seun  | a. answer a letter  |
| b. wùih seun béi ngòh   | b. answer my letter   |
| c. meih wùih seun béi ngòh  | c. hasn't answered my letter  |
| d. juhng meih wùih seun béi ngòh  | d. still hasn't answered my<br>letter.                                  |
| e. kéuih juhng meih wùih seun<br>béi ngòh   | e. She still hasn't answered<br>my letter.                              |
| f. daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih<br>wùih seun béi ngòh                                   | f. but she still hasn't<br>answered my letter.                          |
| g. ngòh séjó fùng seun béi kéuih,<br>daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih<br>wùih seun béi ngòh | g. I wrote a letter to her, but<br>she still hasn't replied.            |
| h. Ngòh yāt go láihbaai chíhn<br>séjó fùng seun béi kéuih,<br>daahnhaih kéuih juhng   | h. I wrote her a letter a<br>week ago, but she still<br>hasn't replied. |

meih wùih seun béi ngòh.

14. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Ngòh yāt go láihbaai (jī)<br/>chíhn séjò fùng seun béi<br/>kéuih, daahnhaaih kéuih<br/>juhng meih wùih seun béi<br/>ngòh.<br/>I wrote him a letter a week<br/>ago, but he still hasn't<br/>answered.</p> | <p>1. Ngòh yāt go láihbaai (jī)<br/>chíhn séjò fùng seun béi<br/>kéuih, daahnhaaih kéuih<br/>juhng meih wùih seun béi<br/>ngòh.</p>   |
| <p>2. /bun go yuht/</p>  | <p>2. Ngòh bun go yuht jíchíhn<br/>séjò fùng seun béi kéuih,<br/>daahnhaaih kéuih juhng<br/>meih wùih seun béi ngòh.</p>  |
| <p>3. /sei houh/</p>   | <p>3. Ngòh sei houh jíchíhn séjò<br/>fùng seun béi kéuih,<br/>daahnhaaih kéuih juhng<br/>meih wùih seun béi ngòh.<br/>I wrote him a letter<br/>before the 4th of the<br/>month, but he still hasn't<br/>answered.</p>               |
| <p>4. /léuhng go láihbaai/</p>   | <p>4. Ngòh léuhng go láihbaai<br/>jíchíhn séjò fùng seun<br/>béi kéuih, daahnhaaih kéuih<br/>juhng meih wùih seun béi<br/>ngòh.</p>   |
| <p>5. /léuhng go géi láihbaai/</p>   | <p>5. Ngòh léuhng go géi láihbaai<br/>jíchíhn séjò fùng seun<br/>béi kéuih, daahnhaaih kéuih<br/>juhng meih wùih seun béi<br/>ngòh.</p>   |
| <p>6. /léuhng go lèhng láihbaai/<br/>(a little more than two<br/>weeks)</p>  | <p>6. Ngòh léuhng go lèhng láih-<br/>baai jíchíhn séjò fùng<br/>seun béi kéuih, daahnhaaih<br/>kéuih juhng meih wùih seun<br/>béi ngòh.<br/>I wrote him a letter more<br/>than two weeks ago, but<br/>he still hasn't answered.</p> |
| <p>7. /go géi láihbaai/</p>  | <p>7. Ngòh go géi láihbaai jíchíhn<br/>séjò fùng seun béi kéuih,<br/>daahnhaaih kéuih juhng meih<br/>wùih seun béi ngòh.</p>  |



I wrote him a letter more  
than a week ago, but he  
still hasn't answered.

## 15. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh béijó dī chīn kéuih. Kéuih tūhng ngóh jàijó heui ngàhnhòhng. T: I gave him the money. He put it into the bank for me.  
S: Ngóh béijó dī chīn kéuih tūhng ngóh jàiheui ngàhnhòhng. S: The money I gave (him), he put in the bank for me.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih béijó bún syù ngóh. Ngóh tūhng kéuih sómáaih hái gwahtúng.   | 1. Kéuih béijó bún syù ngóh tūhng kéuih sómáaih hái gwahtúng.        |
| 2. Ngóh béijó tūh sósih kéuih. Kéuih tūhng ngóh níngjò heui béi màhmā.  | 2. Ngóh béijó tūh sósih kéuih tūhng ngóh níngheui béi màhmā.         |
| 3. Ngóh béijó fùng gwahouhseun gājē. Gājē tūhng ngóh níngjòheui gei.  | 3. Ngóh béijó fùng gwahouhseun gājē tūhng ngóh níngheui gei.         |
| 4. Ngóh béijó go tòuhjēung sihtáu. Sihtáu tūhng ngóh jàimáaih hái gwahtúng. ( <u>jàimáaih = put in and close up</u> ) | 4. Ngóh béijó go tòuhjēung sihtáu tūhng ngóh jài-máaih hái gwahtúng. |
| 5. Màhmā béijó gāan ūk ngóh. Ngóh tūhng kéuih jòujó béi yahn.   | 5. Màhmā béijó gāan ūk ngóh tūhng kéuih jòu béi yahn.                |
| 6. Ngóh chānchīk béijó ga gauh chē ngóh. Ngóh tūhng kéuih níngjò heui maaih.  | 6. Ngóh chānchīk béijó ga gauh chē ngóh tūhng kéuih níngheui maaih.  |

## 16. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Yáuh chīn, jauh mēyéh dōu máaih dōu. T: When you have money, you can buy anything.  
S: Jíyiu yáuh chīn, jauh mēyéh dōu máaih dāk dōu. S: As long as you have money, you can buy anything.

1. Yáuh síhgaan, jauh bíndouh dōu 1. Jíyiu yáuh síhgaan, jauh

heuidāk.

2. Yáuh wùih seun, jauh géisi  
dōu heuidāk.  
When you get a response,  
you can go any time.

3. Gau yáhn, jauh géi chéuhng dōu  
ningdāk.  
When there are enough people,  
you can move it no matter how  
heavy it is.

4. Yáuhdāk sihk, jauh mēyéh dōu  
dāk.

5. Yáuhdāk jjuh, jauh géichín  
yáhgung dōu dāk.

bīndouh dōu heuidāk.

2. Jíyiu yáuh wùih seun, jauh  
géisi dōu heuidāk.

3. Jíyiu gau yáhn, jauh géi  
chúhng dōu ningdāk.

4. Jíyiu yáuhdāk sihk, jauh  
mēyéh dōu dāk.

5. Jíyiu yáuhdāk jjuh, jauh  
géichín yáhgung dōu dāk.

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher,  
then substitute as directed.

1. Néih sàudóu Léih Táai fùng  
seun meih a?  
Have you received Mrs. Lee's  
letter yet?

2. /sàu mhsàudóu/

3. /juhng meih sàudóu ...mē?/

4. /géisi/

5. /yáuh móuh/

1. Néih sàudóu Léih Táai fùng  
seun meih a?

2. Néih sàu mhsàudóu Léih  
Táai fùng seun a?

3. Néih juhng meih sàudóu Léih  
Táai fùng seun mē?

4. Néih géisi sàudóu Léih Táai  
fùng seun a?

5. Néih yáuh móuh sàudóu Léih  
Táai fùng seun a?

18. Expansion Drill:

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih mēyéh yuhk    T: I eat all meats. /beef/  
dōu sihk ge.  
/ngàuhyuhk/+/

S: Chèuihjó ngàuh-    S: With the exception of beef, he  
yuhk, kéuih mēyéh    eats all meats. or  
yuhk dōu sihk ge.    He eats all kinds of meat  
except beef.

2. T: Kéuih mēyéh yuhk    T: He eats all meats. /beef/  
dōu sihk ge.  
/ngàuhyuhk/-/

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>S: Chèuihjó ngàuh-<br/>yuhk, kéuih mēyéh<br/>yuhk dōu m̄hsikh<br/>ge.</p>     | <p>S: With the exception of beef, he<br/>doesn't eat any meat. <u>or</u><br/>He doesn't eat any meat<br/>except beef.</p> |
| 1. Kéuih mēyéh wá dōu sīk góng.<br>/Gwóngdùngwá/-/                               | 1. Chèuihjó Gwóngdùngwá, kéuih<br>mēyéh wá dōu m̄hsīk góng.   |
| 2. Kéuih mēyéh choi dōu júngyi.<br>/Yahtbun choi/+/                              | 2. Chèuihjó Yahtbún choi, kéuih<br>mēyéh choi dōu júngyi.   |
| 3. Kéuih mēyéh Júnggwok choi dōu<br>sikh. /yúhgyū/+/                             | 3. Chèuihjó yúhgyū, kéuih<br>mēyéh Júnggwok choi dōu<br>sikh.   |
| 4. Kéuih mēyéh dōu yiu máaih.<br>/syutgwaih/-/                                   | 4. Chèuihjó syutgwaih, kéuih<br>mēyéh dōu m̄hsái máaih.   |
| 5. Kéuih mēyéh sīk dōu júngyi.<br>/húhng sīk/+/                                  | 5. Chèuihjó húhng sīk, kéuih<br>mēyéh dōu júngyi.   |
| 6. Kéuih mēyéh jáu dōu júngyi yám.<br>/bējáu/-/<br>He likes all kinds of liquor. | 6. Chèuihjó bējáu, kéuih mēyéh<br>jáu dōu m̄hjúngyi yám.  |

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) fo = goods
- 2) láih? = làih + rising intonation for surprise and doubt.
- 3) n̄ikheui = níngheui
- 4) m̄hchíh bo = Not likely!
- 5) Jàn m̄hfhàahn = What a nuisance!
- 6) A Jyù = servant's name
- 7) Siu Nāai = term of address used by servant in the family  
addressing the housewife. The term basically  
means 'wife of a son of the head of the  
family' but it is not now restricted to that  
meaning.
- 8) louh = road
- 9) hòì wuhháu = open an account

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- A. You say to the person sitting next to you:
1. Could you please tell me how to get to the cablegraph office?
  2. I got a cablegram from my younger sister yesterday.
  3. Oh-oh, I broke the teapot-- what'll I do?
  4. I'll go get it myself.
  5. I think I'll go to bed a little later.
  6. Have you gotten a letter from your girl friend recently?
  7. It's already been two weeks-- she certainly must have received my letter.
  8. Mr. Brown asked us for dinner, but I don't want to go.
  9. Hey, I can't find the key!
  10. Please tell Mrs. Cheung to call me as soon as she gets in.
  11. I have to go to the office as soon as I finish breakfast.
  12. What kinds of alcoholic beverages do you like?
  13. I like all alcoholic beverages except beer.
  14. What procedures are required for getting an ID card?
  15. I'm illiterate--how can I sign my name?!
- B. And he replies:
1. It's just beyond the Mandarin Hotel--do you know where the Mandarin is?
  2. What did she say?
  3. You'd better buy another one.
  4. It'd be better for the boss to go.
  5. You'd better go now, otherwise you'll be tired in the morning.
  6. Yes, I got one the day before yesterday, but I haven't had time to answer it yet.
  7. Unless she's off on a trip.
  8. Unless you go, I'm not going.
  9. It doesn't matter, the door isn't locked.
  10. All right--does she know your phone number?
  11. Do you drive down, or take the bus?
  12. I don't like anything but beer.
  13. You and I are not a bit alike!
  14. I don't know. If you're an American, you'd better go to the American Consulate and ask.
  15. So long as you use a chop, it's OK.

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 28

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. bātyùh .ḗ. bá laak<br>(or ...bá lā) | PhF: it would be preferable to do <u>X</u>                                  |
| 2. bīnsyu?                             | QW: where?  |
| 3. chèuihfèi                           | MA/Cj: unless...; only if   |
| 4. chèuihjó...(jǐ ngoih)               | PhF: aside from...; other than...   |
| 5. chèuhng tòuh dihnwá                 | n: long distance phone call   |
| 6. chǐm méng                           | VO: sign one's name   |
| 7. dá chèuhng touh<br>dihnwá           | VO: make a long distance phone call   |
| 8. dá dihnbou                          | VO: send a telegram   |
| 9. dihnbou                             | n: telegram, cablegram  |
| 10. dihnbougúk or<br>dihnbougukh       | n: telegram office  |
| 11. Díng syun a?                       | Ph: 'How can we handle this?' or 'What'll I do?'<br>or 'What's to be done?' |
| 12. fùng                               | m: for letter, telegram   |
| 13. gei                                | v: to mail, send by mail  |
| 14. gei seun                           | VO: mail a letter, send a letter  |
| 15. gwahouh                            | VO: to register   |
| 16. gwahouhseun                        | n: registered letter  |
| 17. gwaihtúng                          | n: drawer   |
| 18. Haih gám wah lā.                   | Ph: That's the way! [Be (it) as (you) say.]                                 |
| 19. hòì láahnghei                      | VO: turn on the air conditioner   |
| 20. jèung                              | CV: take  |
| 21. jǐngéi                             | NAdjunct: oneself, myself, himself, etc.                                    |
| 22. jǐkhaak                            | adv: immediately, right away  |
| 23. jíyiu..., jauh...                  | PCj: just have to..., then...; as long as you..., then...                   |
| 24. lòh                                | ss: sen. suf. signifying a bid for sympathy                                 |
| 25. -máaih                             | VSuf: together; tight   |
| 26. mǎhfáahn                           | adj/n: trouble  |
| 27. mǎhjǐngsǎhn                        | adj: not feel well  |
| 28. mǎhsǐk jih                         | Ph: illiterate  |
| 29. sǎan sǎuyǎngéi                     | VO: turn off the radio  |

30. sàu	v: receive, collect, take in
31. sàu seun	VO: receive a letter
32. sàujuhk	n: procedure(s)
33. sihtáu	n: employer, boss
34. só	v: lock
35. sòmàaih	V: lock up, lock tight
36. sósih	n: key
37. Syun la(ak)!	Ph: Never mind! <u>or</u> Forget it!
38. syunlaaht tòng	Np: vinegar-pepper soup
39. tihmeyùn yú	Np: sweet and sour fish
40. tòujōung	n: chop, seal
41. wúih seun	VO: answer a letter
42. yāt <u>v<sup>1</sup></u> , jauh <u>v<sup>2</sup></u> la.	PCj: as soon as..., then...
43. yàuhcháai	n: postman
44. yàuhjinggúk	n: post office
45. yàuhjingguhk	n: post office
46. yeuhngyeuhng	mm: everything, every kind of thing

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mr. Ho arrives late for his appointment with Mr. Cheung:)

Hòh Sàang

ziu (Person Verb)

make (someone do something,)

cause (someone to do something)

Jèung Sàang, ziu néih dǎngjǒ gam  
noih, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak.

Mr. Cheung, I feel terrible  
about making you wait for so  
long.

Jèung Sàang

Mǎngányiu.

That's all right.

faatsǎng

happen

ngóh pa faatsǎngjǒ mēyéh sih

I was afraid something had  
happened

Daahnhaiah ngóh jǐ néih hóusíu  
chǐhdou ge, ngóh pa faatsǎngjǒ  
mēyéh sih jē.

But I knew you are very seldom  
late, and I was afraid some-  
thing had happened.

Hòh Sàang

Haih a.

That's right.

johng

bump into

-chǎn

injure, damage, hurt

johngchǎn

bump into and injure

béi

by (introducing the agent  
of an action)

ngóh néuihpáhngyáuh béi chè

my girl was injured by a  
car

johngchǎn

hospital

yíyún

Ngóh néuihpáhngyáuh béi chè johng-  
chǎn, yahpjǒ yíyún a.

My girl was hit by a car and  
went to the hospital.

Jèung Sàang

Haih àh! Géisí a?

Really! When?

Hòh Sàang

fonggùng

leave work, get, off from  
work

tàuhŋIn  
TàuhŋIn ngòhdeih fonggùng góján  
ja.

just a while ago  
Just a while ago as we were  
leaving work.

Jèung Sàang

amáh  
ngàihhím  
Móuh ngàihhím amáh?

eh?! sent. suf., checking  
an assumption  
danger, dangerous  
No danger, eh? (i.e., It wasn't  
serious, was it?)

Hòh Sàang

Móuh!  
chōchō  
chōchō yíhwàih hóu ngàihhím  
Móuh! Chōchō ngòh juhng yíhwàih  
hóu ngàihhím tím.  
sāumēi  
fù yeuhk  
Sāumēi fùjō yeuhk, yísāng jauh wah  
fàandāk ngūkkéi laak.

'Nothing special' a response  
making little of the topic  
discussed.  
at first, at the beginning  
at first thought it quite  
serious  
At first I thought it was quite  
serious.  
in the end, finally  
treat with medicine  
In the end, after getting  
treated with medicine, the  
doctor said she could go home.

Jèung Sàang

Johngchàn bíndouh a?

Where (on the body) was she hit?

Hòh Sàang

geuk  
tyúhn gwāt  
Johngchàn jek geuk, hóuchóih móuh  
tyúhndou gwāt ja.

foot, leg  
break bone  
Her leg was hurt; luckily at  
least the bone wasn't broken.

Jèung Sàang

Hái bíndouh johngchàn ga?

Where (in the city) was she hit?

Hòh Sàang

yúhn  
lêih   X  

far  
(distance) from   X



lèih ngòhdeih séjihlàuh móuhgéiyúhn	not far from our office
Lèih ngòhdeih séjihlàuh móuh- géiyúhn ja.	At a place not far from our office.
<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
gahnjyuh	near
Gahnjyuh Jùnggwok Ngànhòhng gódouh àh?	Near the Bank of China?
<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
jīgāan	between
hái 1 tùhng 2 jīgāan	between 1 and 2
Eh (nodding his head). Jauh hái Jùnggwok Ngànhòhng tùhng Séuhngóhí Ngànhòhng jīgāan	Un-huh (nodding his head). Between the Bank of China and the Shanghai Bank.
lòh.	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>
syun	is considered, can be con- sidered as ..., counted as.
Móuh sih dōu syun hóuchóí laak.	That there was no happening really can be considered lucky (i.e., She can consider herself lucky it wasn't serious.)
<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Ngóh dōu haih gám wah laak.	I think so too.

B. Recapitulation:(Mr. Ho arrives late for his  
appointment with Mr. Cheung:)Hòh SàangJèung Sàang, yiu néih dǎngjǒ  
gam noih, jànhaish mǎhóu yisi  
laak.Mr. Cheung, I feel terrible  
about making you wait for so  
long.Jèung Sàang

Mhngányiu.

That's all right.

Daahnhaish ngóh jǐ néih hóusíu  
chíhdou ge, ngóh pa faatsǎngjǒBut I knew you are very seldom  
late, and I was afraid some-

mēyéh sih jē.		thing had happened.
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Haih a.		That's right.
Ngóh néuihpáhngyáuh béi chē johngchàn, yahpjó yíyún a.		My girl was hit by a car and went to the hospital.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Haih àh! Géisih a?		Really! When?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Tàuhsein ngóhdeih fonggūng góján ja.		Just a while ago as we were leaving work.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Móuh ngáihhím amáh?		It wasn't serious, was it?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Móuh! Chōchō ngóh juhng yíhwàih hóu ngáihhím tím.		At first I thought it was quite serious.
Sāumēi fùjò yeuhk, yīsāng jauh wah fàandāk ūkkéi laak.		In the end, after getting treated with medicine, the doctor said she could go home.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Johngchàn bíndouh a?		Where (on the body) did she get hurt?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Johngchàn jek geuk--hóuchóih móuh tyúhndou gwāt ja.		She got hurt in the leg--fortu- nately the bone wasn't broken.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Hái bíndouh johngchàn ga?		Where (in the city) was she hurt?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Lèih ngóhdeih séjihlàuh móuh- géiyúhn ja.		At a place not far from our office.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Gahnjyuh Jùnggwok Ngànhhòhng gódouh àh?		Near the Bank of China?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Eh (nodding his head). Jauh hái		Un-huh (nodding his head).

Júnggwok Ngáhnòhng túhng  
Seuhngóí Ngáhnòhng jígāan  
lòh.

Between the Bank of China and  
the Shanghai Bank.

Jéung Sàang

Móuh síh dōu syun hóuchóí laak.

It can really be considered  
lucky that it wasn't serious.

Hòh Sàang

Ngóh dōu haih gám wah laak.

I think so too.

II. NOTES

1. S béi agent V sentence.

The agent of a painful action may be expressed in a co-verb phrase: béi + agent, 'by agent,' 'suffer agent' (to V). In such sentences the subject of the sentence is that thing or person receiving the harmful action.

S                      béi agent V

Ex: Go sáilougō béi ch̀ johngch̀n.      The child was struck and injured  
by a car. [The child suffered  
a car to bump into and injure  
him]

a. Similarities to English passive construction.

- 1) As with the English passive, the subject of the béi X sentence is the receiver rather than the doer of the action.
- 2) The béi X phrase is similar to the 'by X' phrase in English identifying the doer of the action.

b. Dissimilarity to English passive construction.

In English there is a compulsory difference in verb form dependent on whether the subject of the sentence is the doer or receiver of the action of the verb (He hits/He is hit). In Cantonese the form of the verb is the same whether the subject is the doer or the receiver of the action. Compare:

S	(béi X) V	(O)	S	V
Ga <u>ch̀</u>		<u>johngch̀n</u> go <u>sáilougō</u> .	The <u>car</u>	<u>struck</u> the child.
Go <u>sáilougō</u>		<u>béi ch̀</u> <u>johngch̀n</u> .	The <u>child</u>	<u>was struck</u> by the car.

(See BC and Drill 3)

2. yiú (person verb) = 'make (someone do something)' 'cause (someone to do something)

Example:

1. Yiu néih jǐng m̀hóu yisí bo. I feel bad about making you fix it.  
(said by guest to hostess who has fixed tea herself in the absence of the cook)
2. Kéuih m̀hwúih yiu ngóh heui ge. He can't make me go.
3. Kéuih móuh yiu ngóh heui. He didn't make me go.
4. Ní dí yún haih m̀hahh yísāng Is the doctor making you take  
yiu neih síhk ga? these pills?

(See BC and Drill 10)

3. amáh (var: āma), sentence suffix.

amáh (or āma) has two different uses.

(1) as an interrogative sentence suffix checking on an assumption: amáh?

Example:

1. Móuh ngàihhím amáh? (It) wasn't serious, was it?
2. Néih m̀hahh dāng ngóh āma? You're not waiting for me,  
are you?
3. Néih luhk díng ji fong gùng It's six o'clock that you  
āma? get off work, isn't it?
4. Néih juhng meih yáuh dihnwá You still don't have a phone  
āma? yet, do you?

The āma? question suffix reflects a question in the mind of the speaker as to whether the idea he has about the situation is right.

Compare:

- Néih luhk díng ji fong gùng àh. You get off at six, don't you.  
(is sure that he does-- the question is merely rhetorical)
- Néih luhk díng ji fong gùng āma? You get off at six, don't you?  
(thinks that he does, but checking to make sure)

(See BC)

(2) as a non-interrogative, adds the connotation 'it's obvious that that's why/where/what/who' in a response sentence: amáh.

- Ex: A. Kéuih dimgáai gányah      How come she's not at work today?  
       mhaan gung a?  
       B. Kéuih yáuh béhng āma.      Because she's sick. (implying  
       nicely, not impatiently, that  
       it's obvious she'd have to be  
       sick not to be at work)

(See Drill 15)

4. háì bīndouh johngchàn a? = where (on the map) did you get hurt?  
johngchàn bīndouh a? = where (on the body) did you get hurt?

In English 'Where did you get hurt?' could elicit the answer: 'On my elbow' or 'In the back yard,' but in Chinese the geographic place an action occurred is expressed in a háì phrase preceding the other verb, and the place on the body is expressed as the object of a VO construction.

Ex: Ngóh háì yàuhjinggúk      I got hit opposite the post office.  
       deuimihn johngchàn.

Ngóh johngchàn go tàuh.      I got hit on the head.

5. háì X tùhng Y jīgāan = between X and Y  
yáuh X dou Y jīgāan = between X and Y

These two phrases pattern with the two different types of Placeword sentences: (1) the S háì PW sentence, and (2) the PW Subject yáuh M-N sentence.

- a. háì X tùhng Y jīgāan operates in the predicate in the S háì Placeword pattern.

Ex: S	P
Sp-M-N or Proper name } Subj	háì      PW
Jùnggwok Ngàhnòhng	háì Máhtàuh tùhng Méingwok Jáudim jīgāan.

The Bank of China is between the Pier and the American Hotel.

(See BC and Drill 11)

- b. yáuh X tühng Y jīgāan operates as the subject in the Placeword S yáuh M-N pattern.

Ex: S

PW-Subject	P
Yauh máhtàuh dou Méihgwok Jáudim jīgāan	yáuh M - N

Yauh máhtàuh dou Méihgwok Jáudim jīgāan | yáuh gāan ngānhòhng.  
Between the Pier and the American Hotel there's a bank.

(See Drill 12)

The PW-Sub yáuh M-N sentence type permits háì X tühng Y jīgāan in Subject position as the PW-Subject.

Ex: Háì X tühng Y jīgāan yáuh Between X and Y there's a bank.  
gāan ngānhòhng.

But the S háì PW sentence type doesn't permit the yáuh X dou Y jīgāan pattern.

6. lèih Placeword = (distance) from Placeword

a. Distance away from a place is expressed:

X lèih Placeword (yáuh) adj of distance/distance measure

- Ex: 1. Jáudim lèih nīdoh (yáuh)      The hotel is far away  
hóu yuhn ga.                              from here.
2. Jáudim lèih nīdoh (yáuh)      The hotel is about 3 miles  
saam mǎi gamseuhgha.                  from here.

(See BC and Drill 4)

b. lèih occupies the position of a co-verb in the sentence, but as the negative and question forms of the sentence attach to the distance portion and not to the lèih portion, we classify lèih as a preposition and not a co-verb.

- Ex: 1. Jáudim lèih nīdoh              The hotel is not far from  
mhhaih gei yuhn jē.                      here.
2. Jáudim lèih nīdoh              Is the hotel far from here?  
yuhn mhyuhn a?

(See Drill 6)

- c. Note that yáuh as an equating verb can be used as the verb of the predicate, or the center of the predicate can be an adjective or a nu-m compound of distance.

(See examples under a. above)

7. káhn and gahn(jyuh), 'near'

a. káhn, 'near'

káhn is an adjective which is used in the predicate. It does not take an object.

Ex: Kéuih ngūkkéi lèih nīdouh [His house from here very near  
hòu kahn jē. merely.]

His house is quite near here.

(See Drill 4)

b. gahn(jyuh), 'near'

gahn(jyuh) is a verb which takes an object. It patterns as a V in a VO construction.

Ex: Kéuih ngūkkéi gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk. His house is near  
the post office.

Kéuih ngūkkéi gahn m̀hgahn yàuhjinggúk a? Is his house near  
the post office?

M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh fēigēicheuhng. Not near-- it's  
near the airport.

(See BC and Drill 5)

## III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih m̄hdāk̄hàahn, sóyih m̄hheuidāk.<br>He was busy, so he couldn't go.  | 1. Kéuih m̄hdāk̄hàahn, sóyih m̄hheuidāk.   |
| + 2. /m̄hsyùfuhk/<br>( <u>not feel well, not feel comfortable.</u> )         | 2. Kéuih m̄hsyùfuhk, sóyih m̄hheuidāk.<br>He didn't feel well, so he didn't go.    |
| + 3. /faatsiù/<br>( <u>have a fever</u> )                                    | 3. Kéuih faatsiù, sóyih m̄hheuidāk.<br>He had a fever, so he couldn't go.          |
| + 4. /s̄eungfùng/<br>( <u>have a cold, catch cold</u> )                      | 4. Kéuih s̄eungfùng, sóyih m̄hheuidāk.<br>He has a cold, so he can't go.           |
| + 5. /tàuhtung/<br>( <u>have a headache</u> )                                | 5. Kéuih tàuhtung, sóyih m̄hheuidāk.<br>She had a headache, so she couldn't go.    |
| + 6. /yáuh behng/<br>( <u>be sick</u> )                                      | 6. Kéuih yáuh behng, sóyih m̄hheuidāk.<br>He's sick, so he can't go.               |
| + 7. /behngjò/<br>( <u>got sick, get sick</u> )                              | 7. Kéuih behngjò, sóyih m̄hheuidāk.<br>He's gotten sick, so he can't go.           |
| + 8. /ditchàn/<br>( <u>fall and hurt yourself, be dropped and get hurt</u> ) | 8. Kéuih ditchàn, sóyih m̄hheuidāk.<br>She fell and hurt herself, so she can't go. |

## 2. Alteration/Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih ditchàn go sailóugō.

T: She dropped the child and hurt him.

S: Hóu s̄ēng a, m̄hóu ditchàn go sailóugō!

S: Be careful, don't drop the child and hurt him!

1. Kéuih jingwaaihjó go láahnghei- 1. Hóu s̄ēng a, m̄hóu jingwaaih



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| gēi.<br>He broke the air conditioner.   | go láahngheigēi.<br>Be careful, don't break<br>the air conditioner! |
| 2. Kéuih chēchàn go néuihyán.<br>He ran over a woman (with his<br>car) and injured her.                     | 2. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu chēchàn<br>go néuihyán!                     |
| + 3. Ga chē johngchàn go <u>néuijái</u> .<br>His car bumped into a <u>girl</u><br>and injured her.          | 3. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu johngchàn<br>go néuijái!                    |
| 4. Kéuih dálaahnjó jek b̀ui.  | 4. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu dálaahn<br>jek b̀ui!                        |
| 5. Kéuih jinglaahntaatjó gihn<br>ch̀euhngsāam.  | 5. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu jinglaahnt-<br>taat gihn ch̀euhngsāam!      |
| + 6. Kéuih <u>tong wòhngjó</u> tiuh baahk<br>fu.<br>She <u>scorched</u> the white pants.<br>[iron-yellowed] | 6. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu tong<br>wòhng tiuh baahk fu!                |
| 7. Kéuih johngwaaihjó go dihnsih.   | 7. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu johngwaaih<br>go dihnsih!                   |

## 3. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Go b̀iu jinglaahnjó.   | T: The watch has been broken.   |
| S: Go b̀iu béi yàhn<br>jinglaahnjó.   | S: Somebody broke the watch.<br>[The watch was broken by<br>someone.] |
| 1. Jèk gāng dálaahnjó.  | 1. Jèk gāng béi yàhn dálaahnjó.                                       |
| 2. Go tòuhjēung jinglaahnjó.  | 2. Go tòuhjēung béi yàhn jing-<br>laahnjó.                            |
| 3. F̀ung gwahouhseun jingsāpjó.   | 3. F̀ung gwahouhseun béi yàhn<br>jingsāpjó.                           |
| 4. Tiuh sósih jingwaaihjó.  | 4. Tiuh sósih béi yàhn jing-<br>waaihjó.                              |
| 5. Go gwaihtung jinglaahnjó.  | 5. Go gwaihtung béi yàhn<br>jinglaahnjó.                              |
| 6. F̀ung dihnbou jingchàauhjó.<br>The cablegram got wrinkled.                       | 6. F̀ung dihnbou béi yàhn jing<br>chàauhjó.                           |
| 7. Go dihnwá ditwaaihjó.<br>The telephone dropped and<br>got out of order.          | 7. Go dihnwá béi yàhn ditwaaih-<br>jó.                                |
| + 8. <u>J̀eun yeuhkséui</u> dálaahnjó.<br>The bottle of [liquid]<br>medicine broke. | 8. <u>J̀eun yeuhkséui</u> béi yàhn<br>dálaahnjó.                      |

(jèun = bottle having a stopper; [M])

(yeuhk'seui = liquid medicine)

+ 9. Jèun yeuhkyún dóuséjǒ.  
The bottle of pills spilled.  
(yeuhkyún =  
medicine in pill form)

9. Jèun yeuhkyún béi yàhn  
dóuséjǒ.

#### 4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Méihgwok Lihngsih-  
gwun lèih nǐdoh  
+ hóu káhn jē.  
/móuh géi yúhn jē/

S: Méihgwok Lihngsih-  
gwun lèih nǐdoh  
móuh géi yúhn jē.

T: The American Consulate is  
quite near here. /not far/

S: The American Consulate is not  
far from here.

1. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh móuh géi yúhn jē.  
/hóu yúhn ga/

1. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh hóu yúhn ga.

2. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh hóu yúhn ga.  
/hóu káhn jē/

2. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh hóu káhn jē.

3. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh hóu káhn jē.  
/dōu géi yúhn ga/

3. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh dōu géi yúhn ga.

4. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh dōu géi yúhn ga.  
/m̀hahh géi yúhn jē/

4. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh m̀hahh géi yúhn jē.

5. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh m̀hahh géi yúhn jē.  
/dōu m̀hsyun hóu káhn ga/

5. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh dōu m̀hsyun hóu  
káhn ga.

6. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh dōu m̀hsyun hóu káhn  
ga. /dōu m̀hsyundāk yúhn gé/

6. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih  
nǐdoh dōu m̀hsyundāk yúhn  
gé.

Comment: Káhn is an adjective. It doesn't take an object:

Gàan ngàhnhòhng hóu káhn jē. = The bank is quite near.

## 5. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih gāan séjhlàuh  
gahn m̀hgahn J̀ung-  
gwok Ngànhhòhng a?  
/yàuhjinggúk/

T: Is your office near the Bank  
of China?

S: M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh  
yàuhjinggúk.

S: No--it's near the post office.

1. Gó gāan jáugā gahn m̀hgahn  
M̀eihgwok Lihngsihwún a?  
/Faatgwok Lihngsihwún/

1. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh Faatgwok  
Lihngsihwún.

2. Kéuih gāan ūk gahn m̀hgahn Gáu-  
l̀uhng yíyún a? /fēigēi-  
chèuhng/

2. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh fēigēi-  
chèuhng.

3. Gó gāan chāansāt gahn m̀hgahn  
J̀unggwok Daaihohk a?  
/Hèunggóng Daaihohk/

3. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh Hèunggóng  
Daaihohk.

4. Gāan jáudim gahn m̀hgahn f̀oi-  
gēichèuhng a? /ngànhhòhng/

4. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh ngànhhòhng.

5. Sàam houh bāsi jaahm gahn m̀hgahn  
ngànhhòhng a? /gungsi/

5. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh gungsi.

6. Dihnbougúk gahn m̀hgahn Wihng  
Ōn Gungsi a? /yàuhjinggúk/

6. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk.

7. Yahtbún Lihngsihwún gahn  
m̀hgahn néih ūkkéi a?  
/Wòhng Sàang ūkkéi/

7. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh Wòhng Sàang  
ukkéi.

Comment: gahn(jyuh) is a transitive verb which takes an object  
(VO):

Kéuih ngūkkéi gahnjyuh  
ngànhhòhng.

His home is near the  
bank.

## 6. Substitution Drill

Ex: 1. T: M̀ahnwàh Jáudim  
l̀eih nídouh  
yáuh géi yúhn  
a? /yúhn m̀hyúhn/

T: How far is Mandarin Hotel  
from here? /is (it) far?/

S: M̀ahnwàh Jáudim  
l̀eih nídouh yúhn  
m̀hyúhn a?

S: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from  
here?

2. T: M̀ahnwàh Jáudim  
l̀eih nídouh  
yúhn m̀hyúhn a?  
/dihnbougúk/

T: Is the Mandarin Hotel far  
from here?

S: Mǎnhwàh Jǎudim S: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from  
lèih dihnbougúk the telegraph office?  
yúhn mhyúhn a?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbougúk yúhn mhyúhn a?<br>/yáuh géidō go gǎaiháuh/             | 1. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbou-<br>gúk yáuh géidō go gǎaiháuh<br>a?    |
| 2. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbougúk yáuh géidō go gǎaiháuh a?<br>/yáuh géidō go chē jaahm/ | 2. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbou-<br>gúk yáuh géidō go chē<br>jaahm a?   |
| 3. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbougúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a?<br>/yáuhjinggúk/            | 3. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih yáuh-<br>jinggúk yáuh géidō go chē<br>jaahm a?  |
| 4. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih yáuhjinggúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a?<br>/Hòuhwàh Heiyún/        | 4. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih Hòuhwàh<br>Heiyún yáuh géidō go chē<br>jaahm a? |
| 5. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdough yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a?<br>/yáuh géi yúhn/              | 5. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdough<br>yáuh géi yúhn a?                      |
| 6. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdough yáuh géi yúhn a? /yúhn mhyúhn/                             | 6. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdough<br>yúhn mhyúhn a?                        |
| 7. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdough yúhn mhyúhn a? /kǎhn mǎhkǎhn/                              | 7. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdough<br>kǎhn mǎhkǎhn a?                       |

## 7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Léuhng mǎn taai  
gwai.

T: Two dollars is too expensive.

S: Léuhng mǎn syun  
mhsyun gwai a?

S: Is two dollars considered  
expensive?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Chāt chek taai gòu.   | 1. Chāt chek syun mhsyun gòu a?            |
| 2. Gwóngdùngwá taai nàahnhoik.   | 2. Gwóngdùngwá syun mhsyun<br>nàahnhoik a? |
| 3. Gáulùhng yíyún hóu daaih.   | 3. Gáulùhng yíyún syun mhsyun<br>daaih a?  |
| 4. Hèunggóng ūkjòu hóu gwai.   | 4. Hèunggóng ūkjòu syun mhsyun<br>gwai a?  |
| + 5. Kéuih ge <u>behng</u> hóu gányiu.<br>His <u>illness</u> is serious. | 5. Kéuih ge behng syun mhsyun<br>gányiu a? |
| 6. Kéuih jyúfáan hóu kǎhnlíh.<br>Her cook is very hard-working.          | 6. Kéuih jyúfáan syun mhsyun<br>kǎhnlíh a? |
| 7. Kéuih ge jáinéui hóu lēk.   | 7. Kéuih ge jáinéui syun<br>mhsyun lēk a?  |

- a. Teacher asks questions and cues students to give affirmative or negative responses, thus:

Neg: X m̄hsyun Adj.

Aff: X béigaau Adj. dī.

or X hóu Adj.

### 8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh chōchō dásyun  
bùn ngūk gé.

T: At first I planned to move  
[house].

S: Ngóh chōchō dásyun  
bùn ngūk gé, sāumēi  
ji kyutdihng m̄hbùn  
ge jē.

S: At first I planned to move,  
but finally I decided not to.

1. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui Tòih-  
wāan gé.

1. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui  
Tòihwāan gé, saumēi ji  
kyutdihng m̄hheui ge jē.

2. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui léuih-  
hāhng gé.

2. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui  
léuihhāhng gé, sāumēi ji  
kyutdihng m̄hheui ge jē.

3. Ngóh chōchō dásyun yahp yīyún  
gé.

3. Ngóh chōchō dásyun yahp  
yīyún gé, saumēi ji  
kyutdihng m̄hyahp ge jē.

4. Ngóh chōchō dásyun wùih seun  
gé.

4. Ngóh chōchō dásyun wùih  
seun gé, sāumēi ji kyut-  
dihng m̄hwùih ge jē.

5. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sómāaih  
mùhn gé.

5. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sómāaih  
mùhn gé, sāumēi ji kyut-  
dihng m̄hsó ge jē.

6. Ngóh chōchō dásyun síhk yeuhk  
gé.

6. Ngóh chōchō dásyun síhk  
yeuhk gé, sāumēi ji kyut-  
dihng m̄hsíhk ge jē.

### 9. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in object position.

1. Néih tàhtung yáuh móuh fàan  
hohk a?  
Having a headache, did you  
go to school?

1. Néih tàhtung yáuh móuh  
fàan hohk a?

2. /tái yī sāng/

2. Néih tàhtung yáuh móuh  
tái yī sāng a?

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 3. /sɪhk yeuhk/ | 3. Néih tàutung yáuh móuh sɪhk yeuhk a? |
| 4. /fàan gùng/  | 4. Néih tàutung yáuh móuh fàan gùng a?  |
| 5. /faat siu/   | 5. Néih tàutung yáuh móuh faat siu a?   |

10. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in subject position.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Yiu néih dǎngjǒ gam noih, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak.<br>I feel terrible to have made you wait so long. | 1. Yiu néih dǎngjǒ gam noih, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak.     |
| 2. /yuhng gamdò chǐn/   | 2. Yiu néih yuhng gamdò chǐn, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak.    |
| 3. /hàahng gam yúhn/  | 3. Yiu néih hàahng gam yúhn, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak.     |
| 4. /wán gam noih/   | 4. Yiu néih wán gam noih, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak.        |
| 5. /gam jóu héisàn/   | 5. Yiu néih gam jóu héisàn, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak.      |
| 6. /gam chǐh fàan ũkkéi/  | 6. Yiu néih gam chǐh fàan ũkkéi, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak. |

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Gó gǎan gūngsǐ gahn-jyuh bǐndouh ga? /ngǎnhòhng/heiyún/  
T: What place is the department store near? /bank/movie theatre/

S: Hái ngǎnhòhng tùhng heiyún jǐgāan jē.  
S: It's between the bank and the movie theatre.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Gó gǎan yàuhjinggúk gahnjyuh bǐndouh ga? /gǎaisih/mahtàuh/ | 1. Hái gǎaisih tùhng máhtàuh jǐgāan jē.      |
| 2. Gó gǎan ngūk gahnjyuh bǐndouh ga? /lǐhngsihwún/chaansat/   | 2. Hái lǐhngsihwún tùhng chaansat jǐgāan jē. |
| 3. Gó gǎan jáudim gahnjyuh bǐndouh ga? /fēigeichèuhng/jáugā/  | 3. Hái fēigeichèuhng tùhng jáugā jǐgāan jē.  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>4. Méihgwok Jáudim gahnjyuh bīn-douh ga? /Méihgwok Líhng-singwún/Júnggwok Ngànhòhng/</p> <p>5. Mǎnhwàh Jáudim gahnjyuh bīn-douh ga? /Tǐnsing Mǎhtàuh/Seuhnghóih Ngànhòhng/</p> | <p>4. Hái Méihgwok Líhngsingwún tǔhng Júnggwok Ngànhòhng jīgāan jē.</p> <p>5. Hái Tǐnsing Mǎhtàuh tǔhng Seuhnghóih Ngànhòhng jīgāan jē.</p> |
|---|---|

12. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in object position.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>+ 1. <u>Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jī-gaan</u>, yáuh móuh bāsí jaahm a?<br/>From the ferry [pier] to the movie house is there a bus stop between?<br/>(yáuh X dou X jīgāan = between X and X)</p> <p>2. /gāaisíh/</p> <p>3. /jáugā/</p> <p>4. /ngànhòhng/</p> <p>5. /yíyún/</p> <p>6. /chē jaahm/</p> | <p>1. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan, yáuh móuh bāsí jaahm a?</p> <p>2. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh gāaisíh a?</p> <p>3. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh jaugā a?</p> <p>4. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh ngànhòhng a?</p> <p>5. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh yíyún a?</p> <p>6. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jīgāan yáuh móuh chē jaahm a?</p> |
|---|---|

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néih wán ngóh jouh māt a?

T: What are you looking for me about? (i.e., You're looking for me--here I am--what is it that you want?)

S: Tàuhshín néih wán ngóh jouh māt a?

S: What were you looking for me about a little while ago?

1. Haih mǎhshíh néih wán ngóh làih a?  
Were you looking for me?

1. Tàuhshín haih mǎhshíh néih wán ngóh làih a?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. Bīngō dá dihñwá làih a?<br>Who phoned? <u>or</u><br>Who's on the phone?<br>[dálàih = <u>call in</u> ]   | 2. Tàuhśin bīngō dá dihñwá<br>làih a?                    |
| + 3. Néih wah tàuh tung, yīngā hóu-<br>fàan meih a?<br>( <u>return to good health,</u><br><u>get well</u> )<br>You said you had a headache,<br>are you back to normal now? | 3. Tàuhśin néih wah tàuh tung,<br>yīngā hóufàan meih a?  |
| 4. Néih wah faatsiú, yīngā hóu-<br>fàan meih a?  | 4. Tàuhśin néih wah faatsiú,<br>yīngā hóufàan meih a?    |
| 5. Néih wah behngjǒ, yīngā hóu-<br>fàan meih a?  | 5. Tàuhśin néih wah behngjǒ,<br>yīngā hóufàan meih a?    |
| 6. Néih wah yáuh behng, yīngā<br>hóufàan meih a?   | 6. Tàuhśin néih wah yáuh behng,<br>yīngā hóufàan meih a? |

## 14. Conversation Drill

- Ex: 1. A: Heui Hòuhwàh Hei-  
yún yúhn m̄h-  
yúhn a? /shake/  
B: M̄hyúhn-- hóu  
kahn jē.
- A: Gahn(jyuh) bīn-  
doh a?  
/Hòuhwàh Jáugā/  
B: Gahnjyuh Hòuhwàh  
Jáugā jē.
2. A: Heui Méihgwok Jáu-  
dim yúhn m̄hyúhn  
a? /nod/  
B: Hóu yúhn gal
- A: Gahn(jyuh) bīn-  
doh a?  
/Méihgwok Lihng-  
sihwún/  
B: Gahnjyuh Méihgwok  
Lihngsihwún.
1. A. ....yàuhjinggúk.....?  
/shake/
- A: Is the Hoover Theatre far?  
B: Not far--it's quite near.
- A: What's it near? /Hoover Rest-  
aurant/  
B: It's near the Hoover Restaurant.
- A: Is the Hilton Hotel far?  
B: Quite far.
- A: What's it near?  
/American Consulate/  
B: It's near the American Con-  
sulate.
1. A. Heui yàuhjinggúk yúhn  
m̄hyúhn a?



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| B. ....                                   | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē.                      |
| A. ....?                                  | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?                     |
| B. ....Tīnsīng Máhtàuh.....               | B. Gahnjyuh Tīnsīng Máhtàuh jē.              |
| 2. A. ....Gáulùhng Yīyún....? /nod/       | 2. A. Heui Gáulùhng Yīyún yúhn-mhyúhn a?     |
| B. ....                                   | B. Hóu yúhn ga!                              |
| A. ....?                                  | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?                     |
| B. ....fēigēichèuhng.....                 | B. Gahnjyuh fēigēichèuhng.                   |
| 3. A. ....Hèunggóng Daaihohk....? /shake/ | 3. A. Heui Hèunggóng Daaihohk yúhn mhyúhn a? |
| B. ....                                   | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē.                      |
| A. ....?                                  | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?                     |
| B. ....sàam houh bāsī jaahm....           | B. Gahnjyuh sàam houh bāsī jaahm jē.         |
| 4. A. ....dihnbougúk....? /shake/         | 4. A. Heui dihnbougúk yúhn mhyúhn a?         |
| B. ....                                   | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē.                      |
| A. ....?                                  | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?                     |
| B. ....yàuhjinggúk.....                   | B. Gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk jē.                  |
| 5. A. ....Wihng Ōn Gūngsī.....? /shake/   | 5. A. Heui Wihng Ōn Gūngsī yúhn mhyúhn a?    |
| B. ....                                   | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē.                      |
| A. ....?                                  | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?                     |
| B. ....Wihng Ōn Ngànhòhng....             | B. Gahnjyuh Wihng Ōn Ngànhòhng jē.           |
| 6. A. ....Màhnwàh Jáudim .....? /shake/   | 6. A. Heui Màhnwàh Jáudim yúhn mhyúhn a?     |
| B. ....                                   | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē.                      |
| A. ....?                                  | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a?                     |
| B. ....Tīnsīng Máhtàuh .....              | B. Gahnjyuh Tīnsīng Máhtàuh jē.              |

## 15. Question and Answer Drill

Ex: T: Yànwaih sēungfùng,  
kéuih m̀hlàihdāk.

T: She has a cold, so she can't  
come.

S1: Dìnggái kéuih m̀h-  
laih a?

S1: Why isn't she coming?

† S2: Kéuih sēungfùng ā  
ma. (or: a m̀áh)

S2: It's because she has a cold,  
that's why.

ā ma or a m̀áh =

'that's why' in a response sentence which gives explanation of why something occurred ā ma adds the connotation (cheerfully without impatience) that the whole thing is pretty obvious.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Yànwaih lohkyúh, kéuih m̀hheui<br>yáuhséui laak.        | 1. A. Dìnggái kéuih m̀hheui<br>yáuhséui a?<br>B. Lohkyúh ā ma.                    |
| 2. Yànwaih yáuh behng, kéuih m̀h-<br>fàandāk gung.         | 2. A. Dìnggái kéuih m̀hfàan<br>gung a?<br>B. Kéuih yáuh behng ā ma.               |
| 3. Yànwaih móuh chin, kéuih<br>m̀htáidāk yīsang.           | 3. A. Dìnggái kéuih m̀htái yī-<br>sang a?<br>B. Kéuih móuh chin ā ma.             |
| 4. Yànwaih m̀hsík chim méng, kéuih<br>yiu yuhng tòuhjéung. | 4. A. Dìnggái kéuih yuhng tòuh-<br>jéung a?<br>B. Kéuih m̀hsík chim méng ā<br>ma. |
| 5. Gwai gwotàuh sóyih m̀hséung<br>máaih.                   | 5. A. Dìnggái m̀hséung máaih<br>a?<br>B. Gwai gwotàuh ā ma.                       |
| 6. Ga chē waaihjó, sóyih yiu<br>hàahng louh.               | 6. A. Dìnggái yiu hàahng louh<br>a?<br>B. Ga chē waaihjó ā ma.                    |
| 7. M̀hgau síngaan, sóyih yiu choh<br>diksi.                | 7. A. Dìnggái yiu choh diksi<br>a?<br>B. M̀hgau síngaan ā ma.                     |

## 16. Expansion-Translation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih behngjǎo géi T: He's been sick for a few days.  
yaht. /already /already well/  
well/

S: Kéuih behngjǎo géi S: He has been sick for a few days,  
yaht, yíhging but he's OK now.  
hóufáansaai laak.

2. T: Kéuih behngjǎo géi T: He's been sick for a few days.  
yaht. /not yet/ /not yet/

S: Kéuih behngjǎo géi S: He's been sick for a few days  
yaht, juhng meih and is still sick.  
hóufaan.

3. T: Kéuih behngjǎo géi T: He's been sick for a few days.  
yaht. /well /well yet?/  
yet?/

S: Kéuih behngjǎo géi S: He's been sick a few days--  
yaht, yíhga is he well yet?  
houfaan meih a?

1. Néih tàuh tungjǎo sèhng go láih-  
baai. /already well/

2. Ngóh faatsiujǎo léuhng sàam  
yaht. /not yet/

3. Kéuih m̄hsyùfuhkjǎo géi yaht.  
/well yet?/

4. Kéuih taaitáai sēungfǔngjǎo  
sèhng go láihbaai.  
/well yet?/

5. Kéuih go jái behngjǎo sèhng bun  
go yuht. /not yet/

6. Kéuih sihtáui m̄hjǐngsǎhnjǎo  
sèhng yaht. /already well/

7. Ngóh agō sihkjǎo sèhng go  
láihbaai yeuhk. /not yet/

1. Néih tàuh tungjǎo sèhng go  
láihbaai, yíhging hóufaan-  
saai laak.

2. Ngóh faatsiujǎo léuhng sàam  
yaht, juhng meih hóufaan.

3. Kéuih m̄hsyùfuhkjǎo géi yaht,  
yíhga hóufaan meih a?

4. Kéuih taaitáai sēungfǔngjǎo  
sèhng go láihbaai, yíhga  
hóufaan meih a?

5. Kéuih go jái behngjǎo sèhng  
bun go yuht, juhng meih  
hóufaan.

6. Kéuih sihtáui m̄hjǐngsǎhnjǎo  
sèhng yaht, yíhging hou-  
fáansaai laak.

7. Ngóh agō sihkjǎo sèhng go  
láihbaai yeuhk, juhng  
meih hóufaan.

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) chíhn géi yaht = a few days ago
- 2) tàuh = head
- 3) johngmàaih = hit
- 4) tung = hurt
- 5) yeuhk = medicine  
hòì dī yeuhk = write a prescription
- 6) nāp = pill, M for pill, grain of rice, grain of sand, etc.
- 7) Hóu wah. = 'You're welcome'
- 8) Taaijī Douh = Prince Road
- 9) Wòdálóuh Douh = Waterloo Road
- 10) jī ma = that's all
- 11) Yáuh sām. = It's kind of you to inquire
- 12) dahn = steam (a method of cooking)
- 13) tái dōu mhtái néih = won't even come see you
- 14) Yáuh sām. = It's kind of you to inquire.
- 15) daih yaht = the next day
- 16) mhhaih jauh làihjò nīdoh lō! = Wasn't it that I came here!  
i.e., Didn't I just wind  
up here! (exasperated)
- 17) douh = degree (of temperature)
- 18) chēut yún = get out of the hospital
- 19) Síu yisi jē. = It's just a little something. Polite response  
to thanks for a gift.
- 20) wánmàaih = get together with

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting  
next to you:

1. Is the American Consulate  
far from here?
2. Where is the telegraph office?

B. And he replies:

1. It's very near. (pointing:)  
There! it's there.
2. I'm not sure (m̀hch̀ingch̀o)--  
maybe it's near the post  
office.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. Where is the post office?   | 3. It's in the Central District, midway between the Bank of China and the Central Market. |
| 4. Is there a restaurant between here and the Star Ferry pier?         | 4. Yes, plenty of them. What kind of food do you want to eat?                             |
| 5. Why didn't Miss Chan come today?                                    | 5. Because she has a cold.  |
| 6. What's the matter? Do you have a headache?                          | 6. I think I have a fever.  |
| 7. He didn't come to work today because he wasn't feeling well.        | 7. O, so that's why--I thought he had gone on a trip.                                     |
| 8. I hear one of the students has been sick for several days.          | 8. Yes, there was one who was sick for a few days, but he's already well.                 |
| 9. I'm feeling very well.  | 9. What? Didn't you tell me just a little while ago that you were very headache-y?        |
| 10. When you have a headache, do to take a pill? (sihk)                | 10. Sometimes I do and sometimes not.   |
| 11. When Miss Ma first studied Cantonese she spoke very haltingly.     | 11. Yes, but at the end she spoke very fluently.  |
| 12. Did you hear that Mr. Cheung was hit by a car?                     | 12. Is that so? Did he go into the hospital?  |
| 13. This watch sells for US\$50.-- would that be considered expensive? | 13. \$50 perhaps wouldn't be considered expensive.  |
| 14. I hear you're planning to move.                                    | 14. At first we planned to move, but finally we decided not to.                           |
| 15. Would you please say that last sentence again.                     | 15. I said "Speak louder."  |

---

 Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 29

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. <u>āma?</u> (or <u>amáh?</u> ) | ss: 'Isn't that right?' sen. quest. suf. with the force of checking an assumption |
| 2. <u>āma.</u> (or <u>amáh.</u> ) | ss: that (obvious reason) is why.   |
| 3. <u>behng</u>                   | n: illness  |

4. behngjǒ	VP: got sick
5. béi	CoV: introduces the agent of an action, 'by _____'
6. -chàn	VSuf: verb suf. injure, hurt, damage
7. chōchō	MA: at first, in the beginning
8. dītchàn	v: fall and hurt yourself; be dropped and get hurt
9. faatsāng	v: happen
10. faatsiù	VO: have a fever
11. fonggùng	VO: leave work, get off from work
12. fù yeuhk	VO: treat with medicine
13. gahn(jyuh) <u>PW</u>	v: near (followed by a placeword)
14. geuk	n: leg, foot
15. gwāt	n: bone
16. hái <u>X</u> tùhng <u>Y</u> jīgāan	PhF: between <u>X</u> and <u>Y</u>
17. hóufàan	v: get well, return to good health
18. jèun [gò]	N/M: bottle
19. jīgāan	BF: between
20. johng	v: bump into
21. johngchàn	v: injure by bumping [bump-injure]
22. káhn	adj: near
23. lèih <u>X</u>	Prep: (distance) from <u>X</u>
24. ìhshyùfuhk	adj: not feel well; i.e., feel sick
25. Móuh!	Ph: 'Nothing special.' A response making light of topic discussed.
26. néuihjái	n: girl, young woman
27. ngàihhím	Aj: dangerous; danger
28. sāmōi	MA: finally, in the end
29. sēungfùng	VO: have a cold, catch a cold
30. syun	v: is considered; can be considered...; counted as....
31. tàuhshīn	MA: just a while ago
32. tàuh tung	v/n: have a headache
33. tong wòhngjǒ	VP: scorched [iron-yellowed]
34. tyúhn	v: break (of bones and sticklike objects)
35. yáuh behng	VO: be sick
36. yàuh <u>X</u> dou <u>Y</u> jīgāan	PhF: between <u>X</u> and <u>Y</u>

37. yeuhk n: medicine  
38. yeuhkséui n: [liquid] medicine  
39. yeuhkyún n: pills  
40. yīyún n: hospital  
41. yiu v: make, cause (someone to do something)  
42. yúhn adj: far
-

## I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Younger brother and elder sister  
discuss an approaching typhoon)

Sailóu

fùng  
yuht làih yuht Adj  
yuht làih yuht daaih  
Wah, dī fùng yuht làih yuht  
daaih tīm!  
Dīm chēut gāai a?

wind  
getting more and more Adj  
getting bigger and bigger  
Wow--the wind is getting stronger  
all the time!  
How can I go out?

Gājē

fùngkàuh  
sàam houh fùngkàuh  
gwa sàam houh fùngkàuh  
Yihging gwajó sàam houh fùngkàuh  
ge lo bo--

typhoon signal  
typhoon signal #3  
hang up the #3 typhoon signal  
They've already put up the Number  
3 typhoon signal, for heaven's  
sake--(protesting good  
naturedly that her younger  
brother shouldn't go out under  
such circumstances.

Néih juhng séung chēut gāai àh!  
-yihseuhng

You still plan to go out?  
above ... more than ...

(follows a number ex-  
pression)

ngh houh yihseuhng

above the number five  
(signal). higher than the  
number 5 (signal)

jyun fùngkàuh  
Yùngwó yāt jyun ngh houh yihseuhng,  
waahkjé jauh móuh chē móuh syùhn  
ge laak.

change the typhoon signal  
If it ~~once~~ goes higher than  
Number 5, then maybe there  
won't be any buses or ferries.

Sailóu

Haih a.  
ginmihh  
hái máhtàuh ginmihh

That's right.  
meet  
meet at the ferry [pier]



yeuk		make an appointment
yeukhóu		agree on the time and/or place for an appointment
ji		between
léuhng díng yāt gogwāt ji		between 2:15 and 2:30
léuhng díng bun		
Daahnhaih ngóh tühng Jèung Siujé		But I made an appointment to
yeukhóu léuhngdíng yāt go gwāt		meet Miss Cheung at the ferry
ji léuhng díng bun hái mántàuh		between 2:15 and 2:30
ginmihn.		
	<u>Gājē</u>	
Yihgā géi díng a?		What time is it now?
	<u>Sailóu</u>	
jāangdí		almost, lacks a little (precedes number phrase)
Jāangdí léuhng díng la.		It's almost 2 o'clock.
	<u>Gājē</u>	
gói		change, alter
daihyaht		another day, another time
gói daihyaht		change it to another day
Néih dínggāai mhdá dihnwá bēi		Why don't you phone her and
kéuih, giu kéuih góí daihyaht		tell her to change it to
nē?		another day?
	<u>Sailóu</u>	
hósík		unfortunately; it is un- fortunate (+ sentence)
Hósík kéuih ngúkkéi móuh		Unfortunately her house doesn't
dihnwá--		have a phone--
tūngjí		communicate with
móuh baahnfaat		'There's no way;' 'Can't do anything about it'
Móuh baahnfaat tūngjí kéuih.		There's no way to communicate with her.
	<u>Gājē</u>	
dáfùng		have a typhoon [hit-wind]

yíngā dágán fùng	there's a typhoon going on now
gú	guess, conjecture, hazard a guess
ngóh gú kéuih m̀hchēutlāih daaihkóí or daaihkoí	I bet she won't come out probably
Yíngā dágán fùng, ngóh gú Jèung Siujé daaihkóí dōu m̀hchēutlāih ge laak.	There's a typhoon going on now and I bet Miss Cheung probably won't even come out.

(The phone rings:)

Sailóu

A, daaihkóí haih kéuih dālāih laak.	Oh, that's probably her calling now.
--	---

Gājē

Gám juhng hóu la--néih jauh m̀hsái chēutheui lā. yík yáuh yík	That's good--then you won't have to go out. benefit, profit beneficial, good for you, profitable towards
deui, deuiyù Gám ge tinhei chēutheui deui néih móuh yík ga.	Going out in such weather isn't good for you.

B. Recapitulation:(Younger brother and elder sister  
discuss an approaching typhoon)Sailóu

Wah, dí fùng yuht làih yuht daaih tím! Dím chēut gāai a?	Wow--the wind is getting stronger all the time! How can I go out?
--	---

Gājē

Yíngíng gwajó sàam houh fùngkàuh ge lo bo--	They've already put up the Number 3 typhoon signal-- (as if to suggest that her younger brother shouldn't go out)
--	---

Néih juhng séung chēut gāai  
àh?

You still plan to go out?

Yùhgwó yāt jyun ngh houh  
yihseuhng, waahkjé jauh  
móuh chè móuh syùhn ge laak.

If it once goes higher than  
Number 5, then maybe there  
won't be any buses or ferries.

Sailóu

Haih a.  
Daahnhaih ngóh tùhng Jèung  
Síujé yeukhóu léuhng dím yāt  
go gwāt ji léuhng dím bun  
hái máhtàuh ginmihn.

That's right.

But I made an appointment to  
meet Miss Cheung at the ferry  
between 2:15 and 2:30.

Gājē

Yíngā géi dím a?

What time is it now?

Sailóu

Jāangdí léuhng dím la.

It's almost 2 o'clock.

Gājē

Néih dím gāai mhdá dihnwá béi  
kéuih, giu kéuih góí daihyaht  
nē?

Why don't you phone her and tell  
her to change it to another  
day?

Sailóu

Hósiik kéuih ūkkéi móuh dihnwá--

Unfortunately her house doesn't  
have a phone.

Móuh baahnfaat tūngjí kéuih.

There's no way to communicate  
with her.

Gājē

Yíngā dágán fùng, ngóh gú Jèung  
Síujé daaihkóí dōu mchēut-  
làih ge laak.

Since there's a typhoon going  
on now, I bet Miss Cheung  
probably won't even go out.

(The phone rings:)

Sailóu

A, daaihkóí haih kéuih dālàih  
laak.

Oh, that's probably her calling  
now.

Gājē

Gám juhng hóu lā--néih jauh  
mhsái chēutheui la.

That's good--then you won't  
have to go out.

Gám ge tìnhei chēutheui deui  
néih móuh yík ga.

Going out in such weather  
isn't good for you.

## II. NOTES

1. yuht.....yuht..... = more and more

There are several patterns formed with the double yuht:

a. yuht làih yuht Adjective = 'getting more and more Adjective'

- Ex: 1. Dī fùng yuht làih yuht daaih tì! The wind is getting bigger and bigger! (i.e., stronger and stronger)
2. Kéuih yuht làih yuht lēk. He's getting smarter all the time.
3. Kéuih sé jih yuht lain yuht lēk. His writing is better and better all the time.

(See BC and Drill 1)

b. yuht Verb yuht Adjective = the more (or the longer) he Verbs, the more Adjective it becomes.

- Ex: Kéuih yuht góng yuht làuhleih. The more (or the longer) he talks the more fluent he gets.

(See Drill 2)

c. yuht Adjective<sup>1</sup> yuht Adjective<sup>2</sup> = the more (or the longer) Adjective<sup>1</sup> the more Adjective<sup>2</sup>.

- Ex: Yuht faai yuht hóu. The sooner (or the quicker) the better.

2. yeuk, 'request an appointment,' 'make an appointment'

yeuk is a performance verb, basically meaning 'to request an appointment.'

- Ex: Ngóh séung yeuk go sihgaan. I want to make an appointment [ask for a time]. (said in making doctor's appointment)

yeuk enters into performance-achievement compounds with -hóu, 'satisfactory,' forming yeukhóu, 'ask for and get, i.e., set, an appointment.'

- Ex: Ngóh tùhng kéuih yeukhóu hái mahtauh ginmihn. I arranged with her to meet at the pier.

(See BC)

3. deui + Obj Adj = towards } 'Obj is Adj'; i.e., 'is Adj towards Obj.'  
 about }  
 for }  
 with }

deui + Obj is a prepositional phrase which comes before the adjective it forms a larger phrase with. In English equivalent sentences, the prepositional phrase follows the adjective: 'good for Obj,' 'harmful to Obj,' 'satisfied with Obj,' 'clear about Obj, etc.'

S	P	S	P
Ex: S	deui + Obj Adj.	S	is Adj prep + Obj
Yàuhséui	deui néih hóu yáuh yīk ga.	Swimming	is good for you.

(See BC and Drill 7)

The deui Obj pattern is a device for placing the object of the adjective before the adjective in the sentence. With some adjectives the object can either follow the adjective directly or precede it in a deui phrase. An example is:

S	P	
S	(deui + Obj Adj (Obj))	
1. Kéuih	m̀h̀ch̀ing̀ch̀ó nī gih̄n sih bo.	} He's not clear about this matter.
or	2. Kéuih deui nī gih̄n sih m̀h̀ch̀ing̀ch̀ó bo.	

With other adjectives the deui device is compulsory-- there is no other way to phrase the sentence. Examples are:

1. Gám̄yaht chēut̄heui deui      Going out today is not good  
 neih móuh̄yik ga.                      for you.
2. Néih deui kéuih m̀h̀h̀óu ge.      You're not nice to him.

The deui + Object phrase occupies the same pre-verbal sentence position as the Co-verb + Obj phrase, but deui as a preposition differs from co-verbs in not taking a negative prefix.

Compare a negative co-verb sentence with a negative deui sentence:

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Kéuih m̀ht̀uh̄ng ngóh heui.  | He's not going with me. |
| Kéuih deui ngóh m̀h̀h̀óu ga. | He's not nice to me.    |

4. lìhn: as preposition = 'including \_\_\_;' 'and \_\_\_;' 'even \_\_\_'

lìhn: as Verb = 'to include'

lìhn is a word that belongs to more than one grammatical category.

It is primarily a preposition, but also is used as a verb.

a. lìhn as a preposition

1) lìhn(màaih) = 'including'

lìhn(màaih) + Obj, preceding the body of a sentence = 'including Obj.'

Ex: Lìhn(màaih) kéuih, ngóhdeih      Including her, there are  
yáuh sah p go yáhn.                      10 of us.

(See Drill 4.4.b)

2) lìhn(màaih) = 'and'

In another pattern, lìhn(màaih) joins two nouns in subject position with the meaning 'and.'

Ex: Dī syū lìhn bāt hahmbahlaahng      The books and pencils  
yiu yahgei man.                              together cost twenty-some  
dollars.

(See Drill 4.4)

3) lìhn = 'even'

lìhn can be translated as 'even' in negative sentences of the pattern:

Lìhn X (Subj)  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{dōu}(\text{m̀h}) \\ \text{m̀ouh} \\ \text{meih} \end{array} \right\} V = \text{'even X (Subj) } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{won't} \\ \text{can't} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\} \text{do.}$

This pattern is a rearrangement of the SVO order of a negative sentence for emphasis:

$S \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{m̀h} \\ \text{m̀ouh} \\ \text{meih} \end{array} \right\} VO \longrightarrow \text{Lìhn O, (S) dou} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{m̀h} \\ \text{m̀ouh} \\ \text{meih} \end{array} \right\} V.$

Examples below give first the normal SVO sentence, then the rearranged sentence order of the lìhn X dōu m̀hV pattern:

1. Ngóh m̀ouh chín tái  
yīsāng.

I don't have any money to  
see a doctor.

Lìhn tái yīsāng ngóh  
dōu m̀ouh chín.

[Even see doctor I don't have  
money.] i.e.,  
I don't even have money to see  
the doctor. (I'm that hard up)

(See Drill 11)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2. Ngóh m̀h̀s̀ik g̀ong ỳat<br>geui Ỳingm̀ahn.         | I can't speak one sentence<br>of English.      |
| L̀ih̀n ỳat geui Ỳingm̀ahn<br>ngóh d̀ou m̀h̀s̀ik gong. | I can't speak even one<br>sentence of English. |

(See Drill 11)b. l̀ih̀n as a verb.l̀ih̀n = 'include'

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| Ex: a. L̀ih̀nm̀hl̀ih̀n(m̀aaih) t̀ips̀i a? | Does that include the tip? |
| b. L̀ih̀nm̀aaih ge la. }                  | Yes, it does.              |
| <u>or</u><br>L̀ih̀n a. }                  |                            |
| c. M̀hl̀ih̀n.                             | No, it doesn't.            |

5. ge lo bo = sen.suf ge/ga 'that's the way it is' + sen.suf lo bo

for good-natured protest.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Ex: 1. Ỳing̀ing gwajó s̀aam houh<br>fungkauh ge lo bo! | They've already raised the #3 typhoon<br>signal. (response to addressee's<br>announcement that he's going out<br>into the typhoon. Implication is:<br>They've already put up the signal,<br>that's a fact; and you shouldn't<br>do as you intend) |
| 2. Ngóh s̀ihkjó yeuhk ge<br>lo bo.                      | I took my medicine-- (implies nicely:<br>quit bugging me about it)  |
| 3. Sáh dím ge lo bo!                                    | Ten o'clock! (you told me you were<br>going out at ten-- you'd better get<br>going instead of sitting there)  |

(See BC and Drill 12)6. ...jē, ..d̀ou... 'Even though...., still....'  
'Since only....., still....'

This is a double clause pattern, with the first clause a subordinate clause of concession and the second the principal clause. The jē indicates that the concession is thought to be a small one.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ex: Néih góí léuhng dím bun jē,<br>ngóh d̀ou haihgónmhchit<br>ge bo. | Since you're only changing it to 2:30,<br>I still can't make it. <u>or</u> If you<br>only changed it to 2:30, I still<br>couldn't make it. |
|--|--|

(See Drill 14)

## III. DRILLS

## 1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih hóu láahn.

T: He's lazy.

S: Kéuih yuht làih  
yuht láahn.

S: He's getting lazier and lazier  
all the time. i.e., He's  
getting increasingly lazy.

1. Kéuih hóu kàhnlihk.  
He's very hard-working.

1. Kéuih yuht làih yuht kàhn-  
lihk.  
He works harder and harder  
everyday.

2. Tinhei hóu yiht.

2. Tinhei yuht làih yuht yiht.

3. Ūkjòu hóu gwai.

3. Ūkjòu yuht làih yuht gwai.

4. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá hóu  
lèk.

4. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá yuht  
làih yuht lek.

5. Kéuih hóu yáuhchín.

5. Kéuih yuht làih yuht yáuh-  
chín.

6. Kéuih hóu pa.

6. Kéuih yuht làih yuht pa.

## 2. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Yuht góng yuht faai.  
/làuhleih/

T: The more he talks the faster  
it gets. /fluent/

S: Yuht góng yuht  
làuhleih.

S: The more he talks, the more  
fluent it gets.

1. Yuht chòh yuht dung. /guih/

1. Yuht chòh yuht guih.

2. Yuht sihk yuht hóu meih.  
/tóuhngoh/  
The more you eat the better  
it tastes.

2. Yuht sihk yuht tóuhngoh.

3. Yuht hohk yuht maahn.  
/leuhnjeuhn/

3. Yuht hohk yuht leuhnjeuhn.

4. Yuht góng yuht daaihsèng.  
/làuhleih/

4. Yuht góng yuht làuhleih.

5. Yuht yám yuht génghot.  
/hóu meih/

5. Yuht yám yuht hóu meih.

6. Yuht tái yuht m̀hchìngchó.  
/ngáahnfan/  
The longer I read the  
fuzzier it seems.

6. Yuht tái yuht ngáahnfan.  
The longer I read the  
sleepier I get.



3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh gú kéuih yātdihng<br>mhlāih.<br>I guess he's not coming. | 1. Ngóh gú kéuih yātdihng<br>mhlāih.      |
| 2. /yíhwàih/   | 2. Ngóh yíhwàih kéuih yātdihng<br>mhlāih. |
| 3. /wah/   | 3. Ngóh wah kéuih yātdihng<br>mhlāih.     |
| 4. /gokdāk/  | 4. Ngóh gokdāk kéuih yātdihng<br>mhlāih.  |
| 5. /pa/  | 5. Ngóh pa kéuih yātdihng mhlāih          |
| 6. /tèngginwah/  | 6. Ngóh tèngginwah kéuih yātdihng mhlāih. |

4. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. a. gáu dím ji ngh dím.   | 1. a. 9 o'clock to 5 o'clock.  |
| b. jiujóu gáu dím ji hahjau<br>ngh dím.                                       | b. 9 in the morning to 5 in<br>the afternoon.  |
| c. Múih yaht jiujóu gáu dím<br>ji hahjau ngh dím.                             | c. Everyday from 9 in the<br>morning to 5 in the<br>afternoon.                         |
| d. Múih yaht jiujóu gáu dím<br>ji hahjau ngh dím dōu<br>hái séjihlāuh.        | d. (I'm) at the office<br>everyday from 9 in the<br>morning to 5 in the<br>afternoon.  |
| + 2. a. <u>fai</u> .  | 2. a. <u>fee, fare, expenses</u> .   |
| + b. <u>hohk fai</u> .  | b. school fees, <u>tuition</u> .   |
| c. béi hohk fai.  | c. pay tuition.  |
| d. mhsái béi hohk fai.  | d. don't need to pay tuition.  |
| e. sái mhsái béi hohk fai a?  | e. do you have to pay<br>tuition?  |
| f. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá, sái<br>mhsái béi hohk fai a?                             | f. Do you have to pay<br>tuition to study Can-<br>tonese?                              |
| g. Hái Méihgwok Lihngsihwún<br>hohk Gwóngdùngwá, sái<br>mhsái béi hohk fai a? | g. Do you have to pay<br>tuition to study Can-<br>tonese at the American<br>Consulate? |
| + 3. a. <u>Búnlòih</u> heui Tòihwān.  | 3. a. <u>Originally</u> , (we) were<br>going to Taiwan.                                |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| b. Búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan  | b. Originally, (we) planned to go to Taiwan.                                      |
| c. Ngóhdeih búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan.                                    | c. We originally planned to go to Taiwan.   |
| d. Ngóhdeih chōchō búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan.                             | d. We originally, in the beginning, planned to go to Taiwan.                      |
| e. Ngóhdeih chōchō búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan, daahnhaiah yingā mhheuidāk. | e. We originally, in the beginning, planned to go to Taiwan, but now we can't go. |

Comment: búnlòih 'originally,' carries the implication that the outcome was different from original intention: 'originally planned X, however Y instead.'

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| + 4. a. <u>lihn(māaih) dihnfai.</u><br><u>lihn(māaih) =</u><br><u>including</u><br><u>dihnfai =</u><br><u>electricity fee</u> | 5. a. including the electricity payment.                              |
| b. <u>lihn(māaih) dihnfai yiu</u><br><u>béi géi chín a?</u>   | b. how much is it including electricity?                              |
| + c. <u>séuifai lihn(māaih) dihn-</u><br><u>fai yiu béi géi chín a?</u><br><u>(séuifai =</u><br><u>water fee)</u>             | c. how much do you have to pay for water and electricity?             |
| d. <u>séuifai lihn(māaih) dihn-</u><br><u>fai hahmbahlaahng yiu</u><br><u>béi géi chín a?</u>                                 | d. how much do you have to pay altogether, for water and electricity? |
| e. <u>Múih go yuht séuifai lihn-</u><br><u>(māaih) dihnfai hahmbahlaahng</u><br><u>yiú béi géi chín a?</u>                    | e. How much a month do you pay for water and electricity together?    |
| 5. a. <u>yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh.</u>   | 5. a. don't have a single dime.                                       |
| b. <u>lihn yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh.</u>   | b. don't even have a single dime.                                     |
| c. <u>ngóh lihn yāt hòuhjí dōu</u><br><u>móuh.</u>  | c. I don't even have a single dime.                                   |
| d. <u>Ngóh jánhaiah lihn yāt hòuhjí</u><br><u>dōu móuh.</u>   | d. I really don't even have a single dime.                            |
| e. <u>Néih mhjí àh? Ngóh jánhaiah</u><br><u>lihn yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh</u><br><u>ga.</u>  | e. Don't you know? I really don't have even a single dime.            |
| + 6. a. <u>dāng</u>   | 6. a. <u>light, lamp</u>  |
| + b. <u>dihndāng</u>  | b. electric light   |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| + c. <u>jaan</u> dihndāng<br>( <u>jaan</u> =<br>M for lamp) | c. a lamp, a light   |
| d. gó jaan dihndāng.  | d. that lamp, light.   |
| e. syüfóng gó jaan dihndāng.                                | e. the lamp in the study.  |
| f. sàanjó syüfóng gó jaan<br>dihndāng lā.                   | f. please turn off the lamp<br>( <u>or</u> light) in the study.  |
| g. Hóu sàanjó syüfóng gó jaan<br>(dihn) dāng lā.            | g. You'd better turn off the<br>lamp ( <u>or</u> light) in<br>the study. (said as a<br>suggestion, not as a<br>threat) |

## 5. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Néih m̄hahh wah, yiu T: Didn't you say you had to go  
cheut gaai gé? out? (you see that he's still  
here.)

+ S: Néih yauh wah yiu S: Didn't you say you had to go  
cheut gaai? out? (i.e., you said...but  
it's not so--what's up?)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Néih m̄hahh wah, s̄ungfùng<br>gé?                            | 1. Néih yauh wah s̄ungfùng?                              |
| 2. Néih m̄hahh wah, ḡamyah<br>hahjau m̄hsái ngoh làih gé?      | 2. Néih yauh wah ḡamyah hah-<br>jau m̄hsái ngoh làih?   |
| 3. Néih m̄hahh wah, yihgìng<br>jyunjó baat houh fùngkàuh<br>gé? | 3. Néih yauh wah yihgìng jyun-<br>jó baat houh fùngkàuh? |
| 4. Néih m̄hahh wah, góí tìngyaht<br>gé?                         | 4. Néih yauh wah góí tìngyaht?                           |
| 5. Néih m̄hahh wah, yeukm̄hdóu<br>kéuih gé?                     | 5. Néih yauh wah yeukm̄hdóu<br>kéuih?                    |
| 6. Néih m̄hahh wah, móuh tūngjǐ<br>kéuih gé?                    | 6. Néih yauh wah móuh tūngjǐ<br>kéuih?                   |
| 7. Néih m̄hahh wah, yáuh baahn-<br>faat gé?                     | 7. Néih yauh wah yáuh baahn-<br>faat?                    |
| 8. Néih m̄hahh wah, dihndāng<br>waaihjó gé?                     | 8. Néih yauh wah dihndāng<br>waaihjó?                    |
| 9. Néih m̄hahh wah, jaangdí<br>chāt díng gé?                    | 9. Néih yauh wah jaangdí chāt<br>díng?                   |

## 6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih deui nī gihn  
sih, m̄hchǐngchó bo.

T: She's not very clear about  
this.

S: Kéuih deui nī gihn  
sih chǐng m̄h-  
chǐngchó a?

S: Is she clear about this? (i.e.,  
does she understand how it  
works?)

- Néih deui kéuih m̄hhóu.  
You're not nice to him.
- Kéuih deui nī gihn sih, yātdī  
dōu m̄hfuhjaak.
- Kéuih deui dá jih yātdī cheui-  
meih dōu móuh.  
(She doesn't have the  
slightest interest in  
typing.)  
deui X yáuh cheuimeih =  
be interested in X.
- Yáuh séui deui néih hóu yáuh  
yík ga.
- Yámjáu deui néih móuh yík  
ga.
- Tái syù deui néih ge behng  
m̄hhóu ga.
- Kéuih deui nī gihn sih hóu  
chǐngchó.

- Néih deui kéuih hóu m̄hhóu a?
- Kéuih deui nī gihn sih fuh  
m̄hfuhjaak a?
- Kéuih deui dá jih yáuh  
móuh cheuimeih a?
- Yáuh séui deui ngóh yáuh  
móuh yík a?
- Yámjáu deui ngóh yáuh móuh  
yík a?
- Tái syù deui ngóh ge behng  
hóu m̄hhóu a?
- Kéuih deui nī gih sih chǐng  
m̄hchǐngchó a?

## 7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih m̄hjúngyi dá  
jih ge.

T: She doesn't like to type.

S: Kéuih deui dá jih,  
yātdī dōu m̄hjúngyi.

S: About typing--she doesn't like  
it a bit.

- Kéuih m̄hpa dá fùng ge.
- Kéuih m̄hpa m̄hnmā ge.
- Kéuih m̄hji nī gihn sih ge.
- Kéuih m̄hfuhjaak jáinéui ge  
hohk fai ge.
- Kéuih m̄hdáleih sailógō ge.

- Kéuih deui dá fùng, yātdī  
dōu m̄hpa.
- Kéuih deui m̄hnmā, yātdī dōu  
m̄hpa.
- Kéuih deui nī gihn sih,  
yātdī dōu m̄hji.
- Kéuih deui jáinéui ge hohk  
fai, yātdī dōu m̄hfuhjaak.
- Kéuih deui sailógō, yātdī  
dōu m̄hdáleih.

6. Kéuih m̄hs̄ik dá páai ge.

6. Kéuih deui dá páai, yātdī  
dōu m̄hs̄ik.

## 8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih múih go yuht  
yiu béi sei sah̄p  
mān séui fai.  
/\$50/

T: His water bill is \$40 a month.

+ S: M̄h̄jī, yiu béi ngh-  
sah̄p mān ga.

S: Not just (\$40)--it's \$50.

1. Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi  
baat sah̄p mān hohk fai.  
/\$100/1. M̄h̄jī, yiu béi yāt baak mān  
ga.2. Kéuih múih yaht yiu béi ngh  
go bun ngāhnchín chē fai.  
/\$7.50/2. M̄h̄jī, yiu béi chāt go bun  
ngāhnchín ga.3. Kéuih múih yaht yiu béi sei  
hòuhjī syūhn fai. /\$50#/

3. M̄h̄jī, yiu béi ngh hòuhjī ga.

4. Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi  
baak ngh mān dihn fai.  
/\$170/4. M̄h̄jī, yiu béi baak chāt  
mān ga.5. Kéuih múih sām go yuht yiu  
béi baat shap mān séui fai.  
/more than \$100/5. M̄h̄jī, yiu béi baak géi mān  
ga.6. Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi  
baak géi mān yeuhk fai.  
/\$210/6. M̄h̄jī, yiu béi yih baak yāt  
mān ga.9. Expansion Drill: X ji Y dōuEx: T: Móuh sówaih gé.  
/sah̄p mān/yih sah̄p  
mān/T: It doesn't make any difference.  
/\$10/\$20/S: Sah̄p mān ji yih sah̄p  
mān dōu móuh só-  
waih gé.S: Anything between \$10 and \$20  
is OK.1. Ngóh m̄hdākhaahn bo.  
/chāt dīm/sah̄p dīm/1. Chāt dīm ji sah̄p dīm ngóh  
dōu m̄hdākhaahn gé.2. Ngóh hái Jūngmāhn daaihohk  
gaau syù. /1958 nīhn/1966/2. Yāt gau ngh baat nīhn ji  
yāt gau luhk luhk ngóh  
dōu hái Jūngmāhn daaihohk  
gaau syù gé.

- |   |
|---|
| 3. Ngòh móuh chéng gúngyáhn.<br>/gauhnín/yíngā/<br>3. Gauhnín jì yíngā ngòh dōu<br>móuh chéng gúngyáhn gé.  |
| 4. Ngòh móuh síhk faahn.<br>/kàhmáahn/gámjiu/<br>4. Kàhmáahn jì gámjiu ngòh dōu<br>móuh síhk faahn.   |
| 5. Ngòh meih gingwo kéuih.<br>/chāt yuht/sahp yuht/<br>I haven't seen him.<br>5. Chāt yuht jì sah p yuht ngòh<br>dōu meih gingwo kéuih gé.<br>I didn't see him from<br>July to October. |

10. Expansion Drill: Expand with V-dākchit, 'time enough to V,' or mhV-dākchit, 'not enough time to V,' according to the pattern set by the example sentences.

Ex: 1. T: Yíngā m̀hahh hóu T: It's not very late now.  
yeh jē. /m̀aaih/ /buy/

S: Yíngā m̀hahh hóu S: It's not very late now--  
yeh jē, m̀aaih- there's time to buy it.  
dākchit gé.

2. T: Yíngā gam yeh T: It's so late now--. /buy/  
laak. /m̀aaih/

S: Yíngā gam yeh S: It's so late now--there's not  
laak, m̀m̀aaih- time to buy it.  
dākchit ge laak.

1. Yíngā gam ngaan laak. /gón/

1. Yíngā gam ngaan laak, m̀h-  
gondākchit ge la.

2. Yíngā hóu jóu. /jíng/

2. Yíngā hóu jóu, jíngdākchit  
gé.

3. Yíngā gam chíh. /jauh/

3. Yíngā gam chíh, m̀hjauh dāk-  
chit ge la.

4. Yíngā gam yeh laak. /dá/

4. Yíngā gam yeh laak, m̀hdádāk-  
chit ge la.

5. Yíngā m̀hahh hóu yeh jē. /sái/

5. Yíngā m̀hahh hóu yeh jē,  
sáidākchit gé.

6. Yíngā hóu ngaan laak. /heui/

6. Yíngā hóu ngaan laak, m̀h-  
heuidākchit ge la.

7. Yíngā m̀hahh hóu chíh jē.  
/dá/

7. Yíngā m̀hahh hóu chíh jē,  
dádākchit gé.

## 11. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih dāk yāt go  
gūngyàhn.

T: She has only one servant.

S: Kéuih lǐhn yāt go  
gūngyàhn dōu móuh.

S: Not even one servant does  
she have. or  
She doesn't even have one  
servant.

1. Kéuih dāk yāt gihn sàan sām.

1. Kéuih lǐhn yāt gihn sàan  
sām dōu móuh.

2. Kéuih dāk yāt go pàhngyáuh.

2. Kéuih lǐhn yāt go pàhngyáuh  
dōu móuh.

3. Kéuih dāk yāt gauh fàangáan.

3. Kéuih lǐhn yāt gauh fàangáan  
dōu móuh.

4. Kéuih dāk yāt hòuhjí.

4. Kéuih lǐhn yāt hòuhjí dōu  
móuh.

5. Kéuih dāk yāt jek búi.

5. Kéuih lǐhn yāt jek búi dōu  
móuh.

## 12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh dāmjó laak.

T: I tossed it out.

S: Ngóh yínging dāmjó  
ge lo bo.

S: I already tossed it out.  
(protesting, but friendly)

1. Jyunjó chāthouh fūngkàuh  
laak.

1. Yínging jyunjó chāthouh  
fūngkàuh ge lo bo.

2. Ngóh jáau fàan chin béi kéuih  
laak.

2. Ngóh yínging jáau fàan chin  
béi kéuih ge lo bo.

3. Kéuih síhkjó yeuhk laak.

3. Kéuih yínging síhkjó yeuhk  
ge lo bo.

4. Ngóh tūngjíjó kéuih laak.

4. Ngóh yínging tūngjíjó kéuih  
ge lo bo.

5. Ngóh fànfuljó kéuih laak.

5. Ngóh yínging fànfuljó kéuih  
ge lo bo.

6. Ngóh wúihjó seun béi kéuih  
laak.

6. Ngóh yínging wúihjó seun béi  
kéuih ge lo bo.

## 13. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Bāsi maahn gwotàuh.<br>/dīksi/                   | T: The bus is much too slow.<br>/taxi/                    |
| S: Bāsi maahn gwotàuh,<br>bātyùh chōh dīksi<br>bá laak. | S: The bus is much too slow--<br>we'd better take a taxi. |
- 
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Háuh ge yíht gwotàuh.<br>/bohk ge/                                   | 1. Háuh ge yíht gwotàuh, bātyùh<br>jeuk bohk ge bá laak.                              |
| 2. Yàuhséui dung gwotàuh.<br>/tái hei/                                  | 2. Yàuhséui dung gwotàuh,<br>bātyùh tái hei bá laak.                                  |
| 3. Tòihwāan yúhn gwotàuh.<br>/Gwóngjāu/                                 | 3. Tòihwāan yúhn gwotàuh,<br>bātyùh heui Gwóngjāu bá<br>laak.                         |
| 4. Syùn laaht tòng laaht gwotàuh.<br>/yiu yú tòng/<br>order fish soup   | 4. Syùn laaht tòng laaht gwotàuh,<br>bātyùh yiu yú tòng bá laak.                      |
| 5. Heiséui dung gwotàuh. /gafē/   | 5. Heiséui dung gwotàuh, bātyùh<br>yám gafē bá laak.                                  |
| 6. Nàahmgūngyàhn (ge yàhngùng)<br>gwai gwotàuh. /chéng<br>néuhgūngyàhn/ | 6. Nàahmgūngyàhn (ge yàhngùng)<br>gwai gwotàuh, bātyùh chéng<br>néuhgūngyàhn bá laak. |

## 14. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: Néih dáng ngóh<br>jē,...                               | T: Even though you would wait<br>for me,...  |
| S: Néih dáng ngóh jē,<br>ngóh dōu haih gón-<br>m̀hchit ge bo. | S: Even though you would wait<br>for me, I still can't make<br>it. (wouldn't have time to<br>do it.) |
- 
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Néih gó léuhng dím bun jē,...                    | 1. Néih gó léuhng dím bun jē,<br>ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit ge<br>bo.                 |
| 2. Néih tìngyaht ji yiu jē,...                      | 2. Néih tìngyaht ji yiu jē,<br>ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit<br>ge bo.                   |
| 3. Néih gó bāan fēigēi ngh dím<br>bun ji hòì jē,... | 3. Néih gó bāan fēigēi ngh dím<br>bun ji hòì jē, ngóh dōu<br>haih gónm̀hchit ge bo. |
| 4. Kéuihdeih gāmmáahn ji làih<br>jē,...             | 4. Kéuihdeih gāmmáahn ji làih<br>jē, ngóh dōu haih gón-<br>m̀hchit ge bo.           |



5. Kéuih kàhmyaht tungji ngòh  
jē,...

5. Kéuih kàhmyaht tungji ngòh  
jē, ngòh dōu haih gón-  
mhchit ge bo.

15. Expansion Drill: Expand with sèuiyihh...., daahnhaih....

Ex: T: Néih wah móuh ngàih-  
hím jē, ngòh dōu  
haih pa ge.

T: (Although) you say there's  
no danger, I'm (still) afraid.

S: Sèuiyihh néih wah  
móuh ngàihhím jē,  
daahnhaih ngòh dōu  
haih pa ge.

S: Although you say there's no  
danger, I'm still afraid.

1. Dihnsih waaihjó jē, néih hóyh  
tèng sàuyāngèi ā.

1. Sèuiyihh dihnsih waaihjó jē,  
daahnhaih néih hóyh tèng  
sàuyāngèi ā.

2. Yiu béi yāt chīn mán jē, ngòh  
dōu gau chīn gé.  
Even though I had to spend  
\$1000, I still have some  
money.

2. Sèuiyihh yiu béi yāt chīn  
mán jē, daahnhaih ngòh  
dōu gau chīn gé.

3. Kéuih gokdāk m̄hsyūfuhk, kéuih  
juhng fāan gūng.

3. Sèuiyihh kéuih gokdāk m̄h-  
syūfuhk, daahnhaih kéuih  
juhng fāan gūng.

4. Jyunjó chāt houh fūngkàuh,  
ngòh juhng yiu fāan gūng.

4. Sèuiyihh jyunjó chāt houh  
fūngkàuh, daahnhaih ngòh  
juhng yiu fāan gūng.

5. Kéuih yīnging gitjó fàn, kéuih  
juhng yáuh hóudò néuihpāng-  
yáuh.

5. Sèuiyihh kéuih yīnging gitjó  
fàn, daahnhaih kéuih juhng  
yáuh hóudò néuihpāngyáuh.

6. Ngòh hóu tóuhngoh, ngòh m̄hséung  
sikh yéh.

6. Sèuiyihh ngòh hóu tóuhngoh,  
daahnhaih ngòh m̄hséung  
sikh yéh.

16. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher,  
then substitute as directed.

1. Ngòh nīpāai m̄hhái ngūkkéi.

1. Ngòh nīpāai m̄hhái ngūkkéi.

2. /tāuhsín/

2. Ngòh tāuhsín m̄hhái ngūkkéi.

3. /ngāamngāam/

3. Ngòh ngāamngāam m̄hhái  
ngūkkéi.

4. /hóu dò sikh dōu/

4. Ngòh hóu dò sikh dōu m̄hhái  
ngūkkéi.

- |                                     |                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 5. /sɪhsɪh dōu/                     | 5. Ngóh sɪhsɪh dōu m̀hái ngūkkéi. |
| 6. /yáuhshɪh/                       | 6. Ngóh yáuhshɪh m̀hái ngūkkéi.   |
| 7. /hóu síu/                        | 7. Ngóh hóu síu m̀hái ngūkkéi.    |
| + 8. /góján(sɪh)/<br>(at that time) | 8. Ngóh góján(sɪh) m̀hái ngūkkéi. |

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) gēichèuhng = fēigēichèuhng = airport
- 2) gēi = fēigēi
- 3) chèuhng = M for wind
- 4) hònghùng gūngsī = airline company
- 5) (ng)ūkjyú = landlord, landlady
- 6) woh = that's what he said.
- 7) sàam fóng = 3 bedrooms
- 8) léuhng tēng = 2 sitting places--i.e., living room and dining room. (Léuhng tēng = haaktēng + faahntēng)
- 9) dihndāngdáam = light bulb
- 10) ji ma = that's all
- 11) séuidihnfai = water and electricity fees
- 12) M̀hwúih sàu gwai = I wouldn't take too much from you [wouldn't-take-expensive]
- 13) fòngbihn = convenient
- 14) bīujéun = standard, i.e., here: speaks like a Cantonese person
- 15) sàangyi = commercial business
- 16) paai = send
- 17) yáuh hingcheui = to be interested in
- 18) dāan sàngyi = some business [dāan 'list,' M for sàangyi]
- 19) jām = discuss
- 20) Dūng Nàahm A = Southeast Asia
- 21) Yuhtnàahm = Vietnam
- 22) Máhlòihá = Malaya
- 23) geiwúih = opportunity

## V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. You say to the person sitting next to you:                                   | B. And he replies:  |
| 1. That child is getting lazier and lazier.                                     | 1. That's what I say too.   |
| 2. The more you speak Cantonese the more fluent you become.                     | 2. The more I talk the worse it is.   |
| 3. Didn't you say you were going to bed? How come you're still up?              | 3. I went to bed but I couldn't get to sleep.   |
| 4. Where are you meeting Miss Ma?   | 4. At the library.  |
| 5. His illness is getting more and more dangerous.                              | 5. Unfortunately he doesn't have the money to see a doctor.                                       |
| 6. How much tuition do you pay for Cantonese Lessons?                           | 6. We don't have to pay tuition.  |
| 7. I hear Mrs. Cheung made an appointment to go to Mrs. Chan's to play mahjong. | 7. She originally planned to go to Mrs. Chan's, but in the end she went to Mrs. Lau's for dinner. |
| 8. Does the rent include water and electricity?                                 | 8. It includes the water but not electricity.   |
| 9. His wife is over 30.   | 9. Not just (over 30) -- she's over 40!   |
| 10. Miss Wong doesn't have a phone-- how will I get in touch with her?          | 10. There's nothing you can do.   |
| 11. I don't know anything about playing mahjong.                                | 11. I'll teach you, OK?   |
| 12. Even if you taught me, I'd still be stupid.                                 | 12. You're too modest.  |
| 13. There's a typhoon coming.   | 13. Is that so? Have they put up the typhoon signal?  |
| 14. Let's meet at the Hong Kong University library after you get off from work. | 14. I have a terrible headache today and I'm not going to go to work.                             |
| 15. Is Mr. Lau responsible for this matter?                                     | 15. No, he isn't.   |
-

## Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 30

1. búnlòih	MA: originally
2. daaihkói <u>or</u> daaihkoi	MA: probably
3. dá fùng	VO: have a typhoon [hit-wind]
4. daihyaht	Ph: another day, another time (reduced from <u>daih yih yaht</u> )
5. deui, deuiyù	prep: towards, for, in regard to
6. deui...yáuh cheuimeih	Ph: be interested in
7. dihdāng	n: electric light, electric lamp
8. dihnfai	n: electricity expense
9. fai	n: fees, expenses
10. fùng	n: wind
11. fùngkàuh	n: typhoon signal
12. ge lo bo!	ss: <u>ge/ga</u> 'that's the way it is'+ ss. <u>lobo</u> for good natured protest
13. ginmih	VO: meet [see-face]
14. góih	v: change, alter
15. gú	v: guess, conjecture, bet, hazard a guess
16. hósik	MA: unfortunately
17. jáan	M: M for light or lamp
18. jāangdī	adv: almost, lacks a little
19. <u>A</u> <u>ji</u> <u>B</u>	Prep: between <u>A and B</u> , from <u>A to B</u>
20. lih (màaih)	cv: including
21. lih...dōu m̄h <u>V</u>	PhF: not even, even
22. m̄hjī	Ph: more than; not just...
23. Móuh baahnfaat.	Ph: 'There's no way;' 'can't do anything about it;' 'it can't be helped'
24. Néih m̄hhaih wah...?	Ph: Didn't you say...?
25. Néih yauh wah...?	Ph: You said...(but it's not so; what's up?)
26. séuifai	n: water expenses
27. tùngjì	v: communicate (with)
28. Wah!	Ex: Exclamation of awe
29. yáuh yīk	VO: benefit
30. yeuk	v: make an appointment
31. yeukhóu	v: agree on the time and/or place for an appointment

32. X yihseuhng                  above X, more than X (follows nu-M  
   expression)
33. yik                                         n: benefit, profit
34. yuht làih yuht. Adj.                 Ph: getting more and more Adj.
35. yuht...yuht....                     Ph: the more....the more....
-

## IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

Lesson Sixteen

1. Two friends discuss what they did last Saturday:

A: Néih seuhng go láihbaai luk heui bīndouh wáan a?

B: Tuhng ngóh taaitáai heui yàuhseui. Néih nē?

A: Láihbaai luk ngóh dōu séung heui yàuhseui gé, daahnaih ngóh néuihpáhngyáuh wah mhheui. Sóyih ngóhdeih heuijó dá móhng kauh.

B: Hái bīndouh dá a?

A: Hái Bóuwahn Douh kauhchēuhng. Néih hái gódouh dágwo meih a?

B: Meih. Ngóh meih hái gódouh dágwo. Hái bīndouh ngóh dōu mhjí.

A: Néih tīngyaht séung mhseung heui a? Ngóh daai néih heui ā.

B: Tīngyaht ngóh àkdākhaahn. Daihyaht sīn lā.

1) wáan = amuse oneself, general verb for leisure time activity

2) sóyih = therefore

3) dá móhng kauh = play tennis

4) Bóuwahn Douh = Bowen Road

5) kauh chēuhng = tennis court

6) daih yaht = daih (yih) yaht = another day

2. Discussing a trip to the Philippines:

A: Néih kàhmyaht heuijó bīndouh a? Ngóh dá dihnwá séung wán néih heui sīk ngaan. Néih beisyù wah néih heuijó Máhneihlāai, heui gódouh yáuh mēyéh sīh a?

B: O. Gūngsī yáuh dī sīh yiu ngóh heui Fēileuhtbān. Hái gó bihn máaihjó léuhng baak gīhn Fēileuhtbān seutsāam.

A: Néih hái góbihn yáuh móuh heui wán Wòhng Bóu-jūng a?

B: Móuh. Ngóh hóu séung heui wán kéuih a, daahnhaih dōu m̀hdāk̀hàahn.

Hái gódouh ngóh jihng haih máaihjó dī yéh béi ngóh taaitáai  
t̀hng sailóugō ja.

A: Máaihjó dī mēyéh béi kéuihdeih a? Yauh haih máaih géi gih

Fēileuhtbān sēutsāam a?

B: M̀nhaih, ngóh t̀hng ngóh taaitáai máaihjó go sáudói, géi leng gé.

Kéuih hóu j̀ngyi a. Yauh máaihjó go bō béi go jái--máaihjó  
go g̀ngjái béi go néui.

A. O, gám jauh hóu lā. Wei! Dáng jahn yatchàih sihk ngaan ā? Ngóh

t̀ngginwah Daaih Douh J̀ng yáuh gān chāansāt géi hóu ge bo.

B: Hóu a. Géidím a? Hái bīndouh dág a?

A: Sahpyih dím daahp sām lā, hóu ma? Jauh hái néih g̀ngsī lāuhhah

ginmihn lā.

B: Haih gám wah lā. Sahpyih dím daahp sām ngóh hái gódouh dág néih.

1) beisyù = secretary

2) M̀hneihlāai = Manila

3) Fēileuhtbān = Philippines

4) g̀ngjái = doll

5) Wei = Hey!; Say!; exclamation used to attract someone's  
attention

6) yatchàih = together

7) ginmihn = meet

8) Haih gám wah lā. = We'll do it the way you say.

3. Two women friends meet on the street downtown:

Hòh Táai : Jóusahn Léih Táai, néih nīpáai heui bīndouh làih a?

Léih Táai: Móuh heui bīndouh ā. Ngóh nīpáai dōu hái ūkkéi jouh sām--  
hóu m̀hdāk̀hàahn.

Hòh Táai : Haih laak. Néih dī jáineui yīngā dím a?

Léih Táai: Géi hóu. Kéuihdeih Kàhmyaht heuijó Gául̀hng ngóh m̀hāmā  
douh. A! Hòh Táai, néih t̀ngyaht dāk m̀hdāk̀hàahn heui  
Chàhn Táai gódouh dá m̀hajeuk a?

1) Móuh heui bīndouh = Haven't gone anywhere

Hòh Táai : O! Dá mǎhjeuk àh. Dākàahn, néih dá dihnwá làih giu ngóh là.

Láih Táai: Hóu aak, sái mǎsái ngóh jà chē làih jip néih a?

Hòh Táai : Mǎsái. Ngóh jidou dím heui Chàhn Táai douh ge laak. Chàhn Táai úkkéi hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī hàahng gwo dī, Wíhng Ōn Ngàhnhòhng gaakleih ā ma. Haih bo, kéuih gódouh jógán hó mǎhóyih paak chē ga?

Léih Táai: Hóyih. Néih sīnsàang tīngyaht dāk mǎdākàahn a?

Hòh Táai : Dākàahn, yauh mēyéh sih nē?

Léih Táai: Ngóh sīnsàang séung chéng kéuih heui yám chàh.

Hòh Táai : Hóu, ngóh wah béi kéuih jì, giu kéuih hái séjihlàuh dáng néih sīnsàang là. Hmm, ngóh yihgā yiu heui Jūngwàahn Gàaisih máaih sung la.

Léih Táai: Hóu. Joigin.

Hòh Táai : Joigin.

1) ā ma = sen. suf. of response sentence, indicating in a nice way: 'This is pretty obvious'

2) haih bo = here: by the way,...

3) máaih sung = buy groceries

### Lesson Seventeen

#### 1. An American and Cantonese in Hong Kong talk about travel in America:

A: Tèngginwah néih hahgo láihbaai heui Méihgwok, haih mǎhah a?

B: Móuh cho, ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh heui, jǐkhaih láihbaaisei.

A: Haih mē? Néih yáuh móuh heuigwo Méihgwok a?

B: Yáuh, yāt-gáu-luhk-ńgh nǐhn heuilàih.

A: Hái Méihgwok heuigwo bīndī deihfòng a?

B: Ngóh heuigwo Sàamfàahnsih tùhng Wàhsihngdeuhn.

A: Néih yáuh móuh chānchǐk hái gó léuhng dāat deihfòng a?

B: Yáuh, gó léuhng dāat deihfòng, ngóh dōu yáuh chānchǐk hái douh.

A: Doujó Wàhsihngdeuhn, jigányiu làih ngóh douh chòh a.

B: Hóu aak.

#### 2. Telephone conversation about traveling:

A: Wéi, mǎhgoi néih giu Wòhng Sàang tēng dihnwá.

B: Hóu, mǎhgoi dáng jahn.

C: Wái, bǐn wái a?

A: Ngóh sing Chàhn.

C: Ah! Chàhn Sàang, yáuh mǎtyéh sih a?



- A: Móuh, ngóh séung mahnháh néih, jí m̀hjí Léih Gwóng-lúhng Sínsáang géisih fàanheui Méihgwok jē?
- C: O! Kéuih nah go láihbaaiyih fàanheui, jíkhah ní go yuht sahph baat houh.
- A: Gám, néih jí m̀hjí kéuih fàanheui Méihgwok bíndouh a?
- C: Ngóh m̀hchinghó bo, t̀ngginwah kéuih fàanheui Wáhsihngdeuhn.
- A: Haih mē! Wòhng Sàang, néih dásyun géisih túhng Wòhng Táai heui Sàamfàahnsih taam kéuih mähmá a?
- C: Ngóhdeih dásyun hahgo yuht heui.
- A: Gám, néihdeih daai m̀hdaai dī jáinéui heui a?
- C: Ngóhdeih hahchí jí daai kéuihdeih heui.
- A: Haih lé. Néih dī jáinéui haih m̀hhah dōu hái Méihgwok chēutsai ga?
- C: Haih, kéuihdeih dōu haih hái gódouh chēutsai ge.
- A: Ngóh heuigwo Méihgwok hóu dò chi, daahnhaih Sàamfàahnsih túhng Wáhsihngdeuhn ngóh juhng meih heuigwo. Néihdeih fàandouheui jígányiu bēi go deihjí ngóh a?
- C: Hóu aak. Ngóh yíhngā góng bēi néih t̀ng sín lā.
- A: Hóu, dāng ngóh ló jí bāt làih sín.
- 1) Móuh = Nothing special
  - 2) jí = (not until) then
  - 3) go deihjí = here: your address

3. Talking about a trip to Singapore:

- A: Lóuh Wóng, hóu noih móuh gin. Heui bíndouh làih a?
- B: O. Ngóh heuijó Sínggabō, ngāamngāam seuhng go láihbaai jí fàanlāih.
- A: Haih mē? Néih géisí heui ga?
- B: Ngóh seuhng go yuht yihshah houh heui ge.
- A: Néih yáuh móuh daai néih taaitáai túhngmáaih dī sailógō heui a?
- B: Jíhngghah túhng ngóh taaitáai heui. Dī sailógō heuijó Tòihwāan jjuh hái ngóh taaitáai ngūkkéi, kéuihdeih káhyah ngāamngāam jí fàanlāih.
- 1) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends. (The tone of the surname changes from low falling tone to high rising tone.)
  - 2) Sínggabō = Singapore
  - 3) ngāamngāam = just
  - 4) jí = (only) then, (not until) then
  - 5) túhngmáaih = túhng
  - 6) Tòihwāan = Taiwan

- A: Nêih yíhchíhn heuigwo Singgabō meih a?
- B: O, heuigwo la. Ngóh hái gódouh chēutsai gé, bātgowo ngóh taaitáai yíhchíhn meih heuigwo. Nêih nē?
- A: Ngóh gauhnín daih yāt chi heui. Yíngā hái gódouh ngóh yáuh dī sàangyi. Chēutnín sàamyuht ngóh waahkjé joi heui.
- B: Nêih taaitáai heui m̀heui a?
- A: Wàh m̀hdihng a. Seuhng chi ngóh móuh daai kéuih heui, b́i kéuih jídou ngóh hái góbíhn yáuh go néuihpáhngyáuh. Ha. Ha. Ha.
- B: Ha. Ha....
- 1) yíhchíhn = previously
- 2) sàangyi = (commercial) business

### Lesson Eighteen

#### 1. Street scene: two women gossip about recent events:

- Wòhng Táai: Jèung Táai, heui b́ndouh a?
- Jèung Táai: Ngóh heui ngàhnòhng ló chíh. Nêih nē?
- Wòhng Táai: Ngóh heui fāangung. Tèngginwah nêih hahgo láihbaailuhk yiu b̀n ùk, haih m̀hah a?
- Jèung Táai: Haih. Ngóh séung b̀n heui Gáulùhng jyuh.
- Wòhng Táai: Nêih hái Hèunggóng jyuhjó móuh géinói jē. Jouh m̀atyéh yiu b̀n a?
- Jèung Táai: Móuh, ngóh dī jáineui hái Daaihluhk chēutjó làih, m̀ngau deihfóng jyuh.
- Wòhng Táai: O. Nêih dī jáineui hái Gwóngjàu chēutjó làih mē?
- Jèung Táai: Haih aak. Kéuihdeih yínging daaihhoik bāt yihp laak. Yíngā chēutlàih Hèunggóng jyuh, dásyun heui Méihgwok làuhhoik. Nêih dī jáineui yáuh móuh dásyun chēutheui a?
- Wòhng Táai: Yáuh. Daahnhaih ngóh jídō b́i go jái heui jē. Nêih dī jáineui heui dou Méihgwok haih m̀hah hái chānchík douh jyuh a?
- Jèung Táai: Hái, ngóh h̀imohng kéuihdeih heui Wàhsihngdeuhn. Gám, jauh hóyíh jyuh hái chānchík ùkkéi laak.
- Wòhng Táai: Ngóh yíhchíhn dōu yáuh chānchík hái Sàamfāahnsíh, yíngā b̀njó heui Tòihwāan hái Tòihbāk jyuh. Tèngginwah gódouh hóuhóu jyuh jē, nêih séung m̀séung b̀n fāanheui a?
- Jèung Táai: Ngóh juhng meih kyutdihng. Yùgwó yáuh chíh, jauh b̀n fāanheui.
- Wòhng Táai: Ngóh làihjó Hèunggóng jíhauh jauh m̀séung b̀n la. Jisíu juhng yiu dāng yāt níhn yíhhauh joi dásyun laak.
- 1) Jouh m̀atyéh = How come?
- 2) Móuh = 'Nothing special' A response making light of topic discussed.

Jèung Táai: Yíngā sahpyāt dím daahp sah laak, ngóh yiu fàan ūkkéi sìhk ngaanjau la, joigin.

Wòhng Táai: Joigin.

1) sìhk ngaanjau = sìhk ngaan = eat lunch

a) ngaanjau = 'noon'

2. Talking about schooldays:

A: Gàmyaht géidō houh a?

B: Gàmyaht sahpsàam houh.

A: Yí--Gàmyaht yáuh go tùnghohk gitfàn bo. Ngóh yiu chēutheui máaih dī yéh sung béi kéuih.

B: Bīndouh ge tùnghohk a?

A: Kéuih tùng ngóh haih jùnghohk ge tùnghohk. Ngóhdeih yārchàih bātyihp ge.

B: Néih haih bīnnih bātyihp ga?

A: Yāt-gáu-luhk-sàam nih. Gójahnsìh ngóhdeih hái Oumún jjuh.

B: Ngóh yihchihnh m̀hjidou néih hái Oumún jjuhgwó. Hái gódouh jjuhjó géi nói a?

A: Sahp géi nih la. Ngóh hái gódouh chēutsai gé. Jùnghohk bātyihp jíhauh, ji làih Hèunggóng duhk daaihohk. Néih heuigwo Oumún meih a?

B: Ngóh yihchihnh heuigwo yāt chi.

A: Yíhauh yùngwó yáuh sìhgaan ngóh fàanheui gójahn, tùng néih heui wáan a.

B: Hóu aak.

1) tùnghohk = schoolmate

2) jùnghohk = high school, middle school

3) yārchàih = together

4) gójahnsìh = at that time

5) sahpgéi = more than ten [ten-several]

6) ji = (not until) then, (only) then

7) wáan = play, amuse oneself, entertain, enjoy leisure time

Lesson Nineteen

1. A Hong Kong resident tells a new American resident about H.K. money exchange.

Hongkongite: Jèung Sàang, kyutdihngjó géisí heui máaih yéh meih a?

American : Ngóh dásyun gàmyaht heui gé. Daahnhaih ngóh kàhmyaht m̀hgeidak heui ngànhòhng wuhn Góngjǐ. Gàmyaht waahkjé

m̄hheidāk laak.

Hongkongite: Oh, nīdoh dī daaih gūngsī dōu yuhng Méihgām waahkjé  
Yīngbóng gé. M̄hsai yātdihng bēi Góngjī ga.

American : Haih mē? Gám, yāt mán Méihgām jīkhaih géi chīn Góngjī a?

Hongkongite: Yāt go ngàhnchīn Méihgām jisiu hōyih wuhn luhk mán,  
jīdō luhk go līhng ngh gamseuhnghá lā.

American : Hmm...Yūhgwó ngóh gāmyaht heui máaih yéh, néih dāk  
m̄hdākhaahn túhng ngóh yārchāih heui a?

Hongkongite: Dāk! Néih séung géidim heui a?

American : Yātján ngóh chéng néih heui sīhk ngaanjau sīn, yīnhauh  
jī heui lā.

Hongkongite: Hóu aak. Dōjeh sīn la.

1) m̄hheidāk = can't go

a) -dāk = 'can', 'able to', verb suffix (explain  
in Lesson 20)

2) yāt go ngàhnchīn = one dollar (\$1.00) (See L-21,  
Ex. 8)

3) sīhk ngaanjau = eat lunch

2. A telephone inquiry:

A: Wái.

B: Sàam Hīng Gūngsī àh. M̄hgòì chéng Wòhng Sing-Gwóng Sīnsàang tèng  
dihnwá.

A: Yīhgā juhng meih séuhng bāan. M̄hgòì néih bun go jūngtàuh joi dá  
lāih lā.

B: Hóu, m̄hgòì.

(After half hour he calls again)

C: Wái, Sàam Hīng Gūngsī.

B: M̄hgòì chéng Wòhng Sing-Gwóng Sīnsàang tèng dihnwá.

C: Wòhng Sàang heuijó Yahtbún bo. Bīn wái wán kéuih a?

B: O. Ngóh sing Jèung. Kéuih géisih fàanlāih a?

C: Wah m̄hdihng ga.

B: Hahgo yuht kéuih daaihkoi fàanlāih meih a?

C: Hahgo yuht yātdihng fàanlāih ge la. Yáuh mēyéh sīh a?

B: Néih haih m̄hhaih kéuih ge beisyù a?

C: Haih a.

1) séuhng bāan = start work

2) daaihkoi = probably

3) beisyù = secretary

- B: Wòhng Sàang léuhng go láihbaai jichihn tùhng ngòh góng wah yiu máaih ngòh ga chè. Mhji kéuih yingā juhng séung mhseung máaih nē?
- C: Kéuih móuh tùhng ngòh gónggwo bo. Bāt-gwo kéuih seuhng go láihbaai hòuchih yinging máaihjó ga laak. Mhji kéuih juhng yiu mhyiu máaih nē?
- B: O. Gám àh, dāng kéuih fāan làih ngòh joi dá dihnwá béi kéuih la. Mhgoisaaì.
- C: Hóu wah.
- 1) hóu chíh = it seems
  - 2) Hóu wah, = Equivalent to 'You're welcome', 'Not at all', Response to being thanked for a service.

## 3. Talking with a friend on the telephone:

- A: Wéi.
- B: Wéi. Chàhn Waih-jùng ah? Néih sihkjó máahn faahn meih? Heui m̀heui tái hei a?
- A: Wòhng Jit-Mihng a mah? Tái hei àh, m̀hdāk bo. Ngòh juhng yáuh hóudò gùngfo yiu jòuh.
- B: Ngòh táidòu bouji wah Hòuh Wàh Heiyún chēut hei m̀cho bo. Néih yingā joi jòuh léuhng go jùngtāuh gùngfo juhng gòndākchit ga. Ngòh sìn heui máaih feì. Gáudimjùng hai heiyun muhnhau dang néih là?
- A: M̀hdāk. Ngòhdeih juhng meih sihk faahn. Sihkyùhn faahn, duhkyùhn syù jauh gònm̀hchit tái hei ge la.
- B: Gám ah. Hah chí sìn la! Haih laak--Ngòh go dáfògēi ngāamngāam, máaihjó yāt go láihbaai, kàhmyaht jauh m̀ginjó. Mhji yauh móuh lauhdài hái néih ukkēi nē? Néih yáuh móuh táidòu a?
- A: Ngòh móuh táidòu bo, dāng ngòh mahnháh m̀hmā. Mā, yáuh móuh táidòu Wòhng Jit-Mihng go dáfògēi a? Kéuih wah kàhmyaht hònàhng lauhdài hái nìdòuh.
- 1) a mah? = 'isn't that right?' (being pretty sure it is)  
cf. French 'n'est ce pas
  - 2) gùngfo = lessons, homework
  - 3) gòndākchit = can make it in time; there will be time to do it
  - 4) feì = ticket
  - 5) -yùhn = finish a) sihkyùhn = finish eating  
b) duhkyùhn = finish studying
  - 6) gònm̀hchit = can't make it in time
  - 7) ngāamngāam = just
  - 8) lauhdài = leave behind
  - 9) hònàhng = probably

C: Haih a. Hái néih gāan fóng jèung tóih douh a máh.

A: Wái, Lóuh Wóng--háih douh a. Ngóh tìngyaht níngfàan bái néih ā?

B: Hóu, m̀h̀gòisaaí. Gám, néih m̀h̀heui tái hei lā ma?

A: M̀h̀heui la.

C: Waih-J̀ung, hòih faahn la. M̀h̀hóu góng gám dò la.

A: Lóuh Wóng, haih gám sìn la, tìngyaht gin la.

B: Hóu, tìngyaht gin. M̀h̀hóu m̀h̀geidāk níngfàan go dáfógēi bái ngóh bo.

A: Dāk la. Tìngyaht gin lā.

1) fóng = room

2) a máh = sen. suf. for obviousness (see also L16, CL3 ā ma)

3) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong' term of address used as form of address to a man by good friends.

4) hòih faahn = 'Dinner is ready'

5) Haih gám sìn la = 'That's all for now'

4. Talking about renting a house and buying furniture:

Wòhng Táai: Tèngginwah néih yiu wán ūk. Wándóu meih a?

Hòh Siujé : Haih a! Kàhmyaht sìnji wándóu. Hái Nèihdēun Douh.

Wòhng Táai: Géi láu a?

Hòh Siujé : Sàam láu. Ngóh tùhng néih heui táiháh ā?

(They arrive at the house)

Wòhng Táai: A! NÍ gāan ūk hóu m̀h̀cho bo! Yāt go yuht géi chín jòu a?

Hòh Siujé : Yāt chín mán, néih wah gwai m̀h̀gwai dī a?

Wòhng Táai: Haih gamseuhnghá lā. Gám, néih dásyun géisih b̀n làih a?

Hòh Siujé : Yìngā juhng meih jidou. NÍ gāan ūk m̀yéh dōu móuh, dāng ngóh m̀aaihjó dī gāsí, yìnhauh ji bundak ga.

Wòhng Táai: Ngāam laak, ngóh yáuh go chānchík haih maaih gāsí gé, néih séung m̀h̀séung heui gódouh táiháh nē?

Hòh Siujé : Hóu aak! Yùhgwó néih yìngā dākhaahn, jauh tùhng ngóh yātchàih heui lā!

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh heui jà ga chē làih, néih jauh hái nídouh dāng ngóh lā!

Hòh Siujé : Jànhaih m̀h̀gòisaaí la.

Wòhng Táai: M̀h̀sái haakhei.

(They drive to the store)

Wòhng Táai: A! dou laak. Ngóhdeih hái nídouh paak chē sìn, yìnhauh hàahng gwo heui la.

1) m̀yéh dōu móuh = doesn't have anything

Hòh Siujé : Ní tou baahk sĭk ge géi leng bo! Bāt̄gwo lukh baak m̄n  
 jauh gwaidī la! A, lukh baak m̄n jĭkhaih chābāt̄dō yāt  
 baak m̄n Méihgām ge la. Haih m̄hhaih a?

Wòhng Táai: Haih ge la. Néih jùngyi, jauh máaihjó kéuih lā.

Hòh Siujé : (to the clerk) Hóu lā! Gám, tĭngyaht sungheui béi ngóh,  
 yĭnhauh béi chin dāk m̄hdāk a?

Sih Táu : Dāk. M̄hgòì néih sé go deihi béi ngóh lā.

Wòhng Táai: Ngóhdeih hóyĭh jáu laak.

Sĭnsāang : Joigin, maahn m̄aan hàahng a.

Wòhng Táai: Joigin.

Hòh Siujé : Joigin.

1) chābāt̄dō = chāmhdō

2) Máaihjó kéuih lā. = Buy it. (imperative--see L24,N \_\_)

3) Maahn m̄aan hàahng = 'Walk slowly' -- a polite  
 goodbye form, said to person  
 leaving by person remaining.

### Lesson Twenty

#### 1. Going to the airport:

A: Chéngmahn néih, yáuh nĭdóuh dĭm heui fēigēi chēuhng a?

B: Айв, hóu deuim̄h̄jyuh laak, ngóh m̄hchingchó bo. Yánwaih ngóh hái  
 Hēunggóng gó bihn jyuh gé, ngóh m̄hhaih géi sĭk Gáulūng ní bihn  
 dī louh ga.

A: Gám a, néih jí m̄hji ní tiuh louh yáuh móuh bāsĭ gwo ge nē?

B: Mm... níjógān dōu tái m̄hdóu yáuh chējaahm, waahkjé móuh laak.

A: Haih gám, dāng ngóh wándóu bāsĭ daap góján, ngóh pāhngyáuh chóh  
 gó bāan fēigēi dōu yĭngĭng hòijó la.

B: Yùhnlòih néih haih heui sung gēi ga? Gám, néih chóh dĭksĭ heui la.

A: Gám, ngóh hàahng gwo sèsiu heui giu dĭksĭ lā. M̄hgòisaai bo.

B: Hóu wah.

1) louh = road

2) gwo = pass by

3) sung gēi = see (someone) off on a plane

4) Hóu wah = 'You're welcome'

#### 2. At the train station:

A: Yí, yĭngā sĭnji daahp sàam jē, dĭmgāai bāan fóchē yĭngĭng hòijó  
 ge la? Ngóh go bíu móuh cho ā? A, Sĭnsāang, chéngmahn daahp bun  
 hòì gó bāan fóchē doujó meih a?

B: Sahp dĭm bun gó bāan chē m̄hhaih yahtyaht dōu hòì ga. Jĭhnghaih  
 láihbaailukh túhng láihbaaiyaht jí yáuh ge ja.

- A: Haih bo. Ngóh dōu m̀hgeidāk tīm. Chéngmahn heui Sàtihn yiu daap géi houh bāsi a?
- B: Ngóh dōu m̀hhaih géi chingchó bo, néih heui bāsi jaahm góbihn mahn-háh lā.
- A: Hóu, m̀hgòí.

(A goes to bus stop)

- A: Chéngmahn heui Sàtihn yiu daap géi houh bāsi a?
- C: Sahp gáu houh a lā.
- A: Hah yāt bāan bāsi daahp géi hòí a?
- C: Daahp bun jauh hòí ge la.
- A: Hóu, m̀hgòí. O--Heui Sàtihn ge chē gēi nòí hòí yāt bāan ga?
- C: Bun go jùngtòuh yāt bāan.
- A: M̀hgòisaai.

1) Sàtihn = Shatin, a village in the New Territories of Hong Kong

3. Two overseas Chinese students in Taiwan discuss going to Hong Kong:
- Jèung Sàang: M̀h Siujé, néih géisih heui Hèunggóng a?
- M̀h Siujé : Nī go láihbaaiyaht, jíkhaih sahphouh.
- Jèung Sàang: Gám, néih dásyun hái Hèunggóng jyh géi nòí a?
- M̀h Siujé : Yāt go láihbaai gamseuhnghá lā.
- Jèung Sàang: Ngóh dōu yiu fàanheui Hèunggóng taam ngóh bàhbā tùhng màhmā. Ngóh múih nih dōu fàanheui yāt chí ga.
- M̀h Siujé : O, néih géisí jáu a?
- Jèung Sàang: Ngóh hah go láihbaaiyih jáu, fàandouheui Hèunggóng ngóh dá dihnwá wán néih ā.
- M̀h Siujé : Hóu aak, néih yiu daai ngóh heui dī hóu wáan ge deihfōng hàahngháh jí dāk ge bo.
- Jèung Sàang: Dāk la. Náh, ngóh wándou néih jíhauh, sín daai néih heui chóh laahmché, séuhngheui Sàandéng táiháh Hèunggóng ge fùnggíng. Yihnhauh tùhng néih heui hàahngháh gūngsí a, máaiháh yéh a. Gám, hóu m̀hhóu a?
- M̀h Siujé : Hóu, bātgow ngóh juhng séung guo hóí hàahngháh, néih sík m̀hsík louh a?

- 1) fàandouheui = arrive back
- 2) hóu wáan ge deihfōng = fun places, amusing places
- 3) Náh = used to attract attention. cf. English 'Listen',...
- 4) fùnggíng = scenery
- 5) louh = road
  - a) sík louh = know the road; know your way around



Jèung Sàang: Māt m̄hsík a? Ngóh jyuh hái Gáulùhng gé.

Máh Siujé : Gám, jauh ngāamsaai laak. Ngóh hóu séung heui Sàngaai hàahngáh tím bo.

Jèung Sàang: Dāk, yùhgwó gau sīhgaan, ngóh jauh daai néih chón fóchē heui Sàngaai là.

Máh Siujé : Gám, m̄hgòisaai sín bo. A, yīhgā ngóh yiu heui ló fēigēi piu, joigin laak. Fàandouheui Hēunggóng jigányiu làih wán ngóh a.

Jèung Sàang: Dāk ga la. Joigin.

1) Māt m̄hsík a? = What do you mean, not know?

2) piu = ticket

### Lesson Twenty-one

1. Two women discuss taking their children swimming:

Léih Táai : Chàhn Táai, jòusàhn, gàmyaht gam dākhaahn a?

Chàhn Táai: Haih a. Gàmyaht m̄hsái fàangùng, daai dī sailógō chēut làih hàahngáh.

Léih Táai : Eh...gàmyaht géi yíht bo. Néih ngāamngāam hái Tòihwāan fàanlàih. Tòihwāan yáuh móuh nīdoh gam yíht a?

Chàhn Táai: Dōu haih yātyeuhng gam yíht. Gàmyaht gam yíht, ngóh hóu séung heui hóitān yàuhséui.

Léih Táai : Haih a! Gam yíht heui yàuhséui jèui hóu ge laak. Ngóh gàmyaht dōu dākhaahn sah p dīm jūng ngóh já ga chē tūhng dī sailógō làih jip néihdeih yāchhài heui ā? Hóu m̄hóu a?

Chàhn Táai: Mh, heui bīndoh nē?

Léih Táai : Heui Chín Séui Wāan là, hóu m̄hóu a?

Chàhn Táai: Hóu aak. A, néih dī sailógō gīhgā géi daaih la. Ngóh géi nih meih gīngwo kéuihdeih laak.

Léih Táai : O! Ngóh go jái chāt seui, go néui dōu ngh seui la. Kéuihdeih dōu hóu jūngyi yàuhséui gé.

Chàhn Táai: A! Ngóh dōu yiu máaih dī yéh daaiheui ji dāk gá. Deuimih yáuh jīu maaih. Dáng ngóh heui máaih dī la.

Léih Táai : Hóu aak. Dī sailógō ji jūngyi síhk jīu ge laak. Gám, ngóh yīhgā fàanheui sín, sah p dīm làih jip néihdeih là.

Chàhn Táai: Hóu, joigin.

Léih Táai : Joigon.

1) hói tān = seaside

2) Chín Séui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay]

## 2. Two friends discuss where to go swimming:

A: Gàmyaht hóu yíht la.

B: Haih a. Gàmyaht yíhtgwo káhmyaht hóudò.

A: Heui m̀hheui Chínseui Wāan yàuhseui a?

B: M̀hdāk a. Ngóh yiu fàangùng. Tíngyaht láihbaailuhk, m̀hsái fàangùng. Tíngyaht heui ā.

A: Tíngyaht ngóh m̀hdākhaahn. Láihbaai ā.

B: Hóu lā. Daahnhaih ngóh wah Chínseui Wāan móuh Chekchyúh gam hóu bo.

A: Ngóh wah léuhng douh dōu yātyeuhng gam hóu. Daap bāsi heui Chekchyúh taai noih, sóyih dōu haih heui Chínseui Wāan fòngbihn dī.

B: Hóu lā. Hóu lā. Gám, láihbaaiyaht ngóhdeih heui Chínseui Wāan lā.

1) Chínseui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay] a beach on the South Shore of Hong Kong island.

2) Chekchyúh = Stanley, a village and beach on the southeastern tip of Hong Kong island.

3) taai = too

4) fòngbihn = convenient

## 3. Two friends talk about the marriage of a 3rd friend:

A: Néih jí m̀hjí a, Lóuh Léih gitjófàn la bo.

B: Haih mē! Tùhng bíngō a?

A: Sing wòhng ge--gámnin sahpgáu seui ja.

B: Mēyéh wá? Māt Lóuh Léih daaih kéuih sèhng yihsahp seui ah!

A: Haih a. Haih kéuih hohksāang làih gé. Hái hohkhaauh haih jeui leng jeui lēk ga.

B: O, Ngóh juhng yihwàih néih wah kéuih Lóuhdauh hái Hèunggóng haih jeui yauh chín ge tím.A: Aaa--M̀hhai--bāt-gwo kéuihdeih dou hóu yáuh chín ga.B: Wàh háai. Wai, kéuih Lóuhdauh juhng yáuh móuh daihyih go néui ga? Ha. Ha.....

1) Lóuh Léih = 'Old Lee'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends.

2) māt = exclamation of surprise, Compare English 'Why' in 'Why he's a full 20 years older than she!'

3) sèhng yihsahp seui = a full 20 years

4) Lóuhdauh = father, equivalent to 'The Old Man'

5) yáuh chín = rich, wealthy6) Wàh...háai! = exclamation of awe and astonishment.

Lesson Twenty-two

1. Mr. Cheung compliments his foreign friend Mr. Lee on his Cantonese:

Jèung Sàang: Léih Sàang, néih dī Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk m̄hcho bo.  
Hohkjó gèi noih la?

Léih Sàang : Néih gwojéung jē. Ngóh tùhng ngóh taaitáai ngāamngāam  
hohkjó sām go yuht. Yíngā góngdāk juhng hóu leuhnjeuhn  
ga.

Jèung Sàang: O! Néih taaitáai dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá àh!

Léih Sàang : Haih a. Ngóhdeih léuhng go yārchàih hohk ge, bātgowo ngóh  
taaitáai hóu kàhnlihk, sóyih kéuih hohkdāk hóu faai.  
Yíngā góngdāk béi ngóh làuhleih.

Jèung Sàang: Néih jànhaih taai him la. Néih góngdāk gèi hóu ā.

2. Two friends at the swimming pool:

Jèung Sàang: Néih yàuhdāk gam lēk, haih m̄hhaih sinsih dōu làih yàuh-  
séui ga?

Chàhn Sàang: M̄hhaih sinsih dōu yàuh, ngóh bīndouh yáuh gam dò síngaan  
a? Bātgowo ngóh duhk siuhohk gójan jauh hóu júngyi  
yàuhséui ge la. Néih yàuhdāk dou m̄hcho ā!

Jèung Sàang: Ngóh m̄hdāk gé.

Chàhn Sàang: Wáh! Yíngíng sahpyih dīm làh, ngóhdeih séuhngheui sikh  
ngaanjau sín, hóu ma?

Jèung Sàang: Hóu a!

1) siuhohk = elementary school

2) sikh ngaanjau = sikh ngaan = 'eat lunch'

3. Mr. Lee is driving his car with Mr. Wong as passenger:

Wòhng: Néih jà chē jādāk m̄hcho bo.

Léih : Néih gwojéung jē. Ngóh dōu hóu síu jà ge.

Wòhng: Néih agō haih m̄hhaih nīpáai héisáu hohk chè a?

Léih : Haih. Kéuih tùhng ngóh gājē yārchàih hohk.

Wòhng: Hohkdāk dīm a?

Léih : M̄hmadéi lā.

Wòhng: Néih yáuh móuh gaauháh kéuihdeih a?

Léih : Móuh. Ngóh jihnghaih sík jà, m̄hsík gaau ga.

4. Miss Chan and Miss Ma talk about their younger sisters' progress in school:

Chàhn Siu-yíng: Néih saimúí duhk syù meih a?

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Gāmnín ngāamngāam héisáu duhk.

Chàhn Siu-yíng: Duhkdāk lēk m̄hlēk a?

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Dōu géi lēk, daahnaih hóu láahn.

Chàhn Siu-yíng: Gám, kéuih dī jih sēdāk leng m̀hleng a?

Máh Ngáh-gwān : M̀hmadéi lā. M̀mouh nēih saimúí sēdāk gam hóu.

Chàhn Siu-yíng: Néih gwojéung jē. Kéuih yáuhshih sēdāk hóu hóu,  
yáuhshih dōu sēdāk hóu yáih ga.

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Ngóh saimúí yauh haih gam ge.

### Lesson Twenty-three

#### 1. Hotel, hotel guest and room boy

R: Sinsàang yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

G: M̀hgòì ning dò géi go sàamgá làih ā. Ngóh yáuh dò géi gihn sàam  
yiu gwa.

R: O, yiu géi dò go a?

G: Sei go gau laak.

R: Hóu, jauh ló làih.

(He returns with the clothes hangers)

R: Dī sàamgá hái douh. Juhng yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

G: Haih la. Chisó mouh chijí, jauh móuh móuhgān tím.

R: Chijí ngóh yātjahn ning làih lā. Móuhgān yiu dá dihnwá béi  
sáisaambouh giu keuihdeih sunglāih. Bātgowo ngóh gamjiu tēng  
keuihdeih wah daaih móuhgān yihgíng yuhng saai. Yiu ngaan  
dī ji yáuh.

G: Yihgā yihgíng hahjau laak. Yātdihng yáuh ge la.

1) sáisaambouh = laundry department

#### 2. Husband and wife:

Husband: Tingjiu m̀hsái jing jóuchāan béi ngóh sihk laak.

Wife : Dīngáai a?

Husband: Yánwaih gamjiu sihkjó jóuchāan ji fàan gūng, gónm̀hchit daap  
bási.

Wife : Gám, ngóh hóyih tingjiu jóudī héisàn jing béi néih sihk ga.

Husband: M̀hsái la. Néih fan-ngaandī lā.

Wife : M̀hgányiu. Néih séung géi dīm sihk a?

Husband: Jóu gwo gamjiu bun go jūngtāuh jauh dāk laak.

Wife : Hóu lā. A, hóu yeh ge la, néih fan meih a?

Husband: Ngóh juhng meih chūnglèuhng. Néih fan sín lā.

1) fan ngaandī = sleep late, i.e., get up later (than  
usual)

2) chūnglèuhng = take a bath, take a shower

Wife : Chūnglèuhngfóng móuh móuhgān ga, néih nǐng tǐuh yáhpheui ji hóu nǎ.

Husband: Dāk la. Yáuh móuh fàangāan a?

Wife : Yáuh.

1) chūnglèuhngfóng = bathroom

3. Two women discuss servant problems:

Léih Táai : Yí, Chàhn Táai, māt yiu néih jihgái làih tong sām a? Go gūngyàhn nē?

Chàhn Táai: Aih, mǎhóu góng la. A Sei chíhnyah t ji wah ngóh jí, kéuih yiu fāan Daaihluhk taam gājē, kǎhmyah t heuijō la.

Léih Táai : Gám dím dāk ga? Néih dǐnggāai mǎhgiu kéuih dǎng néih wándóu yáhn jí heui ā?

Chàhn Táai: Ngóh dōu haih gám wah ge laak. Daahnhaih kéuih yātdihng yiu kǎhmyah t jauh heui, Juhng wah jeui jōu yiu hanho yuht jí fāandaklāih tǐm bo.

Léih Táai : Aiya, néih jihgái yāt go yān dím jouhdāk gam dò yéh ga?

Chàhn Táai: Yāt go yuht jē, mǎhgányiu gé.

Léih Táai : Néih jánhaih lēk ga laak. Yeuhng yeuhng dōu dāk.

Chàhn Táai: Mǎhhaih gé, yiu jouh jauh jouh ge jē...Chóhháh yám bǐi chàh sǐn la.

Léih Táai : Mǎhsái haakhei la. Ngóh jauh jáu ge laak.

1) māt = here: dǐnggāai?

2) jihgái = yourself

3) Gám dím dāk ga? = That way, how (is it) OK? i.e., How could that be? How could you allow such...

4) yeuhng yeuhng = everything

4. Elder brother, younger sister and servant:

Elder brother : Luhk jé, ngóh gihn sēutsām hóu laah ttaat. Mǎhgoi néih túhng ngóh sǎijō kéuih lā.

Luhk jé : O, néih gón mǎhgónjyuh yiu ga?

Elder brother : Yiu a, ngóh tǐngjǐu jauh yiu jeuk fāan hohk ge la.

Younger sister: A, Luhk jé, ngóh yáuh tǐuh kwáhn dōu yiu sái. Mǎhgoi néih yatchàih lō heui ā.

1) Luhk jé = The family's name for the servant. The Luhk part is taken from one of the 3 characters in her name (maybe Luhk Siuyǐng or Chàhn Ngáh-luhk) and the jé part means 'elder sister'.

2) gón = in a hurry; gón mǎhgónjyuh? = Are you in a hurry?

- Luhk jé : Hóu, juhng yáuh dī mēyéh yiu sái waahkjé yiu tong ga?  
 Elder brother : Mm. Haih laak. Nídouh juhng yáuh tǐuh fu, ngòh káhmyaht jǐngcháauhjó. Néih dākhaahn góján, mhgòì néih tùhng ngòh tongháh kéuih lā.
- Younger sister: Luhk jé a, luhk dím bun la. Ngòh tùhng Agō chāt dím bun yiu heui tái dá bō. Sihkdāk faahn meih a?
- Luhk jé : Dāk ge la. Taaitáai heuijó Hòh Táai ngūkkéi dá páai, ngaamngāam dá dihnwá faanlaih wah mhsái dang kéuih sihk faahn. Néihdeih sihk sín lā.
- Younger sister: Gám, Agō faai dī lā! Mhhaih jauh gónmhchit ge la.
- Elder brother : Hóu, jauh làih.
- 1) sihk dāk faahn meih? = Can we eat yet?  
 2) mhhaih = otherwise, if not,...

Lesson Twenty-four

## 1. Prospective tenant and landlady:

- Prospective tenant: Néihdeih nídouh haih mhhaih yáuh deihfóng jòu a?  
 Landlady : Haih a. Chéng yahplàih táiháh lā. Chéng gwolàih nǐbihn lā.
- Prospective tenant: Hóu, mhgòì.  
 Landlady : Ní gāan syùfóng tùhng gó gāan seuihfóng dōu haih jòu ge. Néih táiháh ngāam mhgāam?
- Prospective tenant: Mm, gāan syùfóng dōu géi daaih, go seuihfóng yahp-bihh juhng yáuh chisó. Géi hou a. Néih yiu géi chin go yuht nē?  
 Landlady : Sei baak mán jē. Daahn haih yiu sín béi léuhng go yuht jòu bō.
- Prospective tenant: Mhgányiu. Ngòh séung táiháh go chyùhfóng--háì bíndouh a?  
 Landlady : Chéng yahphei lā...Ngòhdeih chyùhfóng hóu gōn-jehng ga.
- Prospective tenant: Mm, mhcho a, néihdeih yáuh dihnwá ga?  
 Landlady : Yáuh. Néih dōu hóyih yuhng gé.
- Prospective tenant: Gám, dōu géi fóngbihn. Ngòh gāmmáahn daai ngòh sínsàang làih táiháh sín lā.
- 1) gwolàih nǐbihn = come over here  
 2) fóngbihn = convenient

## 2. Mother and daughter discuss broken teapot:

- Mother : Siu Míhng, māt jèung tóigam dò séui yan ga? Dóuséjò mēyéh a?  
 1) māt + sentence = How come...?

Síu Míhng: Dóusejó dī cháh lòh. Juhng dálaahnjó go cháhwa tím bo.  
 Mother : Bīngō gam m̄hsíusām nē? Dá laahnjó bīn go cháhwa a?  
 Síu Míhng: Haih A Yèh dálaahn ga. Hóuchóí haih gauh gó go ja.  
 Mother : Gám, dōu yiu máaihfaan dò yāt go hái douh ji dāk gá. Yùh-  
 gwó m̄hmáaihfaan go sán ge jauh m̄hgau yuhng ge laak.  
 Síu Míhng: Máaih go dāmhlahn ge lā.

1) A Yèh = Grandfather (on father's side)

2) hái douh = here: and have it here

3. Talk between a young lady and a household servant:

Síujé: A Sei, m̄hgòí néih tùhng ngóh chùng wùh yíht cháh làih lā.  
 Ngóh hái kèhláu nīdouh a.  
 A Sei: Hóu a. Síujé, juhng yáuh mēyéh fanfu nē?  
 Síujé: A, juhng yáuh. M̄hgòí néih séuhngheui ngóh gāan fóng ló tíuh  
 baak kwáhn heui tong ā. Ngóh léuhng dím bun yiu chēut gāai.  
 Faaidí bo! M̄hhaih jauh gónākhchit ge la.  
 A Sei: Dāk laak. Yíhgā sinji léuhng dím. Yātdihng gónākhchit béi néih  
 gé. Aiya! Bīngō douse dī ngàuhnáaih hái deihhá a? Gam laah-  
 taat!  
 Síujé: Ngóh dōu m̄hji a. Faai dī yahpheui ló faai bou làih maatjó  
 kéuih lā.  
 A Sei: Síujé, hóuchíh wúh lohk yúh bo. Dángjān chēut gāai geidāk  
 daai jē a.  
 Síujé: Hóu, Haih laak--dángjahn Cháhn Táai dá dihnwá làih, néih wah  
 kéuih jí, ngóh gāmmáahn m̄hdākhaahn heui kéuih ngúkkéi,  
 yánwaih ngóh yáuh dī gányiu sih yiu jough.  
 A Sei: Jidou laak.  
 Síujé: Aiya! Yíhgíng léuhng dím yāt go gwāt laak, ngóh yiu wuhn sām  
 la. Tíuh kwáhn tonghóu meih a?  
 A Sei: Tonghóu laak. Nàh, tongdāk leng m̄hleng a?  
 Síujé: M̄hcho! Ngóh yiu faaidí wuhn ji dāk laak. M̄hgòí néih tùhng ngóh  
 níng nīdī syù chēutheui jài hái ga chē douh sín. Go sáudóí  
 dōu yātháih ló heui lā.  
 A Sei: Dāk la.

1) ngóh gāan fóng = my room

2) m̄hhaih = if not, otherwise

3) sinji = only

4) gónākhchit = there's enough time or You can make it or  
 If you hurry you'll make it.

5) deihhá = floor

6) geidāk = remember

Síujé: Dángjahn lohk yúh, jigányiu geidāk sàan chēung a.

Lesson Twenty-five

1. Talking about how to keep awake:

A: Dǐngáai gámjiu gam móuh jǐngsàhn a?

B: Kàhmáahn yihtgwotàuh, fanm̄hjeuhk, sóyih gámjiu hóu ngáahnfan.

A: Gám, wán dǐ dungdúngdēi ge yéh yámháh lā. Ngóh síhsih ngáahnfan dōu jǔngyi yám dung ge yéh ga.

B: Yáuh mēyéh dung yéh hóu yám a?

A: Yám bùi dung bējáu lā.

B: Mhdāk! Yámjó juhng ngáahnfan tím!

A: Heiséui lā.

B: Ngóh jí pa yám heiséui ge laak, yámjó gokdāk hóu géngshot gé.

A: Dung gafē yātdihng ngāam néih laak.

B: Hm, hóu, ngóh géi jǔngyi gafē ge. Néih dōu yám bùi lā.

A: Hóu aak!

B: Gám, dǎng ngóh dá dihnwá giu làuhhah sung séuhnglāih sín.

2. Two friends discuss Szechwanese food:

A: Néih haih m̄h haih síhsih dōu chēutheui síhk Seichyùn choi ga?

B: Haih a. Jouh māt a?

A: Móuh, nǐ léuhng yaht ngóh yiu chéng haak. Séung síháh Seichyùn choi jē. Yáuh mēyéh hóu síhk ge, gaaisiuhháh lā.

B: Aiya! Ngóh m̄hsík dǐ choi méng ge bo.

A: Gám, néih dǐm giu choi a?

B: Ngóh síhsih dōu haih tǔhng pàhngyáuh yārchàih heui gé. Chichi dōuhaih kéuih giu mēyéh ngóh jauh síhk mēyéh ge ja.

A: Gám, néih yāt yeuhng dōu m̄hgeidāk mē?

B: Ngóh jihng haih geidāk yáuh go tòng syūnsyūndēi, lahtláatdēi, giujouh syunlaht tòng, yáuh yeuhng yú tihmtímdēi, syūnsyūndēi, hóuhóusíhk ge, giujouh tòhngchou yú. Daihyihdǐ choi ngóh jauh sík síhk m̄hsík góng laak.

1) Seichyùn = Szechwan

2) Jouh māt a? = here: Why do you ask?

3) Móuh = Nothing special

4) chichi = every time

5) syūnlaht tòng = pungent pepper soup

6) tòhngchou yú = sweet and sour fish



A: Gám, néih tùng ngóh mahnháh néih gó go pàhngyáuh ā.

B: Dāk, ngóh tìngyaht fàanlaih wah néih ji lā.

Lesson Twenty-six

1. Mrs. Wong and Mrs. Lee discuss Mrs. Lee's new job:

Wòhng Táai: Tèngginwah yáuh gáan ngànhòhng béi hóu gòu sànséui chéng néih bo! Haih mhhaih a?

Léih Táai : Haih a. Méihgwok Ngànhòhng chéng ngóh fuhjaak yāt go bouhfahn. Hah go yuht yāt houh héisáu séuhng gùng ge la.

Wòhng Táai: Gám, néih heuijó fàangùng, bíngò tùng néih chau dĩ sailóugō a?

Léih Táai : Sóyih ngóh yiu wán yàhn làih tùng ngóh chau kéuihdeih. Néih hó mhhóyih gaaisiuh go béi ngóh ā?

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh yiu mahnháh ngóh go gùngyàhn sinji dāk. Néih dásyun béi géi chin yàhngùng a?

Léih Táai : Yùngwó wándóu go yàhn yauh gòngehng yauh kàhnlihk ge, jauh dōdī chin dòu mouh sowaih ge.

Wòhng Táai: Yìngā chéng gùngyàhn, jisíu dòu yiu sàau baak lèhng mán ge la.

Léih Táai : Haih a. Juhng mhhaih gam yih chéngdākdóu tím bo.

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh tùng néih mahn dò géi go yàhn lā.

Léih Táai : Gám, mhgòl néih sin bo!

Wòhng Táai: Mhsái haakhei.

1) chau = to take care (of children)

a) chaujái = baby amah

2. Mrs. Cheung calls the air conditioner repair company:

A: Hèunggóng Láahnghei Gūngsí a?

B: Haih a, mēyéh sih nē?

A: Ngóh ūkkéi go láahnghei gēi waaihjó. Ngóh chihnyaht yìhging dágwo dihnwá giu néih gūngsí wán yàhn làih tùng ngóh jing ge la. Dìnggāai gám yaht juhng meih làih ga?

B: Yáuh gám ge sih mē? Chéng mahn néih haih bíndouh ga?

A: Ngóh nīdouh haih Daaih Douh Jūng yih yāt baat houh, yih láu sing Wòhng ge.

B: Gám, néih go láahngheigēi waaihjó mēyéh a?

A: Go láahnghei gēi hòijó hóu noih dòu mhdāk láahng lòh.

B: Hóu lā, ngóh yātján giu yàhn heui lā.

A: Faaidí lā, nípāai gam yiht, móuh láahnghei hóu nàahn fandāk jeuhk ga.

B: Dāk la, gāmyaht yātdihng tùhng néih jǐngfàanhóu kéuih la.

A: Haih le bo. Mhngòì néih.

3. Two young men run into each other on the street and decide to go swimming:

A: Wai. Lóuh Jēung, heui yàuh séui le.

B: Hóu aak. Wán Hòh Siujé yārchàih heui a.

A: Bǐngo Hòh Siujé a?

B: Hái gūngsǐ dá jih gógo lē.

A: O--Gām, néih yǐhgā dá dihnwá béi kéuih. Ngóh sǐn heui máaih yéh.  
Yúhgwó mhhaih jauh gónmhchit léuhng díng gó bāan chē ge la.

(Later:)

A: Eì, díng a? Hòh Siujé géisih chēut làih a?

B: Hā. Kéuih hái ūkkéi dágán páai. Kéuih wah mhhēui dāk wóh.

A: Mēyéh wá? Mhhēui àh. Ngóh dí yéh hahmbahlaahng dōu máaihssai la bo.

B: Wai, juhng yáuh bǐngo néuihjái ūkkéi yáuh dihnwá ga?

A: Léih Siu-lihng lā.

B: Mhdāk ge. Yǐhgā kéuih yātdihng jouhgán gūngfo. Kéuih mähmā mhwúih béi kéuih chēut làih ge.

A: A, Mäh Gwai-fōng hàahnggán gwo làih. Ngóhdeih heui mahnháh kéuih lā.

B: Mäh Siuje, dāk mhdākhàahn a? Ngóhdeih chéng néih heui yàuhséui ā?

M: A. Jánhah deuihahjyuh laak. Ngóh pāhngyáuh hái Tǐnsǐng Máhtàuh dānggán ngóh. Gāmyaht mhhēuidāk la. Daih yaht sǐn lā. Joigin.

A&B: Joigin.

A: Gām, ngóhdeih jihgéi heui la. Ha--Ha--.

1) wai = Hi! Hey! Say!

2) wóh = sentence suffix, 'That's what she said'

3) néuihjái = young girl

4) jouhgán gūngfo = do homework, lessons

5) jihgéi = ourselves, myself, himself, etc.  
here: ourselves alone

Lesson Twenty-seven

1. Two friends discuss buying Japanese goods:

A: Díngáai néih gam jūngyi máaih Yahtbún yéh ga?

B: Yànwaih Yahtbún yéh jouhdāk tùhng lòihlòu ge chà mhdāk géidò,  
daahnhah jauh pēhng hóu dò la.

1) chà mhdāk géi dò = chàhdò = about the same; just a little  
bit less good, [lacking not very much]

A: Sèuiyihh haih jingdāk leng jē, daahnhaih m̀t̀h̀ng gé. Yahtbún yéh, yuhng móuhgéinoih jauh laahn ge la.

B: M̀hgindāk ā! Kèihsaht yáuhsh̄h dī Yahtbún yéh juhng hóu t̄im. F́aan-jing yáuh dī yéh yuhng móuh géi noih jauh yiu wuhn s̄an ge laak. Maaih lòihlòu ge yuhngdou gauh dōu meih laahn, d́ámj́o kéuih yauh m̀h̀h̀ou, m̀hdám yauh m̀h̀h̀ot̄ai, hóu nàahn gé.

A: Néih góngdāk dōu géi ngāam, daahnhaih deui ngóh làih góng, ngóh jauh maaih b́undeih yéh dōu m̀hmáaih Yahtbún ge laak.

B: Hā, néih go yáhn jánhaih ā!

1) M̀hgindāk ā! = Not necessarily!

2) F́aanjing = anyway, besides,...

3) Néih go yáhn jánhaih ā = You really are something!

2. Talking about the importance of male children:

Jèung Táai: Wòhng Táai chihnyaht s̀aangj́o go néui bo. Néih jí m̀h̀ji a?

Léih Siujé: Haih mē? Néih yingā góng ngóh jí jí ja. Gám, kéuih yāt-dihng hóu hōisām ge la?

Jèung Táai: Hóuchih wah m̀h̀haih bo. Kéuihdeih gódouh dī yáhn hóu h̀ei-mohng s̀aang go jái ga, yingā s̀aangj́o go néui, sóyih kéuihdeih m̀h̀haih géi j̀ungyi lòh.

Léih Siujé: Kèihsaht j́ainéui yáuh m̀t̄ fanbiht a? Dōuhaih jihgéi ge sailóugō jē.

Jèung Táai: Léih Siujé, néih meih gitfàn jauh m̀h̀ji ge laak. Deuiyù J̀unggwokyáhn làih góng, d̀osou dōu yíhwàih móuh jái haih hóu daaih gihn sih ga.

Léih Siujé: Ngóh dōu jidou. Daahnhaih Wòhng Táai nī go bāt̄gwo haih daih yāt go sailóugō jē. M̀hsái gam mēyeh ga?

Jèung Táai: Móuh cho. Bāt̄gwo ỳhngwó daih yāt go jauh haih jái jauh hóu h̀oudò la ma.

Léih Siujé: M̀t̄ néih dōu yáuh gám ge séungfaat ge mē?

Jèung Táai: Ngóh jihgéi jauh móuh s̀owaih. Daahnhaih A Jèung jauh hóu chíh Wòhng Táai kéuihdeih gám m̀h̀j̀ungyi neui ga.

1) s̀aangj́o = gave birth (to)

2) hōisām = happy

3) jihgéi ge = one's own, your own, etc.

4) M̀hsái gam mēyeh ga? = No need to make such a big thing of it?

5) séungfaat = idea, concept

6) A J̀ung = Mrs. Jèung's husband

7) hóu chíh = similar to A similar to B.

(A Jèung is similar to Wòhng Táai and the others that way in not liking girls.)

Léih Siujé: Haih mē? Gám, néihdeih yáuh géidò go jáinéui a?

Jèung Táai: Ngóhdeih juhng meih yáuh sailóugō.

Léih Siujé: Gám, néih daih yāt go jigányiu sàang go jái ji dāk bo!

Jèung Táai: Ha-ha. Jèui hóu haih gám là.

### Lesson Twenty-eight

#### 1. Delivering goods to the wrong address:

Jèung Táai: Mātyéh sih a?

Fógei : Sung fo làih a.

Jèung Táai: Bīndouh ga?

Fógei : WihngŌn Gūngsī ge.

Jèung Táai: WihngŌn Gūngsī sung yéh lái? Ngóh móuh heui máaihgwō yéh bo. Mmm, chéuihfēi ngóh sīnsàang máaih ge là.

Fógei : Bīngō máaih dōu hóu la. Haih sé néihdeih nīdouh sàu ge, mhgòì néih chīm méng sàujó kéuih la.

Jèung Táai: Yáuh móuh sé haih mēyéh làih ga?

Fógei : Mhjí bo. Ngóh mhsík Yingmán ga, néih jingéi níkheui tái háh la.

Jèung Táai: Yāt tou būdíp? Yāt dā mōuhgān? Mhchih bo. Ngóhdeih mhwúih máaih nīdī gām ge yéh gá.

Fógei : Gám, néih sàu mhsàu ga? Béijó chin geulòh bo.

Jèung Táai: Yùhgwō mhhaih ngóhdeih máaih gé, béijó chin dōu mhhaih ngóhdeih sàu gá. Bātyùh néih dāng ngóh dāng dihnwá béi ngóh sīnsàang mahnháh haih mhhaih kéuih dāng gá?

Fógei : Hóu la, hóu la, mhgòì néih faaidī la. Ngóh juhng yiu heui hóu dò deihfong ga.

Jèung Táai: Mhgòì dāng yātjahn ā.

Fógei : Jàn mähfàahn!

1) fo = goods

2) lái? = làih + rising intonation for surprise and doubt.

3) níkheui = ningheui

4) mhchih bo = Not likely!

5) Jàn mähfàahn = What a nuisance!

#### 2. Servant talks to housewife about opening a bank account:

A Jyù : Siu-Nāai a, néih géisih heui ngānhòhng tùhngmàaih ngóh heui, dāk mhdāk a?

1) A Jyù = servant's name

2) Siu Nāai = term of address used by servant in the

family addressing the housewife. The term basically means 'wife of a son of the head of the family but it is not now restricted to that meaning.

Siu-Nāai: Heui ngànhòhng néih dōu m̄hsīk lauh mē?

A Jyù : Lauh jauh sīk gé, bāt̄gwo ngòh m̄hjí jài chīn yahphei yiu mēyeh sáujuk jē.

Siu Nāai: Néih séung jài chīn heui ngànhòhng àh? Hóu yih jē. Jiyiu néih daai jihgēi jèung sanfánjing heui hòì wuhháu, chīm go méng jauh dāk ge laak.

A Jyù : Aiya--Siu Nāai, néih dōu m̄hhaih m̄hjí ngòh m̄hsīk jih ge lā. ngòh méng dōu m̄hsīk chīm ga!

Siu Nāai: Gám, yuhng tòuhjèung dōu dāk ge jē.

A Jyù : Tòuhjèung dōu dāk àh? Gám, ngòh yáuh a.

Siu Nāai: Néih séung géisih heui a?

A Jyù : Mòuh sówah gé. Dākhaahn ji heui dōu m̄hchih ga.

Siu Nāai: Bātyùh hahjau sihkyùhn faahn ji heui lā. Ngànhòhng sàam dīm ji sàan m̄hn ga.

A Jyù : Hóu aak. Gám, ngòh heui jyú faahn sīn la bo.

1) lauh = road

2) hòì wuhháu = open an account

### Lesson Twenty-nine

1. A visit to the doctor:

Léih Siujé : Chàhn Yīsāng.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Ā, Léih Siujé, māt sih a?

Léih Siujé : Ngòh chihh géi yaht hái chyùhfóng ditchàn, go tàuh johngmāaih go syutgwaih douh, hóuchóì mòuh māt sih. Daahnhaaih ní léuhng yaht ngòh gokdāk hóu tauhtung, sóyih ngòh làih táihah jē.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Mmm, néih yihchihh yáuh mòuh gámyéung tunggwo ga?

Léih Siujé : Meih sigwo ga. Gám, ngòh sinji pa a.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Nīpāai fandākhóu ma?

Léih Siujé : Fandāk m̄hhaih géi hóu lòh. Hóu yeh dōu fānm̄hjeuhk, juhng sèhng máahn séng tím.

1) chihh géi yaht = a few days ago

2) tàuh = head

3) johngmāaih = hit

4) tung = hurt

Chàhn Yísāng: Fandāk m̀hóu dōu wúih tauhtung ga. Gwoheui go bihn,  
ngóh t̀hng néih táiháh lā.

Léih Siujé : Hóu.

(The doctor finishes examining the patient:)

Léih Siujé : Díng a, yísāng?

Chàhn Yísāng: Móuh māt sih ge, m̀hgau fan ge jē. Ngóh hòì dī yeuhk  
béi néih lā. Náh, múih máahn sihk yāt nāp jī fan,  
néih jauh wúih hóu hóu fan ge laak, ỳhgwó gwo léuhng  
sāam yaht juhng meih hóu, jauh joi lāih tái lā.

Léih Siujé : Hóu, m̀hgòisaai la, Chàhn Yísāng.

Chàhn Yísāng: Hóu wah.

1) yeuhk = medicine

hòì dī yeuhk = write a prescription

2) nāp = pill, M for pill, grain of rice, grain of  
sand, etc.

3) Hóu wah = 'You're welcome'

2. Young lady goes to the hospital to visit her injured friend:

A: S̀insāang, chéng mahn Gául̀hng Ỳiyún hái b̀indouh a?

B: Gául̀hng Ỳiyún àh. Né, jauh hái Taaijī Douh t̀hng Wòdálóuh Douh  
jīgāan.

A: Ỳauh ǹidouh heui káhn m̀hkáhn a?

B: O--Léih ǹidouh móuh géi ỳhn jē. Né, gahnjyuh daihyih go chē  
jaahn góidouh jauh haih laak.

A: M̀hgòisaai.

(She arrives at her friend's room in the hospital:)

A: A, Siu-fòng, móuh mēyéh sih lā ma?

C: Móuh, béi chē johngchàn jī ma. Hóu hóudò la. Ỳauh sàm.

A: Johngchàn b̀indouh a?

C: Né, johngchàn jek geuk lòh.

A: Aiyáh. Hái b̀indouh johngchàn a?

C: Jauh hái ngóh gūngsī gaaklèih.

A: Hahchi chēut gāai síusàm dī la.

C: Jídou la.

1) Taaijī Douh = Prince Road

2) Wòdálóuh Douh = Waterloo Road

3) jī ma = that's all

4) Ỳauh sàm = It's kind of you to inquire

- A: Nàh, Ngòh daaijò dī gāitòng làih. Yíngā juhng yihtyítdeí. Yámjò kéuih sìn là.
- C: O, m̀hgoi. Mmm. Dī gāitòng hóu leng a.
- A: Haih a, ngòh dahnjò sèhng yaht ga la.
- C: Ha. Gám, ngòh hahchi yiu béi chē johng dò géi chi ji dāk.
- A: Hē, hahchi ngòh tái dōu m̀htái néih a. Hóu laak, ngòh yíngā yiu fāangíng laak. Tíngyaht ji làih taam néih la.
- C: Hóu, m̀hgoisaai. Tíngyaht geidāk joi daai gāitòng làih béi ngòh yám a?
- A: Hóu là. Hóu là. Joigin.
- 1) dahn = steam (a method of cooking)
  - 2) tái dōu m̀htái néih = won't even come see you
3. Miss Lee visits a fellow worker, Mr. Lau, in the hospital:
- A: Làuh Sàang, dím a?
- B: O--Léih Siujé. Hóu dī la. Yáuh sàm. Néih dím ji ngòh jyuh hái yíyún ga?
- A: Haih Lóuh Jēung góng béi ngòh tēng ge. Daahnhaih kéuih wah dōu m̀hji néih haih mēyeh behng. Mēyeh sih a?
- B: Eh. Chōchō jihng haih yáuh dī sēungfūng tùnghm̀aaih m̀hsyùfuhk. Ngòh yáuh móuh heui tái yísāng. Daih yaht jauh faat síu la. Saumei--m̀hhaih jauh làih jó nīdoh lō!
- A: Géi dō douh yiht a?
- B: Kàhmyaht juhng haih sa'ahgáu douh a.
- A: Aiyah. Māt gam gányiu a. Yísāng dím wah a?
- B: Gàmyaht hóu hóudò la. Tàuh sìn yísāng joi béijò dī yeuhkséui tùngh yeuhkyún ngòh síhk. Kéuih wah gwo léuhng yaht jauh hóyih chēut yún.
- A: O, Gám, jauh hóu la. Nàh. Nīdī cháang ngòh tùngh néih jàihóu kéuih a.
- B: Néih juhng gam haakhei. Jàn haih dòjehsaai.
- A: Síu yisi jē. Ngòh dōu yiu jáu la. Dáng néih chēutjò yún, ngòhdeih
- 1) Yáuh sàm = It's kind of you to inquire.
  - 2) daih yaht = the next day
  - 3) m̀hhaih jauh làihjó nīdoh lō! = Wasn't it that I came here! i.e., Didn't I just wind up here! (exasperated)
  - 4) douh = degree (of temperature)
  - 5) chēut yún = get out of the hospital
  - 6) Síu yisi jē. = It's just a little something. Polite response to thanks for a gift.

wánmáaih Lóuh Jēung yātchāih heui yám chàh lā.

B: Hóu aak--joigin.

A: Joigin.

1) wánmáaih = get together with

### Lesson Thirty

#### 1. An overdue plane:

Sailóu: Fùng dihnbou haih m̀hahh saimúí dáfaanlāih ga?

Agō : Haih a. Kéuih wah gámáahn hái Yahtbún gēichèuhng jáudim jjuh. Yánwaih gódouh dágán fùng, fèigēi m̀hhoi. Jí faai dōu yiu tìngyaht jí fàandaklāih.

Sailóu: Gám, ngóhdeih m̀hjí géisih heui jip gēi ge lo bo.

Agō : Lihn kéuih jihgēi dōu m̀hjí géisih jí yáuh fèigēi hòì, ngóhdeih yauh dím jí á?

Sailóu: Gám, néih gú kéuih wúih m̀hwúih joi dá dihnbou fàanlāih a?

Agō : Daaihkoí wúih gé. Chèuihfèi góm̀hchit lā.

Sailóu: Ai, ngóh jánhah pa Yahtbún ní chèuhng fùng wúih yuht dá yuht daaih tím bo.

Agō : Dōu m̀hgányiu gé. Jidò hái Yahtbún jjuh dò géi yaht jē. Yauh m̀hsái bēi jáudim chin gé.

Sailóu: Mát jjuh gēichèuhng jáudim m̀hsái bēi chin ge mē?

Agō : Haih a, hònhghùng gūngsī fuhjaak ge ma.

Sailóu: Haih àh? Hósík dáfùng m̀hchēutdākheui hàahng gāai m̀hahh géi hóu ge bo.

1) gēichèuhng = fēigēichèuhng = airport

2) gēi = fēigēi

3) chèuhng = M for wind

4) hònhghùng gūngsī = airline company

#### 2. Renting a house:

A: Chàhn Táai, néih m̀hahh wah gám̀yaht heui tái úk gé? Dìngáai juhng m̀hheui a?

B: Haih a. Ngóh búnlòih tùhng úkjyú yeukhóu gám̀jiu sahng dím ginmihng gé, daahnhaish ngaamngāam kéuih giu yáhn tùngjí ngoh wah hahjau jí dāk̀hàahn woh. Sóyih hahjau jí heui lā.

(That afternoon:)

Landlord: O, Chàhn Tamitáai. Chéng yahplāh ā.

1) úkjyú = landlord, landlady

2) woh = that's what he said.



Chàhn : 𠵼gòì.

Landlord: Nídouh yáuh sàam fóng léuhng tēng, chyùhfóng hái hauhbihn. Chisó tùhng chungléuhngfóng hái nídouh. Kèhláu hái chíhn-bihn. Deihfóng 𠵼cho ga.

Chàhn : Mm. Yí, jáan dihndāng waaihjó gé.

Landlord: Móuh. Móuh dihndāngdáam ji ma. Móuh waaihdu gé.

Chàhn : Yāt go yuht géi chin jōu a?

Landlord: Luhk baak mán jē. Hóu pèhng ga la.

Chàhn : Lihn 𠵼hlinmāaih séuidihnfai a?

Landlord: Lihnāaih séuifai, daahnhaih 𠵼hlin dihnfai. Chàhn Táai gokdāk díng a?

Chàhn : Deihfóng dōu géi hóu, bātgowo ūkjōu gwai dí la.

Landlord: Ah, Chàhn Táai, Wòhng Sàang gaaisiuh làih ge. Mhwúih sàu gwai ge la, nídouh yauh yáuh dihnwá. Hóu fóngbihn ga.

Chàhn : Pèhngdí 𠵼hdāk àh?

Landlord: Móuh baahnfaat la, yíngíng haih jeui pèhng ge la.

Chàhn : Gám, ngóh fàanheui mahnháh ngóh sīnsàang sīn lā. 𠵼gòisaaì.

Landlord: 𠵼sáì haakhei.

- 1) sàam fóng = 3 bedrooms
- 2) léuhng tēng = 2 sitting places--i.e., living room and dining room. (léuhng tēng = haaktēng + faahntēng)
- 3) dihndāngdáam = light bulb
- 4) ji ma = that's all
- 5) séuidihnfai = water and electricity fees
- 6) Mhwúih sàu gwai = I wouldn't take too much from you [wouldn't-take-expensive]
- 7) fóngbihn = convenient

3. Mr. Brown tells his friend Mr. Cheung about his Cantonese course and his plans for an upcoming trip:

A: Jèung Sàang. Hóu noih móuh gin bo. Géi hóu ma?

B: Yí. Māt Bāau Sàang néih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá ga?

A: Haih a. Ngāamngāam hohk gé.

B: Haih mē. Góngdāk gam bīujéun gé. Haih laak--Bāau Sàang, néih dínggái wúih heui hohk Gwóngdùngwá ga?

A: Óh. Yíngā ngóhdeih gūngsī hóudò sàangyi yiu góng Gwóngdùngwá ji

- 1) bīujéun = standard, i.e., here: speaks like a Cantonese person
- 2) sàangyi = commercial business

dāk. Sòyih gūngsī paai ngòh heui hohk.

B: Hohkjó géi noih a?

A: Luhk go yuht.

B: Gám, néih gokdāk hohk Gwóngdùngwá nàahn mhnàahn a?

A: Mhwúih ā. Ngòh deui Gwóngdùngwá hóu yáuh hingcheui. Bātgo héisáu hohk góján, ngòh lihn yāt yih saam jaangdí dou góng mhchéutlaih. Daaihkoi hohkjó léuhng go yuht, jauh hóu hóu dò la.

B: Hā. Bāau Sàang yingā tèng néih góng dĩ Gwóngdùngwá yuht làih yuht làuhléih.

A: Hah. Néih gwojéung jē.

B: Haih laak--hah go láihbaai néih dāk mhdākhaahn a? Jáuh dāan sàangyi ngòh séung yeuk néih chéutlaih jámháh.

A: O. Mhdāk bo. Ngòh gūngsī yiu paai ngòh heui Dūng Nàahm A táiháh gó bihn ge sàangyi. Hauhyaht jauh yiu jáu laak.

B: Ó. Gam faai àh. Heui dĩ mēyéh deihfòng a?

A: Yuhtnàahm Sīnggabō, Máhlòihā dōu yiu heui--Búnlòih seuhng go yuht jauh yiu heui ge la, daahnhaiah ngòh ngāamngāam hohkgán Gwóngdùngwá. Sòyih yingā ji heui.

B: Gám, jauh ngāamsaai la. Hái gó bihn néih jauh yáuh hóudò gèiwúih góng Gwóngdùngwá ga.

A: Haih a. Ní go gèiwúih hóu mcho ga. Mún--Néih dāan sàangyi ngòh wán Lóuh Láu yeuk go síhgaan túhng néih jām ā.

B: Hóu aak. Mhgoisaai bo. Hauh yaht ngòh yáuh dĩ síh, daaihkoi mhheui-dāk sung néih fēigēi.

A: Mhsái haakhei.

- 1) paai = send
- 2) yáuh hingcheui = to be interested in
- 3) dāan sàangyi = some business [dāan = 'list,' M for sàangyi]
- 4) jām = discuss
- 5) Dūng Nàahm A = Southeast Asia
- 6) Yuhtnàahm = VietNam
- 7) Máhlòihā = Malaya
- 8) gèiwúih = opportunity

## GRAMMATICAL INDEX

Numbers to the left of the period refer to lesson numbers, and those to the right, to page numbers.

- a, suffix to members of series in parallel construction, 19.72
- addresses, larger units precede smaller, 17.27
- Adj, measurable, 21.128-30
- amáh?(var:āma), interrogative sen. suf. checking on an assumption: 'isn't it?'; 29.313
- amáh, sen.suf. for obviousness, 29.313, 327
- Aux. verbs, wúih, 'likely to,' 24.199
- bātyùh... bá laak, 'it would be better to....', 28.290
- béi, 'by', 29.312
- béi, 'compared to', in comparison pattern, 21.126-127
- béigaau, comparatively, in comparison pattern, 21.127
- búnloh, 'originally', 30.343
- chèuihfèi, 'unless,' 'only if', 28.289-90
- chèuihjò....(jì ngoih), ...., 'with the exception of...', 28.1-2, 28.288-89
- chíh, 'is similar to, resembles,' 27.265 comparison patterns, adjectives, 21.126-28; verbs, 22.152-153
- daaih, 'big', used in reference to years of age, 21.130
- daih - M, contraction of daihyih M, 16.9
- daihyih M, another (additional) M, 16.9
- dāk, Vsuf. 'can', 20.97; with performance-achievement Verb: V-dāk-achievement, 'can perform-achieve', 23.174-76; in VO phrase: V-dāk-O, 'can VO', 23.176
- dāk-, in manner patterns, 22.150; manner pattern used in adjectival time phrases with jóu, ngaan, yeh: V-dāk-jóu = eat/ate early, 23.177
- dates, 17.27-29; larger units precede smaller, 17.27; days of the week, 17.27; question-word formulas for dates, 17.29; gái yuht? and bín yuht?, 'what month?', 17.31; chart for sections of the day, 23.177
- deui, 'towards, about, for, with', 'in regard to', in deui Obj Adj phrase, 30.338
- dím?, 'how', in manner patterns, 22.151
- dímjūng, hour, as post-verb time spent word, 20.101
- dòsou, 'most'; 'mostly', as noun modifier, 27.267; as adverb, 27.268
- duplicated adjectives, Adj-adj-déi, 'a little bit Adj.', 25.223
- duplicated M for TW, 'Each and every', 20.99-100
- duplicated Measures for indiv. Nouns, 'every N', 27.267; 27.275
- faaidí, 'quickly', in pre-verb and post-verb position, 24.200
- frequency words, 21.130

- gám, 'such', as independent unit, 'such things', 'in such a way', 26.246; 'this way', as modifier of Verb this way, 26.246; as modifier of noun, 'this kind of N', 26.246; substituting for VP gám jòuh, 'do/did it thus', 26.249-50; compared with gam, 'so', 26.247
- gahn(jyuh), near, 29.316; compared with káhn, near, 29.316
- V-gán, 'V is going on', V.suf, calling attention to action in progress, 26.245; position in directional verb compounds, 26.245
- ge lo bo, sen.suf ge/ga, 'that's the way it is,' + sen.suf. lo bo for good-natured protest, 30.340
- gé, ss. ge + rising intonation connotes impatience, 19.88
- géi?, which number (i.e., how much/many?) and compared with géi, 'several', 18.53; before measurable adjectives, 21.128
- gójahn, When...., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as TW, 18.48
- Góngjǐ, 'Hong Kong money', grammatically a Noun, 19.86
- gwo, in comparison pattern: Adj-gwo, 'more Adj than', 21.126-27; in comp. pattern for Verbs Vdǎk Adjgwo ngóh, 22.152
- gwo, another(as replacement), in V-gwo(nu.) M pattern, 24.201
- háí, from, interchangeable with yàuh, 'from', 17.38
- háí bǐndouh V - ge, 19.72-73; not basically a past reference form, 19.73
- hauh, var of: jihauh), after #M of time, 20.18
- hóu, V.suf. indicating satisfactory conclusion of performance, 19.74
- Hóu choi...jē, 'At least it's lucky...', 24.200; 24.214
- Hóu V (0) (la), an imperative form: 'do V,' 'hadn't you better V?', 25.224-25
- jái, 'put, place', 24.199-200
- ...jē, ...dōu..., 'Even though...., still....', 30.340
- jeui-, jeui Adj = superlative degree, 21.128
- jèung, 'take', in jèung 0, V-complement pattern, 28.291; compared with Mandarin bǎ construction, 28.291
- jīgān, 'between', 29.314-15
- ji (var: sínji) '(only) then', 19.72
- ji-, ji Adj = superlative degree, 21.128
- jichǐn, before..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as part of TW phrase: Nu-M jichǐn, 18.48
- jihauh, after..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as part of TW phrase: Nu.M. jihauh, 18.48
- ...jǐ ngoih, 'outside of,' 'aside from...', 26.3; 26.247
- jǐyiu... jǐauh..., 'just have to..., then....', 28.288
- jǐngsǎhn, energy; feel well, belongs to two word classes: N and Adj., 25.225
- jǐng, 'fix,' 'make', as first element in performance-achievement verb compound, 24.203
- jiujǐu, every morning, 23.178
- jǐo, verb suf. in time spent sentences of past reference, 18.49; Vsuf in imperative sentence, 'V-jǐo = 'get V done', 23.176
- jo, as adj suffix, end result of a process, 24.201
- juhng, in comparison pattern, 21.128

káhn, 'near', 29.316; compared with gahn(jyuh), near, 29.316

kèihsaht, 'But actually....', 27.268

lā, sen.suf. for uncertainty; la for change + raised intonation for uncertainty, 17.29

la, ss in time spent sentence of past reference, indicating 'up to now', 18.49-50

la, sen.suf. in imperative sen, indicating friendly advice, 24.200

lāih, 'for the purpose of' 24.202; 24.211

lāih, VP suffix, contradicting stimulus sentence assertion of action performed, 16.8

lāih, sen.suf. in past reference sentences: Movement Verb Phrase + lāih = return from having been away, 16.8; 26.253

lāihbaai, 'week', as 'Sunday', 17.28

lèih, 'distance from', 29.315

lihn(màaih), 'including', 'and', 'even'; 'to include', 30.339-40

lo bo, sen.suf. connotes good-natured protest 27.268

loh, ss: making a bid for sympathy, 25.224

mhhaih, as variant of yùgwó mhhaih, 'otherwise' (QV), 25.225

mhtúhng, 'not alike', not used as Main Verb in affirmative, 27.269

máahn máahn, 'every evening', 23.178

Mandarin-Cantonese compared: Verbal modifier to Sp-M-N, 20.103; taai, 'excessively', 20.103; wúih, 'likely to,' 24.199.

Manner patterns, 22.150-53

Measures, voyage measures, 20.100

meih, 'not yet', in sentences of future reference, 19.71

meih...jichihn, interchangeable with jichihn clause without meih, 18.48

Méihgām, 'American money', grammatically a Noun, 19.86

Móuh sówaih ge, 'Whatever you say.', 26.247-48

Moveable Adverbs, 18.48

múih, 'every', 'each', 20.99

(ng)aan, 'late (in the daytime)', 23.177

noun modification, SV modifier to SP-M-N in direct modification, 20.103

noun types, the VO-ge construction, 'one who VOs for an occupation', 26.247

number-measure expressions, with fractions, partials, and approximate numbers, 20.97-98

numbers, fractions, 20.97-98; serial numbers as approximate numbers, 20.98-99; approximate numbers: sahpgei baakgei, etc., 20.99

Paired Conjunctions, chèuihfèi..., jauh... 'Must..., in order that...', 'unless..., then....' 23.3; chèuihfèi..., ji... 'Must..., in order that...', 'unless..., then...', 23.3; chèuihfèi..., yùgwó mhhaih..., 'must..., otherwise...', 23.3; chèuihjò..., juhng..., 28.288; chèuihjò..., jauh..., 28.288-89; jiyiu..., jauh..., 28.288; sèuyih..., daahnaih..., 25.223; yánwaih, sóyih, 20.97; yat..., jauh..., 'as soon as..., then...', 28.290-91

- 'Passive', construction in Cantonese, 29.312
- Possessive modification, saimúí w/without ge/M, mui with ge/M, 22.154
- Pronouns, pronoun object required in imperative V-jó, 23.176
- Question-words used as non-questions 25.225-27
- Questions negatively phrased, responses to, 16.9; ordinary denial, 16.17; spirited denial, 16.17.
- sai, 'small', used in reference to years of age, 21.130
- sahpgeí, as approximate number, 20.99
- Sentence suffixes: (see individual entries) amáh?, 29.313; amáh, 29.313; ge lo bo, 30.340; ge, 19.88; la, 17.29; la, 'up to now', 18.49-50; la, 'friendly advice', 24.200; laih, 'contradictory', 16.8; laih, 'return', 16.8; 26.253; lo bo, 27.268; loh, 25.224; tim, 25.234
- Sentence type, past reference with TW focus: TW V-ge, 17.35
- Sentence type, Time-spent sentences: past reference with V-jó or V-gwo, 18.49-50; sentence position relative to other post verbal expressions, 18.50-51
- Sentence type, time-since sentences 18.51
- sèuiyh... daahnhaih... 'although ... still...', 25.223
- séung, 'think of', past reference verb forms, 16.11
- séung, 'wish to', past reference verb forms, 16.10
- sínji (var:ji), '(only) then', 19.72
- sóyih, see yánwaih, sóyih.
- specifiers, múh, 20.99
- superlative degree, 21.128
- taai, 'excessively', 'too', 22.153
- tim, sen.suf., indicates speaker taken by surprise, 25.234
- Timewords, 17.29
- túhng, 'to be alike, similar', not used as V in affirmative, 27.269
- Verb suffixes, role in Cantonese, 16.6-7; role in Cantonese and English compared, 16.7
- Verb suffixes, (see individual entries) -dák, -gan, -jó, -yuhn
- Verbs, Class 1 verbs: partial distinction between past and non-past forms, 16.4
- Verbs, Class 2 verbs: no distinction between past and non-past forms, 16.5
- Verbs, Past reference: uninflected verb to express general activity, 16.6
- Verbs, role of verb suffixes in Cantonese, 16.6
- Verbs, verb forms for talking about the past affirmative forms, 19.69
- Verb forms for talking about the past negative forms: mouh V and meih V, 19.70

- Verbs, verb forms for talking about the past, choice questions yáuh móuh V?, and V-jó, etc. meih, 19.70
- Verbs, V-ge pattern, not necessarily a past reference form, 19.86
- Verbs, mhV, as 'not willing to V' 20.101-02
- Verbs, absence of active-passive distinction: 22.151; 23.176; 29.312
- Verbs, performance-achievement verb compounds: 24.202-03; in sentences of past reference, 24.202; in sentences of customary action, 24.203; with dák, 'can' = V-dákAdj, 24.203
- VO-ge, 'one who does VO as occupation', 26.247
- wúh, 'likely to', 24.199; in sentences of past probability, 24.199; compared with Mandarin hwèi, 24.199
- yánwaih..., sóyih..., 'Because..., therefore', 20.97
- yáhngháhn, 'everybody', 27.267
- yāt, omission before Measure in a múih phrase, 20.99
- yāt..., jauh..., 'as soon as..., then ...', 28.290-91
- yáuh 'have', in pivotal construction with personal subject: S yáuh SVO, 23.178; as equating verb in Timespent sentence, 20.102-03; equating verb in measurable adjective sentence, 21.130; 'to have'; 'there is', as equating verb in a lèih, 'distance from' sentence, 29.316
- yáuhdí, 'some', 27.266
- yáuhdí..., yáuhdí.... 'some..., others....', 27.266
- yeh, 'late (in the evening)', 23.177
- yeuk, 'request, make, an appointment', 30.337
- yihchihh, 'previously', 18.48
- yihhauh, 'afterwards' 18.48
- yih ngoih, same as ji ngoih, (QV), 26.247
- yihwáih, 'to be under the impression', 25.223
- yíngbohng, (var:-bóng), 'English pound (sterling)', grammatically a Measure, 19.86
- yiuh, 'require,' as 'cause or make (someone do something)', 20.102; 20.105; 29.313
- yüghwó mhhaih, 'otherwise; if not' 25.225
- yühn, Vsuf indicating finishing an action, 26.245
- yuht...yuht... 'more and more....', 30.337

# CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

## CUMULATIVE VOCABULARY LIST

### LESSONS 16-30

Entries are arranged in alphabetical order by syllable, with h indicating lower register disregarded alphabetically. When words having the same syllable but different tones are listed, the sequence of tone listing is: high level, mid level, low level, high falling, low falling, high rising, low rising. Numbers in the right hand column refer to the lesson in which the item first appears, thus:

18 = Lesson 18 Basic Conversation

18.1 = Lesson 18, Drill 1

29N = Lesson 29, Notes

Items which appear for the first time in the Notes are listed again when appearing for the first time in the main body of the text. Measures for the nouns follow the noun entries in brackets. In this volume ng is listed separately from n as an initial consonant.

#### A

a	呀	suf. to members of series in parallel construction	19
āma? (or amáh?)	呀嗎	ss. isn't that right? interrogative sen. suf., checking an assumption	29
āma (or amáh)	呀嗎	ss. for obviousness. in response sentence explaining why/where/when/what/who, <u>āma</u> adds the connotation (cheerfully, without impatience) that the whole thing is pretty obvious.	29.15
āam	啱	fitting, suitable, that's fine! splendid! (var. pro: ngāam)	19
āamāam	啱啱	just, only a moment ago (var. pro: ngāamngāam)	22
aan	晏	late (in the day) (var. pro: ngaan)	23.9
aanjau	晏晝	around noon; morning (var. pro: ngaanjau)	23.1
aanjau sahyih dim	晏晝十二點	12 noon (var. pro: <u>ngaanjau-</u> )	23N2

#### B

bāsi[ga]	巴士	bus	20.1
bāan	班	flight, trip. voyage Measure	20
baatyuh	八月	August	17N
Baihlaak!	弊喇	exclamation of annoyance (var: Baihlok!)	24



CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

bātyihp	畢業	to graduate	18
bātyüh, X, bá laak (or lā)	不如... 罷咗	it would be preferable to do <u>X</u>	28
béi	被	introduces the agent of an action, 'by ____'	29
<u>X</u> béi <u>Y</u>	比	<u>X</u> in comparison to <u>Y</u> ; <u>X</u> compared to <u>Y</u>	21
béifāan	畀返	give back	18.10
béigaa	比較	in comparison, comparatively	21
behng	病	illness	29.7
behngjō	病咗	got sick	29.1
bīn-	邊	any (one, place, etc.); whatever (one, place, etc.)	25.5
bīndouh	邊度	anywhere; wherever	25.5
bīngo	邊個	anyone; whoever	25.5
bīn nihm?	邊年	which year?	17.3
bīn nihm, bīn yuht, bīn yaht?	邊年邊月	what date?	17.3
bīnsyu?	邊日	where?	28.11
bīn yaht?	邊處	what day?	17.3
bīn yuht?	邊日	what month?	17.3
bō [go]	邊月	ball	16.4
boh	波	thin (in thickness, as of cloth)	27.14
bouji [jèung]	簿	newspaper	19.2
būi-díp [tou]	報紙	tea set	19.16
bun yeh sahpyih dim	杯碟	twelve midnight	23N2
bùn	半	move	18.11
bùn (ng)fk	搬	move house	18.11
búnlòih	搬屋	originally	30.4
búndeiwhá	本來	local language	27.3
	本地話		
<u>CH</u>			
chàmhdō	差唔多	more or less, approximately	21
cháauh	皺	wrinkled	23.6
chānchik	親戚	relative(s)	17
-chán	親	injure, hurt, damage	29
chātjuht	親月	July	17N
chek	尺	foot (measurement)	21.5

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

chéng	請	invite, request	19
chéngdóu	請到	invite and have the invitation accepted; <u>re</u> servants, to hire them; <u>re</u> dinner guests, to have them accept your invitation	19
chéng gúngyáhn	請工人	hire servants	19
chéng haak	請客	have a dinner party	16.8
chéng síh faahn, chéng yáhn síh faahn	請食飯 請人食飯	invite someone for dinner	16.8
cheuimeih	趣味	see: yáuh cheuimeih	21.1
deui <u>X</u> yáuh cheuimeih	對...趣味	be interested in <u>X</u>	30.6
chèuhfèi	除非	unless; only if	28
chèuhjóc...(jì ngóih)	除咗	aside from...; other than...; in addition to	28
chēung [go]	窗	window	24
chēunglím [tòhng; faai] [tòu] set; [go]	窗簾	curtain	19
chēuhng tòuh dihnwá [go]	長途電話	long distance phone call	28.1
chēut		M. for movie, a film	16
chēutnín	出年	next year	17
chēutsai	出世	to be born	17
chíjì [jèung] [gyún] [daahp]	廁紙	toilet paper roll stack	23.5
chísó [go]	廁所	toilet	22.2
chíh	遲	late (for an appointment), tardy	23.9
chíh	似	is similar to; resembles	27; 27.1
chím méng [go]	簽名	sign one's name	28
-chíhn	前	.....ago (following a Nu-M of time)	22.17
chíhnjìu	前朝	day before yesterday in the morning	23.7
chíhnmáahn	前晚	night before last	23.7
chíhnyáht	前日	day before yesterday	23.2
chōchō	初初	at first, in the beginning	29
chóh + <u>vehicle</u>	坐	travel by (vehicle), go by (vehicle)	20.1
chòhng [jèung]	床	bed	24.3
chùng chàh	沖茶	make tea	24
chùnglèuhngfóng	沖涼房	bathroom; i.e., room for bathing	24.2
chúhng	重	heavy	21.1

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

chühfóng [go]	廚房	kitchen	24.1
chyun	寸	inch	21.5
<u>D</u>			
dá	打	hit; to type (follow form of <u>dá jih</u> , [hit-words], i.e. to type	26.1
dá bō	打球	play ball	16.4
dá chéuhng tòuh dihmwá	打長途電話	make a long distance call	28.1
dá dihnbou	打電報	send a telegram	28.1
dáfógèi [go]	打火機	(cigarette) lighter	16
dá fùng	打風	have a typhoon [hit-wind]	30
dá jih	打字	to type (on the typewriter) [hit-words]	26.1
dájihgēi [go][ga]	打字機	typewriter	26.5
dáléih	打理	take care of, attend to	26
dá màhjúuk	打麻雀	play mahjong	16.3
dá páai	打牌	play mahjong	16
dásyun	打算	plan on, plan to	17
daai	帶	wear, as of watches, hats, things on top	24.11
daaih	大	in ref. to age: older (in comparison sentences); how old? (in QWsen)	21.5
daaihhohk [gàan]	大學	university	18
daaihkoi or daaihkói	大概	probably	30
daaihluk	大陸	continent; term used to refer to mainland China	18.1
daaihyáhn [go]	大人	adults	26
dāan [jèung]	單	list	23
daap	搭	travel by (vehicle), take (vehicle); catch (vehicle)	20
daat	撻	Measure for a place	17
daihdí	第的	others, reduced form of daihyih dí, 'other ones,' 'others'	16N
daihyaht	第日	another day, another time (reduced form from <u>daihyih yaht</u> )	30
daihyih (+M)	第二	another..., other, others (boundword, bound to following Measure)	16
daihyih dí	第二的	others, other Ns [daihyih + M]	16

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

-dāk	得	'can,' 'able to' verb suf. indicating physical ability; heuidāk = can go; hāahngdāk = is able to walk	20
<u>V-dāk-hóu Adj</u>	得好	<u>dāk</u> in this pattern is a grammatical word coming between verb and following verbal complement which tells the manner in which the verb is done or what the result of the verb is	22
Dākgwokyáhn [go]	德國人	German person	27.1
dākhaahn	得閑	free, at leisure, not busy	16
Dākmáhn (also: -mán)	德文	German (language)	27.3
dám		throw out, discard	25
deihfōng [daat] or deihfōng	地方	place	17
deihjí [go]	地址	address	17
deui, deuiyü <u>Obj</u>	對, 對於	towards, for, in regard to <u>Obj</u>	30
deui <u>X</u> làih góng	對... 嚟講	speaking for <u>X</u> , from the point of view of <u>X</u> , in regard to <u>X</u>	27
deui <u>X</u> yáuh cheuimeih	對... 有趣味	be interested in <u>X</u>	30.6
díksi [ga]	的士	taxi	20.3
dím	點	any manner, whatever manner, however	25.5
<u>X</u> díng?	... 點	how about <u>X</u> ?, what's <u>X</u> like?	21
díngáai?	點解	why?	20
dímjūng	點鐘	hour	20.6
Dím syun a?	點算呀	'How can we handle this?' or 'What'll I do?' or 'What's to be done?'	28
dihnbou [fùng]	電報	telegram, cablegram	28.1
dihnbougúk or dihnbouguk [gaàn]	電報局	telegram office	28.1
dihndāng [jáan or jí]	電燈	electric light, electric lamp	30.4
dihnfai	電費	electricity expenses	30.4
dihnsih [ga]	電視	television	16.6
dihnsihgēi [ga]	電視機	TV set	26.5
díp [jek] [go]	碟	plate	19
dit	跌	drop	24
dítchàn	跌親	fall and hurt yourself; be dropped and get hurt	29.1
ditlaahm	跌爛	drop and break	24

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

dòsou	多數	mostly, for the most part; the majority	27
dōu	都	still	26.2
douh	道	M for doors	24.7
<u>nu.m.</u> -dóu	度	approximately <u>nu.m</u> (suf. to nu.m. expression)	18
dóusé	倒瀉	spill	24
duhk daaihhoik	讀大學	study at a university, attend a university	18
duhk syù	讀書	to study, to go to school	18
dung	凍	cold	21
<u>F</u>			
faai	塊	piece; M for dishcloth	24
faaidī	快的	hurry and..., ...right away	24
faahntēng [go]	飯廳	dining room	24.1
fàngáan [gauh]	番規	soap	23.5
fàanheui	返去	go back, return (there)	17
faatsāng	發生	happen	29
faatsiù	發燒	have a fever	29.1
Faatgwokyàhn [go]	法國人	Frenchman	27.1
Faatmàhn (also: <u>-mán</u> )	法文	French (language)	27.3
fai	費	fees, expense	30.4
fan	瞓	sleep	23
fan(gaa)	瞓	go to bed, sleep	23
fanm̀hjeuhk	瞓唔着	can't get to sleep	25
fanjeuhk	瞓着	get to sleep, fall asleep	25
fàn	分	divide, divide up	26
fànbiht	分別	difference	27
fànfu	吩咐	instructions	23
fēigēi [ga]	飛機	airplane	20
fēigēi ch̀euhng [go]	飛機場	airport	20.1
fóchē [ga]	火車	train	20.1
fongg̀ung	放工	leave work, get off from work	29
Fong sām lāi!	放心啦	Don't worry!	26N
fóng [gàan]	房	room	24.2

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

fuhjaak	負責	take responsibility for, is responsible for	26
fù yeuhk	敷藥	treat with medicine	29
fú	苦	strong [bitter]	25.1
fùng	封	M. for telegram M. for letters, telegrams	28.1 26.8
fùng	風	wind	30
fùngkàuh	風球	typhoon signal	30
G			
gǎjē	家姊	elder sister	18
gāsi [tou] [dī]	傢俬	furniture	19
gàyàhn [dī]	家人	members of the immediate family	20
gaaisiuhseun [fùng]	介紹信	letter of recommendation	26
gámchi	今次	this time	24.12
gámjlu	今朝	this morning	23.3
gámáahn	今晚	to-night	23.3
gámín	今年	this year	17.3
gámiaht	今日	today	16
gámiaht hahjau	今日下午	this afternoon	23.3
gámiaht (ng)aanjau	今日晏晝	this morning; today around noon	23.3
gám	噉	in such a way; this way, that way; as V, reduced form of <u>gám jòuh</u> , 'do/did it this way,' restricted to use in affirmative only	26
...gám	...噉	that kind of thing, such things	19
gahn(jyuh)	近	near (followed by a placeword object)	29
gàn	跟	from(as in to learn from someone, i.e., learn following someone as model)	22
-gán	緊	Vsuf calling attention to fact that performance is in process	26
gányiu	緊要	important, serious	22.2
gauh	舊	M. for soap	23.5
gauhín	舊年	last year	17.3
gáumhgáu	久唔久	from time to time	26.12
gáuyuh	九月	September	17N
géi-	幾	any (number)	25.5
gei	寄	to mail	28.1

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

géidím	幾點	whatever hour, any hour, any time	25
gei seun	寄信	mail a letter, send a letter	28.1
géi(do)houh?	幾號	what day of the month?	17.3
géi nòi?	幾耐	how long (time)?	18
géisi... (or -sih)	幾時	whenever; anytime	25
géiyuht?	幾月	what month?	17.3
gènghot	頸渴	thirsty	25.6
geuk [jek]	脚	leg, foot	29
gin	見	meet, see	17
ginmihn	見面	to meet	30
gitfàn	結婚	get married	18.8
giuséng	叫醒	wake someone up	23
gogo láihbaai	個個禮拜	every week	20.2
gogo yuht	個個月	every month	20.2
góján(sih)	個陣(時)	at that time	30.16
VP góján(or gójahn)	個陣	When <u>VP</u> , At the time that <u>VP</u>	18
gói	改	change, alter	30
gokdāk	覺得	feel, consider, realize	21
gònjehng	乾淨	clean	23
gónm̀hohit	趕唔切	can't make it in time, not have time [hurry-not make it]	20
góngji	港紙	Hong Kong money	19.13
góng yéh	講嘢	[say-things], i.e. to talk	22.8
gòu	高	tall	21.1
gú	估	guess, conjecture, bet, hazard a guess	30
guih	瘡	tired	25
gùng	工	work	26
gùngfù	工夫	work	26
gwa	掛	hang up	23.14
gwaihtúng [go]	櫃桶	drawer	28
gwāt [gauh]	骨	bone	29
gwahouh	掛號	to register	28
gwahouhseun [fùng]	掛號信	registered letter	28
gwahóu	掛好	hang up	23.14
-gwo	過	used to form the comparative: <u>Adj</u> -er than, more <u>Adj</u> than	21

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

<u>Y-gwo M</u>	過	do another <u>M</u> (as replacement for the original one)	24
gwo hoi	過海	cross the harbour [cross the sea]. in Hong Kong, the expression used to refer to crossing the harbour from the Hong Kong side to the Kowloon side, and vice versa.	16
Gwojéung la	過獎嘞	'You praise me too much! said in response to a compliment	22
Adj-gwotàuh	過頭	too <u>Adj.</u> , excessively <u>Adj.</u>	25.1
Gwóngjàu	廣州	Canton, city of Canton	18
H			
hañchi	下次	next time	17
hahgo láihbaai	下個禮拜	next week	17
hahgo yuht	下個月	next month	17.1
hahjau	下晝	afternoon	23
hahyät <u>M</u>	下一	the next <u>M</u>	20.1
haakténg [go]	客廳	living room	24
hàahm	鹹	salty	25.1
hàahng	行	runs (of watches)	22.14
hàahng gūngsī	行公司	windowshop	16
hàahng louh	行路	go on foot [walk-road]	20.1
Haih gám wah lā.	係啱話啦	That's the way! [Be (it) as (you) say.]	28
hái	係	from	17.14
hái <u>X</u> tùhng <u>Y</u> j'igān	係同之間	between X and Y	29
hahmbahlaahng	哈崩哈	altogether	26
hahmáahn	後晚	day after tomorrow night	23.7
hahyaht	後日	the day after tomorrow	23
háuh	厚	thick	27.14
hei [cheut]	戲	movie	16
heiyún [gāan]	戲院	movie theatre	16
hèimohng	希望	to hope	18
héisàn	起身	get up (from bed) [raise-body]	19.2
héisáu	起首	begin	22
him	謙	modest	22



CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

híngdaih	兄弟	elder and younger brothers	22N
hósīk	可惜	unfortunately, it is unfortunate (+ sen)	30
hohkfai	學費	tuition	30.4
hòì	開	start off, set out, (for vehicles)	20
hòì (chē)	開	drive (a car)	22.2
hòichí	開始	begin	22N
hòì láahnghei	開冷氣	turn on the air conditioner	28.5
hòì mùhn	開門	open the door(s)	24.7
<u>TW</u> hòì mùhn		'open at <u>X</u> time' (expresses the opening time of a store)	25.10
hòì sāuyāngēi	開收音機	turn on the radio	27.11
hóì	海	sea	16
-houh	號	day of the month [number]	17.3
yāt houh	一號	the first	
yih houh	二號	the 2d	
sāam houh, etc.	三號	the 3d	
Hòuh Wàh Heiyún	豪華戲院	Hoover Theatre	16
-hóu	好	bring to satisfactory conclusion	19
hóu + Verb phrase + la	好	'It would be a good idea to ...' a form used in making a suggestion	25
hóu chíh	好似	it seems, it looks like, probably, very likely	23
hóuchóì	好彩	luckily, 'Thank goodness'	24
Hóu choi <u>X</u> jē.	好彩...啱	It's lucky that <u>X</u> , at least.	24
hóudòsìh (dōu)	好多時	very often	21.17
hóufāan	好返	get well, return to good health	29.13
Hóu noi h móuh gin.	好耐冇見	'Long time no see'.	17
Hóusēng.	好	'Be careful.' 'Mind (you don't...)'	24
hóusíu	好少	rarely, seldom	21.17
hóutái	好睇	nice-looking, pretty (not said in reference to people)	21.16
hóu wúih <u>V</u>	好會	does a good job of <u>V</u> -ing, is good at <u>V</u> -ing	22.10
hùhng	紅	red	25

J

jà faaiji	揸筷子	use chopsticks [clasp-chopsticks]	17.14
jáan	盞	<u>M.</u> for light or lamp	30.4
jāngdí	掙的	almost, lacks a little	30

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

jài	擠	put, place	24
jàn je	真嘅	true; the truth	27
jeui <u>Adj</u>	最	used to form the superlative: most <u>Adj</u> , <u>Adj-est</u>	21.13
jèun [go]	樽	bottle	29.3
jèung	張	M for table, newspaper	19.12;26.8
jèung	張	take	28
jīgāan	之間	between	29
ji <u>Adj</u>	至	used to form the superlative: <u>Adj-est</u> most <u>Adj</u>	21
<u>TW</u> ji <u>TW</u>	至	<u>TW</u> to <u>TW</u> , <u>TW</u> until <u>TW</u> ; between <u>TW</u> and <u>TW</u>	26;30
ji	至	finally, (not until) then, (only) then; (variant of <u>sinji</u> )	19
...ji dāk	...至得	...that'll do it. ..., only then will the requirements be satisfied	24
jidò	至多	at most, the most	18.7
jigányiu jigán(yiu)	至緊要	be sure to, by all means do	17
jisíu	至少	at least, the least	18
jih [go]	字	written word, written figure word used for Chinese ideographs	22
jihgéi	自己	oneself, myself, himself, etc.	28
...ji...	...之...	'of' grammatical word joining modifying structure preceding it to head structure following it.	26
____jichihh	之前	before____ (combines with preceding <u>VP</u> or <u>nu.m.</u> length-of-time expression)	18
<u>nu.+time M</u> jichihh	之前	____ago, ____previously, ____before	22.17
____jilhauh	之後	after____ (combines with preceding <u>VP</u> or <u>nu.m.</u> length-of-time expression) 'after (thus and so)'	18
...ji ngoih	之內	aside from..., outside (of)....	26
jímuih	姊妹	elder and younger sisters	22N
jíyiu..., jauh...	祇要...就...	just have to..., then...; as long as you...,	28
jíkhaak	即刻	immediately, right away	28
jíkhaih	即係	that is, in other words, that is to say	17
jihnghaih <u>V</u>	淨係	just, merely, only <u>V</u>	16
jìngsàhn	精神	energy	25

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

jíng	整	make, fix	19
jíng chāan	整槍	make, cook (Western) meals	19.1
jíng chē	整車	repair cars	19.15
jíng hóu	整好	fix satisfactorily	19
jíng fāan	整返	fix back to original shape	23.11
jiujiu	朝	every morning	23.13
jiujóu	朝早	morning	23
-jó	咗	verb suf. in time spent phrase indicating past reference	18
Jouh māt?	做乜	How come?	24.11
johng	撞	bump into	29
johngohàn	撞親	injure by bumping	29
jòu or jōu	租	rent	19
jóu	早	early	23
jóu bou [jèung]	早報	morning paper	24.9
jūngtáuh	鐘頭	hour	18.2
juhng	重	even	21
juhng Adj dí	重...的	even more Adj, even Adj-er	21
jú	煮	to cook	19.1
jú faahn	煮飯	cook Chinese style food	19.1
júfāan [go] or júfaahn	煮飯	a person who works as a cook in a private home (usually a woman)	26
júsíhk	煮食	ooking	26

K

kámmáahn	尋晚	last night	23.2
kámyaht	尋日	yesterday	16
kámyaht hahjau	尋日下晝	yesterday afternoon	23.2
kámyaht jiu	尋日朝	yesterday morning	23.2
kámyaht (ng)aanjau	尋日晏晝	yesterday noon	23.2
kámlihk	勤力	industrious	22.18
káhn	近	near	29.4
kèhláu [go]	近騎樓	veranda, terrace	24
kèhsaht	其實	in actuality, in truth, 'but actually' (leads off a response sentence which disagrees with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence)	27

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

kinggái	傾偈	have a chat, talk casually	22
kyutdihng	決定	decide	18
L			
laahmchē [ga]	纜車	cable car. in HK: the Peak Tram	20.1
làahm	藍	blue	25.1
laahn	爛	broken	24
laahnjó	爛咗	has become spoiled, rotten (of perishables)	25
láahn	懶	lazy, idle	22.18
láahnghei(gōi)[go,ga]	冷氣	air conditioner	26.5
láahngtín	冷天	winter	21
laaht	辣	peppery	25.1
laahttaat	辣搵	dirty	23.6
lâih	嚟	to, in order to, for the purpose of	24.10
-lâih	嚟	VPsuf in response sen adding connotation of 'that's what happened, not the thing you thought'	16
-lâih	嚟	VPsuf in sen. of past reference suffixed to <u>heui</u> phrases, indicates that person has returned from where he went	16
Lâih (Fw) chón 㗎! lâi 㗎!	嚟(Fw)坐啦	Come visit (place)!	17
lâihbaai [go]	禮拜	week	17
lâihbaai	禮拜	Sunday [lit: week]	17.2
lâihbaai géi?	禮拜幾	what day of the week?	17.3
lâihbaailuhk	禮拜六	Saturday	17.2
lâihbaaiŋh	禮拜五	Friday	17.2
lâihbaaisám	禮拜三	Wednesday	17.2
lâihbaaisei	禮拜四	Thursday	17
lâihbaaiyaht	禮拜日	Sunday	17.2
lâihbaaiyāt	禮拜一	Monday	17.2
lâihbaaiyih	禮拜二	Tuesday	17.2
lauh	漏	leak	22.2
lauhdài	留低	leave/left (something) behind	24.1
lâuhhohk	留學	study abroad	18
lâuhleih	流利	fluent in speech, fluently	22.2
lèih <u>X</u>	離	distance from <u>X</u>	29

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

lêk	叻	smart, brilliant	21.1
léuihhàhng	旅行	excursion	20.1
leuhnjeuhn	掄盡	clumsy, awkward, stupid	22
lèuhn	輪	one journey, referring to bus, train, trams	20.1
lèuhng	涼	cool	21.1
lih	連	to include	30N
lih...dōu	連...都	not even	30.4
lih(nàaih)	連(埋)	including	30.4
lihngsingwún	領事館	consulate	27
lobol	囉啫	sen.suf. with connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying.	27
lòh	囉	sen.suf. signifying a bid for sympathy	25
lohkyúh	落雨	to rain [down-rain]	24
lauh	路	road	20.1
luhk	綠	green	25.1
luhkyuht	六月	June	17N
<u>M</u>			
mhdākhaahn	唔得閑	busy	16
mhhaih	唔係	otherwise, if not	25.4
mhjí	唔止	more than, not just	30.8
mhjingsáhn	唔精神	not feel well, not have energy	28.3
mhsík jih	唔識字	illiterate	28
mhsyúfuhk	唔舒服	not feel well, <u>i.e.</u> , feel sick	29.1
mhtùhng	唔同	not alike; used as <u>V</u> in negative and question forms, but not in affirmative	27; 27.6
màhfáahn	麻煩	trouble	28
màhjéuk	麻雀	mahjong; [fu] set; [tòih] table; [jek] tile; [hyūn] games	16.3
màhmádeí	麻麻地	middling, sloppy, indifferent, so-so, just scrapes by	22
-màaih	埋	together, tight; sómàaih-looked up	28
maahn	萬	ten thousand	19.1
máahnfaahn	晚飯	supper	19.2

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

máahn máahn	晚晚	every evening	23.18
maat	抹	wipe, polish; wet-mop	24
máhn	聞	to smell	27.4
Mát + sentence	乜	How come? + sen.	25
měyéh	乜嘢	anything; everything; whatever	25
meih	味	smell, odor, fragrance	27.4
meih <u>VP</u> jiohíhn	未...之前	before_____ (combines with enclosed verb phrase to express 'before (thus and so)')	18
méihgām	美金	American money [American-gold]	19.13
mòuhgān [tíuh]	毛巾	towels	23.5
Móuh!	冇	'Nothing special!' 'Nothing much.' A response making light of the topic under discussion.	29
Móuh bashnfaat.	冇辦法	'There's nothing(you/we) can do.' 'It can't be helped.'	30
móuhgéincóih	冇幾耐	a short period [not long]	18.3
Móuh sówáih ge.	冇所謂嘅	'Any way is OK with me.' 'o complaints.'	26
múí [go]	妹	younger sister	22.1
múih	每	every, each	20
mùhn [dóuh]	門	door	24.7
<u>N</u>			
nàahmyán [go]	男人	man	27.10
nàahn	難	difficult	21.1
nàahn hóhk	難學	difficult to learn	21.10
Néih àh hái wah....?	你唔係話	Didn't you say....?	30.4
Néih yauh wah....?	你又話	You said....(but it's not so; what's up)?	30.5
néuih jái [go]	女仔	girl, young woman	29.2
néuih yán [go]	女人	woman	27.10
nī go láih baai	呢個禮拜	this week	17.3
nī go yuht	呢個月	this month	17.3
nī páai	呢	lately, recently; these few days	16.1
nīhn	年	year	17
nīhn nīhn	年年	every year	20.2
noih	耐	long (time)	17

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

NG

nghyuht	五月	May	17N
(ng)āam	啱	fitting, suitable (var. of āam)	19
(Ng)āam la(ak)!	啱嘞	That's fine!, Splendid!(var:āam la(ak))	19
(ng)āam(ng)āam	啱啱	just, only a moment ago (var. of āamāam)	22
(ng)aan	晏	late (in the day) (var: aan)	23.9
(ng)aanjau	晏晝	around noon, morning (var: aanjau)	23.1
(ng)aanjau sahyihdim	晏晝十二點	twelve noon	23N2
ngáahnfan	眼瞓	sleepy	25
ngáihhim	危險	dangerous, danger	29
ngohngódséi	餓餓地	a bit hungry	25
ngoih	外	outside	26
(ng)ūkjòu, (ng)ūkjòu	屋租	house rent (var ūkjòu, ūkjòu)	19.1

Q

Oumún	澳門	Macau	18.11
-------	----	-------	-------

P

pa	怕	frightened of, be afraid of	20
----	---	-----------------------------	----

S

sāangá [go]	衫架	coat hanger	23.5
Sāamfāahnsih	三藩市	San Francisco	17
sāamsei	三四	three or four	20
Sāamyuht	三月	March	17N
sàan	門	close, shut	24
Sàandéng	山頂	the Peak	20.1
sàan mùhn	門門	close the door(s)	24.7
<u>TW</u> sàan mùhn	門門	'close the doors (of a store) at <u>X</u> time,' expresses closing time of a store	25.10
sàan sūyāngèi	門收音機	turn off the radio	28.4
sàng	生	raw, underdone (of cooked things); green (of fruits)	25.1
sai	細	younger in age; used in comparison sentences to indicate 'younger than'	21.6

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

sailcuhnéui [go]	細佬女	little girl	27.13
sailóu [go]	細佬	younger brother	22.1
sailóugō [go]	細佬哥	child	16.5
saisèng	細聲	quiet voiced, in a small voice, soft (opposite of loud) in speech. [small-sound]	22.3
Sàiyàhn [go]	西人	Westerner, European, Caucasian	27.1
sái	洗	wash	23
sáidākchit	洗得切	able to get it washed in time	23
sàn làih ge yàhn	新嚟嘅人	newcomer, new arrival	19
sàn fánjīng [jèung]	身份証	I.D. card	26
Sàngaai	新界	the New Territories	20.1
sànséui	薪水	salary (of white collar workers)	19.1
sāp	濕	wet, damp	21
sahpgei	十幾	a few more than 10 [ten-several]	20
Sahpyātyuht	十一月	November	17N
Sahpyihyuht	十二月	December	17N
Sahpyuht	十月	October	17N
sāumēi	收尾	finally, in the end	29
sāuyāngèi [go, ga]	收音機	radio	26.5
sāu	收	receive, collect, take in	28
sāu seun	收信	receive a letter	28.3
sāujuhk	手續	procedure(s)	28
sé jih	寫字	write [write-words]	19.15
séfāan	寫返	write and return	23
Seiyuht	四月	April	17N
sèng	聲	sound, noise	27.4
sèhng	成	entire, whole; fully	26
séng	醒	wake up, awaken	23
seui	歲	years of age	21.5
seuihfóng [go]	睡房	bedroom	24.1
sèuiyih	雖然	although	25
sèuiyih...daahnhaih	雖然...但係	although..., still,,,; though..., still...	25
séuifai	水費	water payment, fees, expenses	30.4
séuihàuh [go] [tíuh]	水喉	water faucet [go]; water pipes [tíuh]	22.3



CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

seun [fùng]	信	letter	26
sēungfùng	傷風	have a cold, catch a cold	29.1
seuhng go láihbaai	上個禮拜	last week	17.3
seuhng go yuht	上個月	last month	17.3
séuhng gung	上工	start work	26
sihjái [go]	侍仔	roomboy	23
sihtáu [go]	事頭	employer, boss	28
sihgaan [dī]	時間	time	16
sihsih	時時	always, at all times	21
(sin)ji	(先)至	(not until) then, (only) then, finally	19
sīngkèih [go]	星期	week	17N
siu	少	few	27.11
siusām	小心	careful	22.18
só	鎖	to look	28
sómáaih	鎖埋	lock up, lock tight	28
sósih [tiuh]	鎖鑰	key	28
[oháu]		bunch held together (spoken form)	
[chyun]		(use for written form) link of keys	
sóyih	所以	therefore	20
sóng	鬆	crisp	25
suhk	熟	done (of cooked things), ripe (of fruit)	25.1
syúfóng [go]	書房	study, den [book-room]	24.1
syútóih [jèung]	書枱	desk	24.1
syun	算	is considered, can be considered as..., counted as ...	29
syun la(ak)!	算嘞	Never mind! <u>or</u> Forget it!	28
syùn	酸	sour	25.1
syùnlaht tòng [go][wún]	酸辣湯	vinegar-pepper soup	28.10
syùhn [jæk] [ga]	船	ship, ferry	20
syutgwaih [go]	雪櫃	refrigerator	25

T

taai	太	too, excessively	22
Taaitáai	太太	'Ma'am,' 'Missy.' (term used by ser- vant in foreign household to address mistress of the house)	24

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

tái dihnsih	睇電視	watch television	16.6
tái hei	睇戲	see a movie	16
tàuhshīn	頭先	just a while ago	29
tàuh tung	頭痛	have a headache; headache	29.1
tèngginwah	聽見話	hear tell, I hear...	17
tihm	甜	sweet	25
tinhei	天氣	weather	21
tingjiu	聽朝	tomorrow morning	23
tingmáahn	聽晚	tomorrow night	23.4
tingyaht	聽日	tomorrow	16
tingyaht bahjau	聽日下晝	tomorrow afternoon	23.4
tingyaht (ng)aanjau	聽日晏晝	tomorrow morning around noon	23.4
tóí [jèung]	枱	table	19.12
Tóihbāk	台北	Taipei	18
Tóihwāan or Tóihwāan	台灣	Taiwan	18
Tóihwāanyáhn [go]	台灣人	Taiwanese person	21
tokpún [go]	托盤	tray	24.1
tong	耐	to iron, press	23
tong wòhngjó	耐黃咗	scorched [iron-yellowed]	29.2
tou	套	set, M for set of furniture, set of dishes, etc.	19
tòuhjēung [go]	圖章	chop, seal	28
tòuhngoh	肚餓	hungry	25
tùngji	通知	communicate with	30
tùngsèuhng	通常	ordinarily, usually	26
tùhng <u>per.</u> yāchàih <u>V</u>	同...一齊	<u>V</u> together with <u>person</u>	20
tùhng <u>X</u> yātyeuhng	同...一樣	the same as <u>X</u>	21
tùhngmáaih	同理	and, with	26
tyúhn	斷	to break (of bones and stick-like objects)	29
tihmsyùn yú [tíuh] [dihp]	甜酸魚	sweet and sour fish	28.10

U

ŭkjòu, ŭkjòu	屋租	see: <u>ngŭkjòu</u>	19.1
--------------	----	---------------------	------

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

W

Wah!	嘩	Exclamation of awe	30
Wah mhdihng.	話唔定	Can't say for sure; uncertain	17
Wáhsihngdeuhn	華盛頓	Washington	17
waaihjó	壞咗	out of order, broken down	26.4
wán yéh jòuh	搵嘢做	look for a job	18
wándóu	搵到	find [search-succeed]	19
wòhng	黃	yellow	25.1
wùh	甕	pot, container Measure	24
wùih seun	回信	answer a letter	28.1
wùih	會	likely to, going to (indicates strong possibility)	24
wín-dihp [tou]	碗碟	a set of china	19.16

Y

yáih	吟	terrible, awful	22
yan [go]	印	spot	23
yánwaih	因為	because	20
yánwaih..., sóyih...	因為...所以	because ..., therefore...; since..., so...	20
yáhgùng	人工	wages (of servants, day laborers)	19.1
yāt <u>V<sup>1</sup></u> , jauh <u>V<sup>2</sup></u>	— ...	as soon as V <sup>1</sup> , then V <sup>2</sup> .	28
yāt go yán	一個人	alone, by oneself	26
yátohàih	一齊	together	19
yátdihng	一定	certainly, definitely	19
yáttján	一陣	in a little while, in just a little while	23.10
Yátyuht	一月	January	17N
yaht	日	day	17.3
yahtyaht	日日	every day	20.2
yàuh <u>X</u> dou <u>Y</u> jīgāan	由X到Y之間	between <u>X</u> and <u>Y</u>	29.12
yàuhohàai [go]	郵差	postman	28
yàuhjinggúk (or -guhk) [gāan]	郵政局	post office	28
yàuhhaak [dī]	遊客	tourist	23
yàuhséui	游水	swim; swimming	16.3

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

yáuh behng	有病	be sick, have an illness	29.1
yáuh cheumeih	有趣味	interesting	21.1
yáuhdí	有的	some, a few	27
yáuhdí..., yáuhdí...	有的...有的..	some..., others...	27
yáuhshíh	有時	sometimes	21.17
yáuh yík	有益	beneficial	30
yeh	在	late (in the evening)	23.9
yehmáahn	在晚	at night	23.1
yeuk	約	make an appointment	30
yeukhóu	約好	agree on the time and/or place for an appointment [request-successful]	30
yeuhk	藥	medicine	29
yeuhkséui [jèun] [dihk]	藥水	(liquid) medicine [bottle][drop] drop	29.3
yeuhkyún [lāp] [jèun]	藥丸	medicine in pill form [M for pill][bottle]	29.3
yeuhngyeuhng	樣樣	everything, every kind of thing	28.12
yíyún [gàan]	醫院	hospital	29
yih	易	easy	21.1
yihyuht	二月	February	17
yihohé	而且	furthermore	20
yí [jèung]	椅	chair	19.16
yihohihh	以前	previously, formerly, before	18
yíhnging	已經	already	19
yíhhauh	以後	afterwards	18.14
yíh ngoih	以內	outside of, aside from, with the exception of	26N
<u>X</u> yíhseuhng	X 以上	above ..., more than... (follows number expression)	30
yíhwáih	以為	think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be mistakenly had the impression)	25
yík	益	benefit, profit	30
yíng bóng	英鎊	British pounds sterling [English pound]	19.13
yiht	熱	hot	21.1
yihttín	熱天	summer	21
yíu <u>length of time</u>	要	takes <u>length of time</u>	20

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

---

yiu	要	cause, make (someone do something) make, oause (someone to do something)	20.1.4; 29
yùngwó	如果	if, on condition that	18
yùngwó m̀hhaiah	如果唔係	otherwise, if not	25
-yùhn	完	verb suf.: finish	26
yùhnlòih	原來	basically, originally; basis, origin	20
Yùhnlòih haih gám ge.	原來係噉 嘅	Oh, <u>that's</u> why. So <u>that's</u> the reason!	20
yúhn	遠	far	29
yuht [go]	月	month	17.1
yuht...yuht...	愈...愈...	the more...the more...	30
yuht làih yuht <u>Adj</u>	愈噉愈	getting more and more <u>Adj</u>	30

---